

oxford
exam
support



insight

Pre-Intermediate Student's Book

OXFORD

Jayne Wildman
Fiona Beddall

insight

Pre-Intermediate Student's Book

OXFORD

Jayne Wildman Fiona Beddall

Unit	A Reading and vocabulary	B Grammar and listening
1 Our world	p4 Everyday life Reading Life in a day Strategy Scanning for specific information Vocabulary insight Adjectives + prepositions: feelings Vocabulary insight Compound nouns: everyday objects	p6 Around the world Grammar Present simple and present continuous  Listening Volunteer projects
Vocabulary insight 1 p14 Using a dictionary: parts of speech Review 1 p15		
2 Places	p16 Ghost towns Reading Ghost towns: then and now Strategy Identifying paraphrase Vocabulary insight Antonyms: describing places Vocabulary Places in town	p18 The kindness of strangers Grammar Past simple and past continuous  Listening A happy ending
Vocabulary insight 2 p26 Using a dictionary: synonyms and antonyms Review 2 p27 Cumulative review Units 1–2 p28		
3 Choices	p30 In my fridge Reading Food for thought: the good, the bad and the really ugly Vocabulary Life cycle of food Vocabulary insight Compound nouns and adjectives	p32 Burger or broccoli? Grammar Determiners: <i>a lot of, a little, a few, some, any, much and many</i>  Listening Eating habits in the UK
Vocabulary insight 3 p40 Recording vocabulary Review 3 p41		
4 My space	p42 Moving house Reading The 1940s house Vocabulary insight Adverbs of manner and comment Vocabulary insight Compound adjectives	p44 A room of my own Grammar Comparative and superlative adjectives (<i>not</i>) <i>as ... as, too, enough</i>  Listening The best room in the house
Vocabulary insight 4 p52 Phrasal verbs: literal and non-literal meanings Review 4 p53 Cumulative review Units 1–4 p54		
5 No limits	p56 Taking risks Reading Blame your brain Strategy Understanding pronoun referencing Vocabulary insight Adjective suffixes: <i>-ing</i> and <i>-ed</i> Vocabulary insight Noun suffixes: <i>-ment</i> and <i>-ion</i>	p58 Too young, too old? Grammar Present perfect and past simple Present perfect with <i>already, just</i> and <i>yet</i>  Listening At the top of the world
Vocabulary insight 5 p66 Phrasal verbs: understanding the particle Review 5 p67		
6 Roads to education	p68 A hard lesson Reading War zones Vocabulary insight Collocations: crime Vocabulary insight Negative prefixes: <i>un-, im-, ir-</i> and <i>il-</i>	p70 Hungry to learn Grammar <i>will</i> and <i>going to</i> First conditional  Listening I want to be a teacher
Vocabulary insight 6 p78 Using a dictionary: verb and noun collocations Review 6 p79 Cumulative review Units 1–6 p80		
7 Progress?	p82 Big and small Reading Going global Vocabulary Statistics Vocabulary insight Nouns with two meanings	p84 Be an entrepreneur Grammar <i>must, mustn't, have to, don't have to</i>  Listening How to catch a dream
Vocabulary insight 7 p92 Using a dictionary: words with more than one meaning Review 7 p93		
8 Achieve	p94 Against all odds Reading Success stories Vocabulary insight Verbs + prepositions: success Vocabulary insight Suffixes: <i>-ant, -ent, -ance, -ence</i>	p96 Foul play Grammar Past perfect  Listening Don't believe your ears
Vocabulary insight 8 p104 Using a dictionary: dependent prepositions Review 8 p105 Cumulative review Units 1–8 p106		
9 The media	p108 In the news Reading What's in the news? Vocabulary The press Vocabulary insight Collocations: the media	p110 Multitasking Grammar Reported speech <i>say and tell</i>  Listening A multifunctional device  Listening To multitask or not to multitask?
Vocabulary insight 9 p118 Using a dictionary: easily-confused words Review 9 p119		
10 Made in ...	p120 Make a difference Reading The story of your T-shirt Strategy Understanding the purpose of a text Vocabulary insight Phrasal verbs: buying and selling clothes Vocabulary insight Compound nouns	p122 Where does it come from? Grammar The passive: present simple, past simple and present perfect  Listening How much do you know about ... ?
Vocabulary insight 10 p130 Word families Review 10 p131 Cumulative review Units 1–10 p132		

C Listening, speaking and vocabulary	D Culture, vocabulary and grammar	E Writing
<p>p8 New friends  Listening Couch surfers Vocabulary insight Collocations with <i>make</i> and <i>do</i> Everyday English Asking for personal information</p>	<p>p10 Immigration Reading Around the world on the Number 7 train Vocabulary insight Phrasal verbs with <i>get</i> Grammar Articles</p>	<p>p12 An informal letter Strategy Preparing to write Talking about similarities and differences</p>
Vocabulary bank p134 Routines, Free-time activities		
<p>p20 Getting around  Listening An unusual traveller Vocabulary The senses Everyday English Asking for and giving directions</p>	<p>p22 Naming places Reading What's in a name? Vocabulary insight Verbs + prepositions Grammar <i>while, as</i> and <i>when</i></p>	<p>p24 A travel blog Strategy Avoiding repetition Vocabulary insight Collocations: descriptive adjectives</p>
Vocabulary bank p135 Geographical features, Prepositions of movement		
<p>p34 Eating out  Listening Vending machines Strategy Listening for key words and phrases Grammar Indefinite pronouns and adverbs: <i>some-, any-, no-, every-</i> Everyday English Inviting</p>	<p>p36 Notes from a big country Reading Junk Food Heaven Vocabulary insight Containers Grammar Relative pronouns and adverbs</p>	<p>p38 Short texts: notes, invitations, adverts and announcements Strategy Thinking about purpose Abbreviations</p>
Vocabulary bank p136 Food and nutrition, Food adjectives		
<p>p46 House rules  Listening Whose house is it anyway? Vocabulary insight Collocations: household chores Everyday English Asking permission</p>	<p>p48 Historic homes Reading A house with a history Strategy Predicting content Vocabulary insight Phrasal verbs Grammar Verbs + infinitive or <i>-ing</i> form</p>	<p>p50 An email: description of a room Strategy Writing opening sentences Vocabulary insight Adverbs of degree</p>
Vocabulary bank p137 Houses and homes, Parts of a house		
<p>p60 Fears and phobias  Listening The fear factor Vocabulary insight Base and strong adjectives Everyday English Describing a photo</p>	<p>p62 Antarctic adventure Reading Eyewitness account: Scott's Hut Vocabulary insight Phrasal verbs: stages in a journey Grammar Present perfect with <i>for</i> and <i>since</i></p>	<p>p64 A letter: description of a person Strategy Paragraphs and topic sentences Expressing addition</p>
Vocabulary bank p138 Generations, Personality adjectives		
<p>p72 The best things in life  Listening Playing games Strategy Taking notes Grammar Zero conditional Everyday English Making offers and suggestions</p>	<p>p74 Life goals Reading The Geography Lesson Vocabulary Adjectives in poems Grammar Expressing probability:</p>	<p>p76 A for and against essay Strategy Brainstorming ideas Expressing contrast</p>
Vocabulary bank p139 School: bad behaviour, School: compound nouns		
<p>p86 Silicon Valley  Listening Bright ideas Strategy Listening for statistics Vocabulary Business Everyday English Asking for and giving advice</p>	<p>p88 The English language Reading All you need to know about English Vocabulary Language Grammar Second conditional <i>I wish ...</i></p>	<p>p90 A formal email Strategy Using the correct register Expressing reason and result</p>
Vocabulary bank p140 Country facts, Electronic devices: compound nouns		
<p>p98 The greatest  Listening What's the greatest achievement in human history? Vocabulary insight Collocations: achievement Everyday English Expressing and justifying opinions</p>	<p>p100 The British honours system Reading Two points of view Strategy Identifying facts and opinions Vocabulary State and society Grammar <i>used to</i></p>	<p>p102 An opinion essay Strategy Selecting ideas Introducing examples and conclusions</p>
Vocabulary bank p141 Sport: places, Sport: compound nouns		
<p>p112 Behind the scenes  Listening Inflatable crowds Strategy Listening for main ideas Vocabulary Films Everyday English Giving and reacting to news</p>	<p>p114 The BBC story Reading A short history of the BBC Vocabulary Types of TV programme Grammar Question tags</p>	<p>p116 A film review Strategy Writing endings Vocabulary Describing films</p>
Vocabulary bank p142 Parts of a newspaper, Film genres		
<p>p124 Protest  Listening Blood phones Vocabulary Environment Everyday English Persuading, agreeing and disagreeing</p>	<p>p126 Eyes in the sky Reading The big picture Vocabulary insight Adjective suffixes: <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i> Grammar The passive: future</p>	<p>p128 Describing a process Strategy Checking your writing: spelling and punctuation Expressing sequence</p>
Vocabulary bank p143 Materials, Protest: verb phrases		

1

Our world

Reading and vocabulary Everyday life

1 SPEAKING Which of these things are most important to you? Which are least important? Number them 1 (most important) to 7 (least important).

- education ■ family ■ free time ■ friends ■ happiness
- health ■ success

2 Read the article about a film called *Life in a Day*. What things are important to people in the film?

STRATEGY

Scanning for specific information

If you need to find specific information in a text, like a name or a number, you do not need to read every word. You can quickly scan the text for key words.

To scan a text:

- decide what information you want to find: a number, a date, a time, a name.
- move your eyes quickly down the page until you find the information.
- do not read whole sentences until you have found your answer.

3 Read the strategy. Scan the article to complete sentences 1–7. You will find the information in paragraphs 1 and 2.

- 1 The film is by a director called
- 2 People recorded their day on July 2010.
- 3 They sent in video clips.
- 4 There were hours of footage.
- 5 It took weeks to make the film.
- 6 The film is minutes long.
- 7 There are countries in the film.

4 Read the article. Are the sentences true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 People recorded short video clips of a special day.
- 2 The film begins at the start of a new day.
- 3 People in the film have friends in other countries.
- 4 The director thinks we worry about different things.
- 5 People in the film don't have typical things in their pockets.
- 6 The man with empty pockets feels ashamed because he hasn't got any money.
- 7 The young woman is happy with her life.
- 8 Most people want to be rich and famous.

LIFE IN A DAY

What do you love? What do you fear? What's in your pocket? These are the questions from the film *Life in a Day*. Director Kevin Macdonald asked people around the world to answer the questions and send in a video clip from a typical day. He was interested in creating a picture of the world, a digital time capsule for the future. On 24 July 2010, people from Africa, Europe, America, Antarctica and Asia recorded events on their mobile phones and digital cameras and uploaded the results onto YouTube. Altogether there were 81,000 video clips, or 4,500 hours of footage. It took Macdonald and a team of researchers seven weeks to make them into a film.

The film starts at midnight. The moon is high in the sky, elephants are bathing in a river in Africa and a baby is sleeping. At the same time, in other parts of the world, people are getting up, brushing their teeth and making breakfast. In the next minutes of the film, which is one and a half hours long, we watch everyday routines from more than 140 different countries and see the connections between them. In one scene an American girl is playing with her hula hoop, in another a child is working as a shoeshine in Peru. One looks privileged, the other is poor, but then the shoeshine boy shows us his favourite thing – his laptop. He's very proud of it because he earned the money to pay for it.

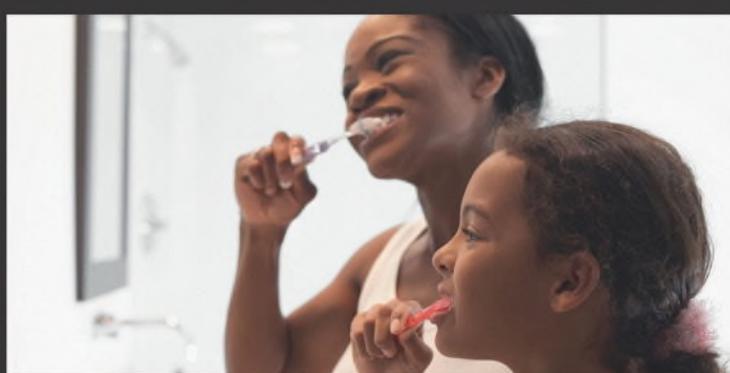
'We all care about the same things,' says the director and in some ways he's right. Family and friends are the things most people love and many of them are keen on sports, like football. But then one man says he loves his cat and another loves his fridge because it doesn't talk back!

Monsters, dogs and death are the things most people fear. One young girl is anxious about growing up and a man in Antarctica says, 'I'm afraid of losing this place.' But when asked, 'What's in your pocket?', the answers are surprising. We don't see an ID card, a shopping list, or a bus ticket. Instead, one person has a gun, then another shows us car keys for his Lamborghini. A poorer man says he has nothing. He's not ashamed of his poverty because he adds, 'But we are alive.'

The film ends just before midnight, with a young woman in her car. It's raining outside and she's fed up with her life. She was excited about *Life in a Day*, but her day was too boring to film. 'I just want people to know that I'm here,' she says. 'What she really wants is to be different, to matter,' says Macdonald. In *Life in a Day*, that's what most people want.

Vocabulary: adjectives + prepositions: feelings; compound nouns: everyday objects; collocations: *make* and *do*; phrasal verbs: *get*
Grammar: present simple and continuous; articles

Speaking: discussing everyday life, travel and immigration; persuading; asking for personal information
Writing: an informal letter



5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions from the film.

- What do you love?
- What do you fear?
- What's in your pocket?

Work with another pair and compare your answers. The director of *Life in a Day* thinks people are very similar. Is he right? Are your answers similar or different?

V insight Adjectives + prepositions: feelings

6 Study the highlighted adjectives in questions 1–8. Scan the article to find the missing prepositions. Complete the questions. Then work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 Which sports are you **interested**
- 2 Which possessions or achievements are you **proud**
- 3 Which school subjects are you **keen**
- 4 What do you get **anxious**
- 5 What are you **afraid**
- 6 What things might people feel **ashamed**
- 7 What do you get **fed up**
- 8 What do you get **excited**

V insight Compound nouns: everyday objects

7 A compound noun is a word or phrase that has two or more parts that combine to make a single meaning, for example, *car park*. Find compound nouns in the article to match definitions 1–6.

- 1 a portable machine with a keyboard
- 2 a thing you use to open the door of a car
- 3 a piece of paper that lets you travel from one place to another
- 4 a note of the things you want to buy
- 5 a document that shows who you are
- 6 a portable machine that lets you call people

8 Make ten compound nouns with the words below.

computer
parking credit
shopping concert
birthday
key

+

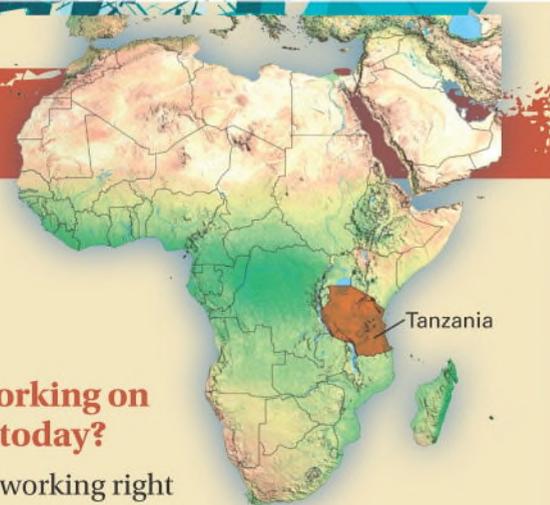
ring
game
centre card
ticket bag
program
board

9 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine you are filming a video clip for *Life in a Day*. What part of your day are you filming and why?

Vocabulary bank Routines page 134

1B ■ Grammar and listening Around the world

PROFILE: VOLUNTEER AFRICA



Eighteen-year-old Peter Hanson is working for Volunteer Africa for a month. He's building a new school in a village in Tanzania with four other volunteers. ¹At the moment, we're talking to him about the project.

What do you think of Tanzania?

It's an interesting place! ²I like it here because people are friendly, but it's very different from home. The village doesn't have electricity or running water, so we cook over a fire and carry water from a river. Life is hard.

³What do you do every day?

I get up at 7.00 a.m. because I always start work early. It's a difficult job, especially when it's hot, and ⁴it's very hot in the summer. We often finish at 12.30 p.m. and we don't usually work in the afternoons. However, I sometimes teach English to the children in the village, or we play a game of football in the evening. I'm never bored.

⁵Are you working on the school today?

Well, I'm not working right now because it's one o'clock. This afternoon I'm learning Swahili!

What are you doing this week?

⁶We're painting a classroom on Thursday, but we aren't working this Friday because the school is opening. We're organizing a party and we're very excited about it!



- 1 SPEAKING** Look at the photos and the map. Where is Tanzania? What are the people doing?
- 2** Read the profile from a magazine. How does Peter describe these things?
 - life in the village ■ the work ■ the weather ■ the people

Present simple and present continuous

- 3** Read the profile again. Match sentences 1–6 in the profile to rules a–f.

We use the present simple:

- to talk about routines or habits, especially with adverbs of frequency such as *always*, *often*, etc. and time expressions such as *every day*.
- to talk about facts and general truths.
- with verbs that describe states: *believe*, *hate*, *know*, *like*, *love*, *need*, *prefer*, *understand*, *want*.

We use the present continuous:

- to talk about actions that are happening now.
- to talk about actions that are happening around now.
- to talk about planned future arrangements.

Reference and practice 1.1 Workbook page 104

Voluntourism

Every year thousands of young people

¹ (take) time out from their work or studies and travel abroad. Some of them ² (not stay) in hotels and they ³ (not lie) on the beach and sunbathe. Instead, they ⁴ (help) people in developing countries with local projects. This new way of travel is called 'voluntourism'.

According to a recent travel survey, 25% of young people are interested in voluntourism. Organizations like BUNAC and Raleigh International ⁵ (match) people to projects around the world. These organizations ⁶ (make) a big difference in countries where children ⁷ (not go) to school, or people ⁸ (not have) access to medical facilities. Volunteers often ⁹ (build) new schools and medical centres in Africa and Asia.

South America is a very popular destination, too, and right now hundreds of volunteers ¹⁰ (work) there. Eighteen-year-old Maria Black is a volunteer from the UK. At the moment, she ¹¹ (teach) English in Chile. 'At the end of this week I ¹² (fly) home, but more volunteers ¹³ (arrive) tomorrow.

It's a great experience, so I ¹⁴ (want)

to volunteer again next summer. You see the world, learn about different cultures and help people, too.'



4 Make questions. Then work in pairs and answer the questions.

- Peter / build / a school on his own?
- he / always / work / in the mornings?
- what / he / do / at the moment?
- the children / sometimes / learn English / in the afternoons?
- Peter / paint classrooms / every day?
- what / Peter / do / this Friday?

5 Complete the text about voluntourism with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

6 **1.01 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Look at photos 1 and 2. What are the people doing? What type of projects are they working on? Listen to the podcasts and check your answers.

7 **1.01** Listen again and complete the information about Josep and Rosie in the table.

	Josep	Rosie	My project
Name of project		Sea Turtle	
Location	Costa Rica		
Number of people		seven	
Duration	one month		
Working hours		10.00 p.m. - 1.00 a.m.	
Difficulties	no clean water		
Benefits	learning a new language		
Current activity	collecting rubbish		

8 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Look at the advert. Then read the instructions.

Student A

Imagine you are a volunteer on one of the projects below. Complete the table in exercise 7 for your project, then phone your friend. Ask them to join you.

Student B

Your friend is on a volunteer project and wants you to join them. You need to know more about the project before you decide. Use the ideas in exercise 7 to help you.

Volunteers wanted!

- **Health First:** Build a medical centre in India.
- **Monkey Business:** Protect orang-utans in Borneo.
- **One World:** Teach children English in Tibet.

Want to help? Call: 01614960735

1C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary New friends

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 How often do you go on holiday?
- 2 Who do you go with?
- 3 Where do you usually stay?
 - in a hotel ■ with family or friends
 - on a campsite ■ in a hostel



couch ¹ /kaʊtʃ/ *noun* [C] a long seat, often with a back and arms, for sitting or lying on:

surfer ¹ /ˈsɜːfə(r)/ *noun* [C] **1** a person who rides on waves standing on a special board **2** (informal) a person who spends a lot of time using the Internet

2 1.02 Study the dictionary entries. Then listen to the introduction to a radio programme. What do you think a 'couch surfer' is?

3 1.03 Listen to the radio programme and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the speaker's main purpose?
 - a to say thank you to couch surfers
 - b to warn people about staying with strangers
 - c to explain the benefits of couch surfing
- 2 How do couch surfers usually thank people?
 - a they pay for their accommodation
 - b they give people a small gift
 - c they pay for meals
- 3 How does Lucas describe most couch surfers?
 - a they are mostly older people
 - b they are mostly younger people
 - c they are mostly people with families
- 4 Where are the members of www.couchsurfing.com from?
 - a Europe and South America
 - b the USA and Canada
 - c all over the world
- 5 What is the most important thing for couch surfers?
 - a to travel cheaply
 - b to experience new cultures
 - c to volunteer for local projects
- 6 Where is Mika staying right now?
 - a Canada
 - b Alaska
 - c Australia
- 7 What are couch surfers not doing?
 - a changing people
 - b changing the world
 - c changing cultures

V insight Collocations with *make* and *do*

4 A collocation is a group of words that are often used together. Study the examples in the table. Then add these words from the radio programme.

- a choice ■ friends ■ the housework ■ a meal ■ a sport ■ your best ■ good (noun) ■ a difference

<i>make</i>	<i>do</i>
a mistake	homework
a phone call	exercise
a journey	(someone) a favour
an excuse	a crossword
a mess	your hair

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of collocations in exercise 4.

- 1 Couch surfers aren't usually shy. They don't find it difficult to
- 2 Tom wasn't good at cooking, so he didn't for the family.
- 3 'Can I borrow your mobile? I need to
- 4 The ice hockey team, but they still didn't play very well.
- 5 'Can you and close the window? It's very cold in here!'
- 6 Mike and caught the wrong bus. That's why he's late.
- 7 We usually after school on Friday. This week it's football.
- 8 You can by working as a volunteer.

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the benefits of couch surfing? Is it a good way to make friends?
- 2 What are the difficulties? Is it a good idea to stay with strangers?
- 3 Which do you think is better? Why?
 - to travel cheaply and experience more
 - to travel comfortably and experience less

Asking for personal information

7 SPEAKING Look at the photo and answer the questions.

- 1 Where are they?
- 2 Do they know each other?
- 3 What are they talking about?
- 4 How do they feel?

8 1.04 Listen to the dialogue. Where is Gina from? Does she like London?

9 1.04 Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.

Asking for personal information

How do you ¹.....?

²..... are you from?

What's it ³..... there?

What do you think ⁴.....?

What do you do ⁵.....?

Are you ⁶.....?

Reacting

Me neither.

Really?

It's very different from ...

Actually, I love it.

I usually ...

Yes, I am. That sounds great.

10 1.05 Complete the dialogue with the phrases below. Then listen and check.

- I'm not bad. ■ I've got one sister. ■ No, she doesn't. ■ I spend time at the skatepark.
- Me too! ■ We're in the same class.

Dan So, how do you know Carly?

Amy ¹..... What about you?

Dan I play football with her brother, Marc.

Amy Have you got any brothers or sisters?

Dan ²..... She's older than me.

Amy Does she go to our school, too?

Dan ³..... She works in the library café.

Amy Really? I sometimes go there with my friends. What do you do after school?

Dan ⁴.....

Amy Are you good at skateboarding?

Dan ⁵..... Why don't you come along?

Amy No thanks, I'm not keen on it, but I'm good at bowling.

Dan ⁶..... Let's go bowling on Saturday then.

11 Read the dialogue again. Underline two questions which ask about free-time activities and one question which asks about family and friends.

12 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue. Use the dialogue in exercise 10 to help you.

You are at a friend's party when you meet a new person.

- Find out how they know your friend.
- Explain how you know them.
- Ask about their family.
- Ask about their free-time activities.
- Find something you both enjoy.

1D ■ Culture, vocabulary and grammar Immigration

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 How do you travel to school in the morning?
- 2 What type of people do you meet?
- 3 What do you see? Which language(s) do you hear?
- 4 What do you do during your journey?

2 Read the article about the Number 7 train. How is Manuela's journey similar to your own? How is it different?

3 Read the article again and complete the sentences. Use three words in each sentence.

- 1 Manuela is on the train because she is
- 2 The train is special because every station is like
- 3 In 1917, people moved to Queens because there
- 4 People came to New York because they wanted to find
- 5 Tomas Garcia worked hard, started saving and
- 6 The people in Tomas's bakery are from Mexico,

V insight Phrasal verbs with get

4 Study the highlighted phrasal verbs in the article. Read the sentences and replace the words in italics with the correct form of a phrasal verb.

- 1 I don't *have a good relationship with* my sister. We argue all the time.
- 2 It was eight o'clock when the train *arrived at* Jackson Heights.
- 3 It's always good to *escape at* the weekend and go somewhere new.
- 4 We're almost in the town centre. Let's *leave at* the next stop.
- 5 In 1900, immigrant children had to *deal with* a difficult childhood. Many worked to help their families.
- 6 Quick! *Climb onto* the bus. It's leaving soon!

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Are there any stops on the Number 7 route you'd like to get off at and explore? Why / why not?
- 2 Which languages and cultures can you find in your country?

EAST FACTS

New York population: about 8.2 million
Number of immigrants: over 2.9 million
1910: 75% of immigrants were from 5 countries
2010: 66% of immigrants were from 25 countries

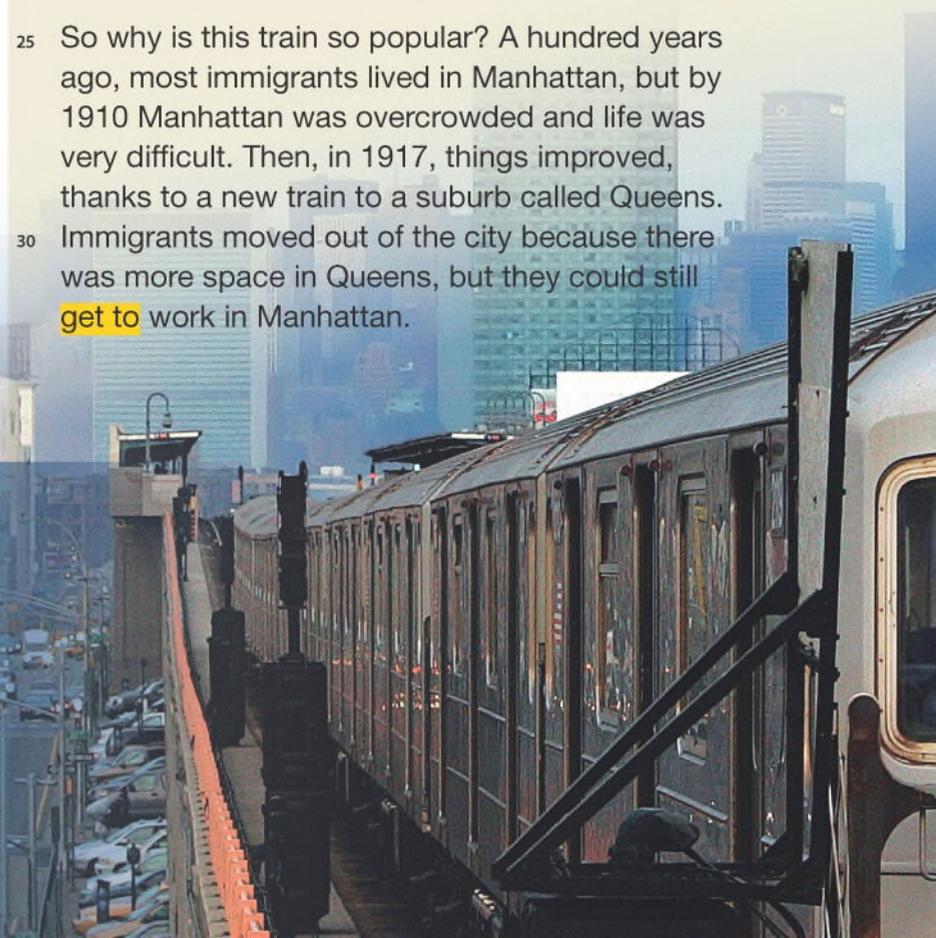


Around the world on the Number 7 train

It's 8.15 in the morning and Manuela Garcia is on her way to college in New York City. She's sitting on the Number 7 train and she's doing her homework, but she hasn't got much space. Two Chinese women are sitting next to her – they're laughing and chatting in Cantonese. A young man is on the other side – he's listening to Shakira on his MP3 player and eating some tacos. Then an old woman **gets on** the train and sits down nearby – she's wearing a sari and she's reading a book in Hindi. At Jackson Heights, the old woman **gets off**. It's raining outside and Manuela can see Indian and Pakistani shops in the street below.

Welcome to the International Express, the most international train journey in the world. Every day, some of New York's three million immigrants take the Number 7 train from Queens to Manhattan and each stop is like a different country. Get off at Flushing station and experience China, go to Corona and you're in Mexico; the next stop is India at Jackson Heights. Many immigrants are from Latin America, Eastern Europe, Africa or Asia. If you listen carefully, you can hear more than 100 different languages.

So why is this train so popular? A hundred years ago, most immigrants lived in Manhattan, but by 1910 Manhattan was overcrowded and life was very difficult. Then, in 1917, things improved, thanks to a new train to a suburb called Queens. Immigrants moved out of the city because there was more space in Queens, but they could still **get to** work in Manhattan.





These first immigrants came to New York to escape poverty and war, and to have a better life. Today, people come for the same reasons. Manuela Garcia's family is typical. Her father, Tomas, came from Mexico in 1986 and sold tacos from a small food stall next to Corona station. Tomas **got through** hard times, saved his money and bought a bakery. Today the jukebox there plays Mexican songs and a satellite TV shows Mexican TV programmes. 'We're proud of our culture, but the bakery is not just for Mexicans,' says Tomas. 'We have Polish and Turkish customers, too. We all **get on with** each other.'

The train speeds past LaGuardia airport as the rain stops and the sun comes out. Manuela looks out of the window and watches the planes take off. People are **getting away** to experience the world. Manuela smiles. She doesn't need to go to faraway countries – the world is right there on the Number 7 train.



Articles

6 Match sentences 1–6 to rules a–f. Then find more examples in the text.

- 1 I got on **a train** at Queens.
- 2 I got on a train at Queens. **The train** went to Manhattan.
- 3 It was **the Number 7 train**.
- 4 There are 8.2 million people in **New York**.
- 5 **Immigrants** come from many different countries.
- 6 Tomas Garcia is **a baker**. He's also **an immigrant**.

We use *a / an* when:

- a we talk about something or someone for the first time.
- b we say what someone's job is, or when we describe what someone or something is.

We use *the* when:

- c we talk about a person or thing that was mentioned before.
- d there is only one person or thing.

We use *no article* when:

- e we talk about something in general.
- f we use names of people, continents, countries or cities.

Reference and practice 1.2 Workbook page 105

7 Read the extract from an online encyclopaedia and choose *a / an, the* or *0* (= no article).

Ellis Island

Ellis Island is ¹**an / the** island in ²**the / 0** New York Harbour. It's ³**the / a** tiny place, but between 1892 and 1954, more than twelve million people arrived at ⁴**a / the** island. ⁵**The / 0** people were immigrants and they came to the United States from all over ⁶**the / 0** world. Fifteen-year-old Annie Moore and her two younger brothers, Anthony and Phillip, were the first immigrants to go there on 1 January 1892. ⁷**0 / The** children were from Ireland and, after ⁸**a / 0** long journey across ⁹**the / 0** Atlantic Ocean, they all hoped for ¹⁰**the / a** better future.

Today, ¹¹**the / 0** visitors come to Ellis Island to learn about ¹²**the / a** history of their country and find out about their families. Over 40% of all US citizens have ancestors who first arrived in America at ¹³**the / 0** island!

8 SPEAKING Complete the questions with *a / an, the* or *0* (= no article). Then work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you enjoy holidays abroad?
- 2 Are you interested in other cultures?
- 3 Have you got penfriend in another country?
- 4 Do you think it's difficult to live in new place?
- 5 What do you think are difficulties?
- 6 Is immigration important issue in your country? Why / why not?

DVD extra From Ireland to the USA

1E ■ Writing An informal letter



X-change Magazine: What's new?

Every year, thousands of students go on our exchange programmes all over the world. This month, we want to hear from YOU, so send us a letter about your experiences of being on an exchange programme. We want to know what you are learning: what's different, what's similar and what's new. Check out this page for the best two letters next month!

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photo and read the magazine advert. Would you like to go on an exchange programme? Why / why not?

STRATEGY

Preparing to write
Before you write, think carefully about the task.
 Think about:

- who you are writing to.
- the type of composition: e.g. a formal or informal letter / email, a blog entry, a report, an opinion essay, a review.
- the things you want to include.

Prepare a paragraph plan and make short notes for each paragraph.

2 Read the strategy. Then imagine you are writing to X-change Magazine. Answer the questions.

- 1 What type of composition do you have to write?
- 2 What do you need to include?
- 3 Which four things from the list below would you like to write about?
 - the people ■ everyday routines ■ free-time activities ■ the weather
 - the food ■ school life ■ the language
- 4 Read letters A and B on page 13. Which things in question 3 do they mention?

3 Read letters A and B again and complete the table.

	Letter A	Letter B
Where are the writers from?		
Where are they staying?		
Do they like their host families?		
Which things are different?		
Which things are similar?		
What activities are they doing today / at the weekend?		
What do they think of the programme?		

Talking about similarities and differences

4 Study the highlighted words in letters A and B. Which words are used to talk about

- 1 similarities? 2 differences?

5 Complete the sentences. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 The weather in my town is different from
- 2 Food in my country is similar to
- 3 My town is, in contrast to
- 4 Subjects in my school are the same as
- 5 My best friend and I have a lot in common and
- 6 We both
- 7 Neither of us

A

Calle Marina 32
08605 Barcelona
Spain

23 August 2013

Dear X-change,

I'm on an exchange programme in Barcelona and it's great! My host family is lovely and I'm already best friends with their son, Felipe. We **have a lot in common**: we're **both** keen on football and **neither of us** likes maths!

Many things are **similar**. School starts at the same time and the subjects **are like** the subjects I study at home. I'm not feeling homesick at the moment because people are very friendly.

Other things are **different**. It's warm and sunny, **in contrast to** England, where it rains all the time! Mealtimes are different, too. We always eat late, at nine o'clock, and we often have paella (it's typical Spanish food). Of course, the language is **not the same** and I am sometimes ashamed of my Spanish, but Felipe helps me.

It's Saturday today so I'm not going to school. I'm going to the beach with Felipe, then I'm watching Barcelona FC play at Camp Nou stadium. The X-change programme is a great way to see the world, make new friends and learn a new language!

Yours,
Conrad

B

32 King Street
London N12 44T
United Kingdom

23 August 2013

Hi X-change,

This is my first letter from London! My host family are nice, but their daughter Helen is quite shy – **unlike** me! We **have nothing in common**.

A lot of things are different here. London is an interesting city, but it's expensive and the people are **different from** people in Australia – they're not as friendly. Everyday life is different, too. Mealtimes are quite early and we don't go out in the evening. We usually watch TV.

Other things are **the same**. Food is **the same as** the food at home. School is **similar to** Australian schools, too. People are curious about Australia and they often ask me questions. I've made some friends here and we usually play basketball at break time – it's **just like** home.

Right now I'm feeling homesick – I'm fed up with the rain. But this weekend we're going to the Science Museum and I'm excited about that! It's a challenge to live in a new country, but it's also a great opportunity to try new things.

Yours,
Jenni

WRITING GUIDE

■ **Task** Imagine you are on a student exchange programme. Reply to the advert in *X-change Magazine*.

■ **Ideas** Answer the questions and make notes.

- 1 Which country are you visiting and what type of family are you staying with?
- 2 Look at the four topics you chose in exercise 2. Make notes about the similarities and differences.
- 3 What do you think about the X-change programme?

■ **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Say where you are and describe the host family.

Paragraph 2: Say which things are different.

Paragraph 3: Say which things are similar.

Paragraph 4: Say what you are doing today / at the weekend. Then give your opinion about the X-change programme.

■ **Write** Write a letter to the magazine. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Have you included the address and the date? Have you signed your letter?
- Have you included all the information asked for in the task? Have you used a variety of expressions to describe similarities and differences?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 1 Using a dictionary: parts of speech

1 Work in pairs. Read the statements and choose the ones that are true for you. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 I use a dictionary only at school.
- 2 I use a dictionary only at home.
- 3 I use a dictionary at school and at home.
- 4 I prefer to use an online dictionary.
- 5 I have a dictionary app on my phone.
- 6 I check every word that I don't know.
- 7 I check the meaning of new words after I have finished reading.
- 8 I never check the meaning of new words.

STRATEGY

Using a dictionary

A dictionary entry gives you more information about a new word than just its meaning. This additional information can help you to learn how to spell the word, how to pronounce it and how to use it in a sentence.

2 Read the strategy above. Then study the extract from a dictionary entry for *make*. What information does it give you? Match the words below to parts of the entry 1–8.

- headword ■ example sentence ■ part of speech
- definition ■ pronunciation and stress ■ collocations
- extra information about how to use the word
- grammar related to the word

1

2

3

4

5 **make** ¹ /meɪk/ verb [T] (pt, pp **made** /meɪd/)

► **CREATE** 1 to produce or create sth: *to make bread*
 ♦ This model is **made of** steel, and that one is **made out of** used matches. ♦ Cheese is **made from** milk.
 ♦ Those cars are **made in** Slovakia. ♦ Shall I **make** you a sandwich/*make a sandwich for you*? ♦ *to make breakfast* ♦ *to make a hole in something* ♦ *to make a law/rule* ♦ *to make a movie*

► **PERFORM ACTION** 2 [used with nouns] to perform a certain action: *to make a mistake/noise* ♦ *to make a guess/comment/statement/suggestion* ♦ *to make progress* ♦ *I've made an appointment to see the doctor.*

7 **HELP** Make can be used like this with a number of different nouns. Often there is a verb with a similar form, for example **make a decision = decide**. But if you use 'make' + noun, you can use an adjective with it: *He made the right decision.* ♦ *They made a generous offer.*

► **CAUSE** 3 to cause a particular effect, feeling, situation, etc: *The film made me cry.* ♦ *Flying makes him nervous.* ♦ *Her remarks made the situation worse.* ♦ *I'll make it clear to him that we won't pay.* ♦ **Make sure** you lock the car. ♦ *You don't need to know much of a language to make yourself understood.* ♦ *to make trouble/a mess/a noise*

8 ► **BECOME** 4 to make sb/sth become sth; to have the right qualities to become sth: *She was made (= given the job of) President.* ♦ *You can borrow some money this time, but don't make a habit of it.* ♦ *Karen explains things very clearly—she'd make a good teacher.* 5 to become sth; to achieve sth: *I'm hoping to make head of the department by the time I'm thirty.*

3 Read the dictionary entry again and answer the questions.

- 1 What part of speech is *make*?
- 2 What is the past tense form of *make*?
- 3 How many meanings of *make* are there?
- 4 What examples are there for the meaning 'cause'?
- 5 What information about *make* does the **HELP** section give you?

STRATEGY

Identifying parts of speech

All words belong to categories called parts of speech. Most dictionaries use abbreviations to show what part of speech a word is. Study the definitions of the most common parts of speech below. The abbreviations are given in brackets.

- 1 *noun* (n) = a word that names a person, a thing or an idea
- 2 *verb* (v) = a word that refers to an action or a state
- 3 *adjective* (adj) = a word that describes a noun
- 4 *adverb* (adv) = a word that describes a verb, an adjective or another adverb
- 5 *pronoun* (pron) = a word that is used instead of a noun
- 6 *preposition* (prep) = a word that shows the position of something, the time when something happens, etc.
- 7 *conjunction* (conj) = a word that joins two phrases or sentences

4 Read the strategy above. Then study the words below. What parts of speech are they? Add them to categories 1–7 in the strategy. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- and ■ at ■ bus ticket ■ but ■ car keys ■ do ■ excited
- get ■ in ■ laptop ■ often ■ on ■ proud ■ really ■ she
- shopping ■ them ■ understand ■ usually

5 Find the words *immigrate*, *immigrant* and *immigration* in a dictionary. Are the following statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 *Immigrate* is an adjective.
- 2 *Immigrate* is often used with the prepositions *to* and *from*.
- 3 *Immigrate* has an irregular past tense form.

- 4 *Immigrant* is a conjunction.
- 5 *Immigrant* can also be spelled *imigrant*.
- 6 *Immigrant* has three meanings.

- 7 *Immigration* is a noun.
- 8 *Immigration* doesn't have a plural form.

Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

■ anxious ■ ashamed ■ excited ■ keen ■ proud

- 1 Mark's on football. He's in the school team.
- 2 They're of their son. He's at Oxford University.
- 3 Do you get about going to rock concerts?
- 4 Are you about the history exam tomorrow?
- 5 Emma is of making her little sister cry.

Marks / 5

2 Match the words in A to the words in B to make compound nouns. Then complete the sentences.

A ■ bus ■ car ■ credit ■ parking ■ shopping

B ■ card ■ keys ■ list ■ ticket ■ ticket

- 1 You can buy a from the driver.
- 2 You can pay in cash or by
- 3 We'll have to walk if you can't find the
- 4 Do you write a before you go to the supermarket to buy food?
- 5 You'll get a if you leave your car there.

Marks / 5

3 Complete the text with the correct form of *make* or *do*.

One family, six continents, twelve good deeds

Jackson Lewis came home one day last year and asked his father, 'Why aren't we doing more to ¹ a difference in the world?' His father's answer was to take Jackson and his brother on a trip to ² good in the world. Right now, they're on a journey through twelve different countries. In every place they visit, they ³ their best to help people in need. Sometimes they look after children, sometimes they ⁴ meals and sometimes they teach English. Wherever they go, they ⁵ friends with a lot of different people.

Marks / 5

4 Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 We went by taxi, so we got the station on time.
- 2 I'm really stressed and I need to get, so I'm going on holiday next week.
- 3 She got the train and walked home.
- 4 It's going to be difficult to get tomorrow – I've got exams all day.
- 5 She paid the driver when she got the bus.

Marks / 5

Grammar

5 Complete the profile with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

PROFILE: VOLUNTEER ASIA

Eighteen-year-old Becky Greenberg is working for Volunteer Asia for a month. ¹ (she / help) to look after old and sick animals at an elephant camp in Thailand. We asked her about the project.

What ² (you / do) every day?

³ (I / get up) very early to give the elephants breakfast. ⁴ (elephants / need) a lot of food, so this can take quite a long time.

How much food ⁵ (an elephant / eat)?

At least 100 kg a day. But ⁶ (one elephant / not have) all that for breakfast! Our elephants have three meals a day.

⁷ (they / eat) lunch at the moment.

⁸ (the elephants / go out) today?

Yes, ⁹ (we / take) them to the river this afternoon. ¹⁰ (it / get) very hot after lunch and ¹¹ (they / love) playing in the water.

Marks / 11

6 Complete the text with *a / an, the* or *0* (= no article).

¹ New York City is located at the mouth of ² Hudson River on ³ east coast of ⁴ USA. But there was a time when ⁵ city did not exist. The Italian explorer Da Verrazzano was the first European to visit the area, but it was ⁶ Englishman who first landed there. Henry Hudson was ⁷ English sailor, but he was working for ⁸ Dutch East India Company at the time. He bought ⁹ animal skins from the Native Americans there and he took ¹⁰ skins back to Holland. Soon after that, the Dutch built ¹¹ town in the area. They called it New Amsterdam. In 1664, the British took ¹² town and gave it ¹³ new name: New York. Since then, ¹⁴ town has become one of the most important cities in the world.

Marks / 14

Total / 45

2 Places

Reading and vocabulary Ghost towns

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photos of ghost towns and discuss the questions. Then read the text and compare your ideas.

- 1 What kind of people lived there? Think about:
 - farmers ■ miners ■ soldiers ■ criminals
 - business people ■ railway workers
- 2 Why did people go to these towns?
- 3 Why did they leave? Think about:
 - unemployment ■ pollution ■ natural disasters
 - war ■ famine ■ crime ■ overcrowding ■ poverty

STRATEGY

Identifying paraphrase

Paraphrasing means using different words to express the same idea. To identify paraphrase, look out for:

- synonyms (words with similar meaning) and antonyms (words with opposite meaning).
- sentences that say the same thing, but in a different order.
- ideas that are summarized and not repeated word for word.

2 Read the strategy. Underline sentences in the text that are similar to sentences 1–9. Then match sentences 1–9 to places A–C.

- 1 There was a lot of pollution.
- 2 People in the town were religious.
- 3 People went there to make money.
- 4 There wasn't any light.
- 5 People left because they didn't have jobs.
- 6 Animals live there today.
- 7 There was a lot of crime.
- 8 There were farms near the town.
- 9 People left because of natural and man-made disasters.

- A Kowloon Walled City
- B Craco
- C Kolmanskop

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 Which town has the most surprising story?
- 2 Which place would you like to visit?
- 3 Does your town have any of the ghost towns' problems?

V insight Antonyms: describing places

4 Find antonyms of these adjectives in the text.

- 1 deserted (line 5)
- 2 clean (line 5)
- 3 wide (line 7)
- 4 unpopular (line 9)
- 5 safe (line 11)
- 6 quiet (line 36)
- 7 messy (line 47)
- 8 modern (line 48)

Ghost towns:

Ghost towns ... why did people live there?
Why did they leave?
Read about three unloved places from around the world ...



Name: Kowloon Walled City Location: China

Then: Hundreds of years ago, it was a Chinese fort and only soldiers lived there. Then in the early 20th century, the soldiers left and squatters* moved in. By 1980, the 0.03 km² city had 500 buildings inside its walls and 33,000 residents lived there.

5 The city was crowded, dirty and full of rubbish. People called it 'the city of darkness' because the buildings were so high, there was no sunlight in the narrow streets below.

Why did people go there? There were no laws and no police in the city, so it was popular with criminals and people with illegal businesses. The Chinese government didn't do anything about the city because it was dangerous and difficult to control.

Why did people leave? In 1993, the government finally moved people out of the city and destroyed it.

Now: One building and the city gate are left. You can see them 15 in Kowloon Walled City Park.



Vocabulary: antonyms: describing places; places in town; the senses; verbs + prepositions; collocations: descriptive adjectives

Grammar: past simple and continuous; *while, as* and *when*

Speaking: talking about cities and towns; discussing acts of kindness; talking about the origin of place names; asking for and giving directions

Writing: a travel blog

then and now

Name: Craco **Location:** Italy

Then: The historic town of Craco is hundreds of years old. In the past, it was an important town with a castle, a church, a market, a university and a prison. Its population was about 2,500.

Why did people go there? The town had strong connections with the church, and farmers grew food on the land around the town.

Why did people leave? Craco lost many people because of a plague* in 1656. Wars and famine* also made people leave. Between 1892 and 1922,

about 1,300 left and went to North America. There were earthquakes, too, and many people died. By 1963, no one lived in the town.

Now: Craco is falling apart. If you want to visit, go there soon. The next earthquake may be its last.

Name: Kolmanskop **Location:** Namibia

Then: In 1910, Kolmanskop was a lively mining town. A thousand people lived there, many of them German miners. The town had a hospital, a theatre, a school, a casino, a furniture factory and a sports centre. It also had the first tramline in Africa and a railway station.

Why did people go there? In 1908, a railway worker found diamonds in the Namib desert. Many people went there because they wanted to make their fortune.

Why did people leave? By 1920, there were no more diamonds left. People started to leave the town because there was no work and no money. In 1954, the last person left, and sand started to cover the pretty gardens and tidy streets.

Now: One or two old buildings are still standing, but sand dunes cover most of the town. The town is deserted; only birds, hyenas and snakes live there now.

* squatters = people who live in a place illegally

* plague = a disease caused by rats

* famine = a time when there is no food

5 Complete the sentences with words in exercise 4. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- The city is always during carnival. Thousands of people come and celebrate.
- The river was There was a lot of pollution from the town's factories.
- I don't like cities with lots of tall, new buildings. They all look the same.
- It was late at night, and the shopping centre was There was no one there.
- That restaurant looks Lots of people are queuing to get in.
- There are no buses in this part of town because the roads are too
- This road is really There is a lot of traffic and it is difficult to cross.
- The park was clean and There was no rubbish and no graffiti.

V Places in town

6 Study the highlighted words in the text. Put them into the correct category A–F. Then add the places below to categories A–F. Can you add two more words to each category?

- cinema ■ football stadium ■ bus station ■ taxi rank
- library ■ skatepark ■ underground ■ art gallery
- concert hall ■ leisure centre ■ police station

- A Entertainment
- B Shopping
- C Transport
- D Education
- E Sports
- F Services

7 In which of the places in exercise 6 can you do these things?

- catch a train ■ see a play ■ watch a sport
- borrow books ■ work for a business
- win and lose money ■ listen to music
- do a sport ■ find work

8 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine you are designing a new town. Use the ideas below to help you. Prepare your plan and present it to the rest of the class. Decide on the best plan.

- the location of your new town
- why people should live there
- the four most important places to include
- four places that you would not include

Vocabulary bank Geographical features page 135

2B ■ Grammar and listening The kindness of strangers



Gemma **was** excited. She was also a bit nervous. She usually **met** her friends at the weekend, but that Saturday she was at the bus station. This wasn't her first bus trip on her own, but it was almost five hours to her aunt's house in Toronto.

It was nine o'clock when she **arrived** and the station was crowded. There **were** long queues of people and it **took** 45 minutes to buy a ticket. When she **got on** her bus, there was one seat left, next to a boy in a basketball shirt. He **looked up** from his mobile phone when she **sat down**. Gemma **smiled**, but he didn't smile back. He didn't want to talk, he just looked out of the dirty window. 'What did I do? Was I rude?' she **thought**; then she **sighed** and **closed** her eyes. She **needed** a rest ...

1 SPEAKING Look at the photo. Where is the girl? How does she feel? Read the beginning of the story and compare your ideas.

Past simple

- 2** Study the highlighted verbs in the story. Which ones are regular? Which are irregular? What are their infinitives?
- 3** Read the story again and find more examples of the past simple. Then answer the questions.
 - 1 How do we make negative and question forms of the verb *be*?
 - 2 How do we make negative and question forms of other verbs?

Reference and practice 2.1 Workbook page 106

4 Complete the next part of the story. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

A few hours later, Gemma ¹..... (wake up). Outside there ²..... (be) empty streets and ugly houses, grey skies and rain. The boy beside her ³..... (get up) to leave. 'Where are we?' asked Gemma. 'Hamilton,' said the boy. '⁴..... we (go) through Toronto?' she asked. 'Yes, we did,' he replied. 'We ⁵..... (leave) Toronto an hour ago and ...' Gemma ⁶..... (not wait) to hear more. She quickly ⁷..... (get off) the bus before it left and ⁸..... (call) her aunt. No reply. She ⁹..... (try) again, but her phone stopped working. Then, things got worse. Gemma reached for her bag, but it was still on the bus and the bus ¹⁰..... (not be) in the station any more. Gemma ¹¹..... (begin) to cry. 'Does this belong to you?' said a voice behind her. It was the boy in the basketball shirt and he ¹²..... (have) her bag ...

5 Make questions. Then work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 what / mistake / Gemma / make ?
- 2 what / Hamilton / like ?
- 3 what / the weather / like ?
- 4 why / Gemma / start to cry ?
- 5 the boy / help / Gemma ?
- 6 how / Gemma / react ?

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Invent an ending for the story. Use the past simple form of the verbs below and your own ideas.

■ buy ■ call ■ explain ■ find out ■ forget ■ go ■ invite ■ laugh ■ leave ■ like ■ smile ■ talk ■ walk

7 **1.06** Listen to the ending of the story and compare your ideas in exercise 6.



World Kindness Day

¹In 1963, Mr Seiji Kaya was a teacher at Tokyo University. ²Every day, Mr Kaya took the train to work. ³At 8 a.m. one February morning, he was waiting for his train. ⁴It was snowing and a lot of people were at the station. ⁵Mr Kaya was getting on the train when a man stole his bag.

⁶He shouted for help, but no one tried to stop the thief.

Mr Kaya was upset but no one asked if he was OK. In fact, no one talked to him at all.

After this bad experience, Mr Kaya started to encourage his students to 'be brave and practise small acts of kindness every day'. He wanted to create a wave of kindness across Japan, so he started the Small Kindness Movement. In 1997, 13 November became World Kindness Day and today people celebrate it all over the world!

Past simple and past continuous

8 Read about World Kindness Day and answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Mr Kaya from?
- 2 What did he do every day?
- 3 What happened one February morning?
- 4 Why did he start the Small Kindness Movement?
- 5 How many countries were part of the Small Kindness Movement?

9 Read the text again. Match sentences 1–6 to rules a–f.

We use the past simple for:

- a a completed past action or a past state.
- b a past habit.
- c a sequence of actions in the past.

We use the past continuous for:

- d background descriptions.
- e an action or actions in progress at a specific time in the past.

We use the past simple and the past continuous for:

- f a longer action interrupted by a shorter action.

Reference and practice 2.2 Workbook page 106

10 1.07 Read about four different acts of kindness. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form. Then listen and check.

- 1 We (look) for the station and it (rain). Anyway, we (look) at our map when we (meet) an old lady. She (not know) the way to the station, but she (give) us her umbrella!
- 2 When I was a child, I (visit) my grandparents every weekend. They (have) a dog called Bono. One day, I (walk) the dog when I (get) lost. I (be) lucky because a woman from the village (find) me and (call) my grandma.
- 3 Yesterday I (wait) in my car at a traffic light. An old man (cross) the road with two bags of shopping when he (drop) one of his bags. I (get out) of my car and (help) him pick it all up.
- 4 Last week, I (stand) in a ticket queue in the London Underground when a girl (give) me her train ticket. She (not want) any money for it, she just wanted to give it to someone else.

11 **SPEAKING** Think about a time when you helped someone or someone helped you. Make notes about the things below. Then tell your stories to the rest of the class. Which act of kindness do you think was the most generous?

- When did it happen?
- What were you doing?
- What was happening in the background (the weather, people, etc.)?
- Why did you help them, or why did they help you?
- How did you feel?

2C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary Getting around

1 SPEAKING Can you name the five senses? Which senses do you use to find out about these things?

- an ice cream ■ rain ■ new friends ■ music ■ a sandy beach ■ a ghost ■ a fire

V The senses

2 Complete the table with these words.

- hear ■ hearing ■ nose ■ see ■ skin ■ smelly ■ taste ■ tasty ■ tongue ■ touch

Sense	Body part	Activity	Adjective
sight	eyes	I can ¹	sighted
²	ears	I can ³	
⁴	⁵	I can taste ...	⁶
smell	⁷	I can smell ...	⁸
⁹	¹⁰	I can feel ...	

3 **1.08** Imagine you are visiting the place in the photos. Look at the photos and listen to the sounds. Then finish the sentences in the third column of the table in exercise 2. Use your imagination.



4 **1.09** Listen to a radio programme about a traveller. What is unusual about him? Which senses does he use when he travels?

5 **1.09** Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 Terri never walks around cities.
- 2 Terri went to Istanbul two years ago.
- 3 People always helped him when he was lost.
- 4 Terri once used his sense of smell to find out where he was.
- 5 In Istanbul people usually queue at bus stops.
- 6 Terri prefers train stations to bus stops.
- 7 Sounds give him an idea of a place.
- 8 Terri thinks sighted travellers should listen more to people talking.

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Think about a place you visited. What do you remember most about that place? Talk about the things you:
 - saw ■ heard ■ tasted ■ smelled ■ felt
- 2 Which sense helped you remember the most? Number them 1–5 in order of importance.
 - sight ■ hearing ■ taste ■ smell ■ touch



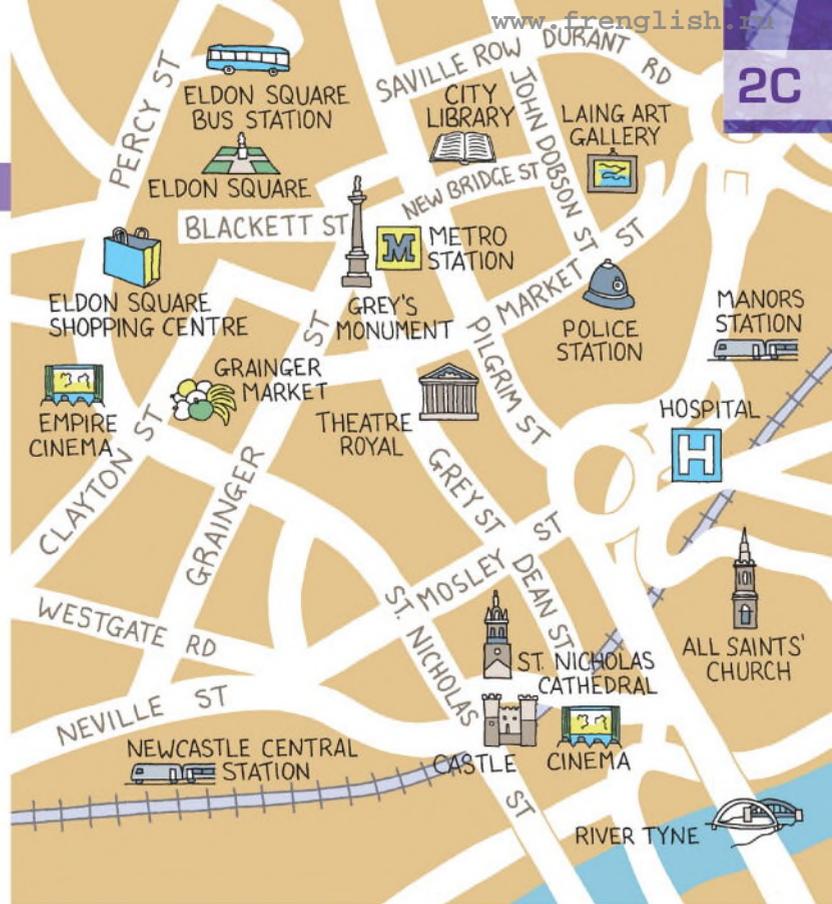
Asking for and giving directions

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the map of Newcastle and find these places.

- a metro station
- an art gallery
- a market
- two cinemas
- a cathedral
- a railway station
- the river

8 **1.10** Listen to the dialogue. Where are the speakers? Where do they want to go?

9 **1.10** Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.



Asking for directions

Which ¹..... is the ... ?
 Could you ²..... us / me how to get to ... ?
 Do you know how to get to ... ?
 Can you help us?
 We're looking for

Giving directions

Go ³..... this road, towards / away from the
 Then walk ⁴..... the
⁵..... right / left right into
 It's the first / second / third road

Asking for repetition

Sorry, I didn't ⁶..... that.
 Could you say that again?

10 **1.11** Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- **Sue** Sorry, I'm not sure I understood. Could you repeat that, please?
- **Teo** That's right.
- **Sue** OK, and then?
- **Sue** Oh, I see. So I go down New Bridge Street.
- **Teo** Well, when you reach the end of New Bridge Street you'll see Grey's monument, and there's a metro station right next to it.
- **Sue** Thank you!
- **Teo** Sure, go along John Dobson Street, and then turn right on to New Bridge Street. The metro station is there, but at the moment it's closed.
- **Sue** Excuse me. Can you help us? We're looking for the nearest metro station.
- **Teo** Yes, it's very near here. Go straight on, along John Dobson Street towards the river. Walk past Durant Road and Saville Row towards Market Street. When you get to New Bridge Street, turn right.

11 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of giving directions and asking for repetition.

12 SPEAKING Work in pairs. You are on Blakett Street. Take it in turns to ask for and give directions to these places. Remember to ask for repetition if you do not understand.

- the railway station
- a library
- a theatre
- a cinema
- the river

Vocabulary bank Prepositions of movement page 135

1 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 What does your name mean?
- 2 Is there a story behind your name?
- 3 Do you know other people who have the same name?

2 Study the names below. In which country are these places? Do you know what the names mean? Read the extract from a travel book and check your answers.

- Nambucca ■ Uluru ■ Murwillumbah
- Melbourne ■ Bondi Beach

3 Read the extract again and answer the questions.

- 1 How did the Aborigines name places?
- 2 Who were the first Europeans to arrive in Australia?
- 3 How did they feel when they arrived?
- 4 What type of names did they use?
- 5 What was special about Hell's Gates?
- 6 What happened at Gerringong?
- 7 How did Nowhere Else probably get its name?

V insight Verbs + prepositions

4 Find these verbs in the extract and write the prepositions that follow them.

- learn
- borrow
- belong
- happen
- wait
- hope
- warn
- think

5 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple or past simple form of the verbs in exercise 4.

- 1 The sign people the dangerous road.
- 2 The name Melbourne a British Prime Minister.
- 3 No one knows what the two explorers.
- 4 We can a lot Aboriginal place names.
- 5 Most people never the meaning of place names.
- 6 The Europeans a better life in Australia.
- 7 The sailors didn't want to leave without their captain. The ship him in Botany Bay.
- 8 I a book about Australia the library.

6 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Which of the place names do you think is the strangest? Which is the most memorable? Why?
- 2 Think about a strange or unusual place name in your country. Do you know the story behind the name?

What's in a name?

Last year, as I was travelling through Australia, I often stopped at places with strange or unusual names: names like Murwillumbah and Waterloo. I often asked myself, 'Where do all these names come from? And what can we learn from them?' Local people sometimes knew the answer and sometimes they didn't, so I decided to look at these place names more closely and found out some interesting facts.

Many place names give us a clue because they describe physical characteristics, like 'big hill', 'dry desert', or 'tall tree'. Thousands of years ago, this is how the first Australians – the Aborigines – named places. Today, in Australia, there are thousands of places with Aboriginal names, towns like Murwillumbah (good campsite), Nambucca (entrance to the sea), Bondi Beach from the word 'Boondi' (the sound of water falling over rocks) and Uluru (big rock).

The Europeans had different ideas. When they first arrived in 1606, they wanted to make this strange new land feel like home. How did they do it? Well, they borrowed names from the country they came from – it showed that these places belonged to them. French and Dutch place names like Bougainville and Arnhem Land started to appear along the Australian coast. Then, in 1770, the English explorer Captain Cook arrived in Botany Bay. Soon, there was Melbourne, a town named after a British Prime Minister, and Waterloo, named after a famous battle between England and France.



There are other names with more local stories to tell. They tell us what happened to people who lived there. I was waiting for a bus in Tasmania when I noticed a sign for Hell's Gates.

- 30 Later, I found out that the town got its name from a terrible prison nearby. The origins of Gerringong in New South Wales are equally dark. While I was visiting a museum there, a guide was explaining its history. Gerringong means a 'place of peril*' – it was the word the
- 35 Aborigines shouted when they first saw Captain Cook's ship. Other names tell us how people felt when they arrived, like Mount Disappointment and Nowhere Else in the Australian Outback*.
- 40 Perhaps the people who named these places hoped for something better!

- Altogether there are over 250,000 names in Australia; names of rivers, mountains, plains, towns and cities and many more. These names
- 45 can tell us what we can find there, they can tell us about history, they can warn us about danger or they can welcome us. Next time you travel to a new place, think about its name. What is it telling you?

* peril = danger

* the outback = mostly uninhabited, dry land in inland Australia

while, as and when

- 7 Find examples of *while*, *as* and *when* in the extract. Then complete the rules with the words below.

■ beginning ■ longer ■ shorter ■ same ■ after

We can use *while*, *as* and *when* to talk about actions that take place at the same time.

- a We usually use *while* or *as* to introduce the action.
- b We use *while* or *as* for two longer actions that happen at the time.
- c We use *when* to introduce a action that interrupts a longer action.
- d We use *when* to talk about one event that happens immediately another.
- e *While*, *as* and *when* can go at the or in the middle of sentences.

Reference and practice 2.3

Workbook page 107

- 8 Read the story and choose the correct words.

My cousin Jake went to Australia last year. He was staying in Melbourne ¹**when / while** he decided to go to Lake Eyre in the Australian Outback. He was driving through the outback ²**when / as** he saw a sign for William Creek, the smallest town in Australia. ³**When / While** he got to the town, he saw a petrol station, a car park and a hotel. There was even a small museum. The hotel was open, so he had something to eat. He was talking to some local people ⁴**when / while** he was having his lunch. They were telling him stories about the outback ⁵**when / while** they heard a strange noise. ⁶**As / When** they were looking under the table, something crawled out of Jake's bag. It was a scorpion!

- 9 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Choose five of the sentences below and think of a suitable ending for each. Tell the endings to your partner. Can they guess which sentence it is?

- 1 I was watching a TV programme about Australia when ...
- 2 My friend was sending a text message while ...
- 3 While I was waiting in the cinema queue, ...
- 4 My teacher was explaining the past simple while ...
- 5 As I was waiting for the bus, ...
- 6 The lights went out while ...
- 7 When I woke up this morning, ...
- 8 As we were walking down the street, ...
- 9 My friend was looking out of the window when ...
- 10 As I was helping an old lady cross the road, ...

2E ■ Writing A travel blog



- 1 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Look at the photos from a travel blog and answer the questions.
- Which country do you think the blog is about? Why?
 - What activities can you see? How would you describe them?
 - What do you like doing on holiday?
- 2** Read travel blog entries A and B. Match photos 1–4 to entries A and B.

A Home Profile Photos Search

My album

25 June

Last week I went to Queenstown in New Zealand. I took a bus from Christchurch, through the mountains and past **peaceful** lakes. It was a **long, tiring** trip, but while I was travelling, I met a girl called Kate. She was from Queenstown and she was very helpful. She told me all about the place.

Queenstown is in a **beautiful** location. It's next to Lake Wakatipu and it was originally a Maori settlement. Then in the 1860s there was a gold rush. That's when the Europeans came and settled there.

While I was staying in Queenstown, I didn't see any gold, but I did see a lot of adventure sports. Queenstown is **famous** for them. The weather was **chilly**, but **sunny** and **bright**, so I tried snowboarding. I also went to a music festival. It was very **busy**, but I met a lot of **friendly** people.

As well as festivals and sports, I visited some **lively** markets and ate at some **popular** (and **expensive**) restaurants. Queenstown was a **fantastic** place to stay!

B Home Profile Photos Search

My album

1 August

When I arrived in Wellington the weather wasn't nice. It wasn't a good start to my stay, but on the nice journey there, I read that Wellington was a nice city, with lots of things to see and do. I wasn't disappointed.

Wellington is on the south coast of New Zealand's North Island. It's an old city with a fascinating history. The Maori people lived there for hundreds of years before the British arrived in 1839.

There were lots of interesting places to see in Wellington. The parks were nice, the streets were nice and tidy, and the people were nice. While I was staying there, I visited the Te Papa National Museum and learned about the Maori people. Lots of tourists had the same idea – it's a very nice place! On my last day, I went shopping on Cuba Street. The shops were expensive, but luckily I found a nice coffee shop.

V insight Collocations: descriptive adjectives

- 3** Complete the table with the highlighted words from travel blog entry A. Some words can be used in more than one category.

The journey	short, dangerous, safe, exciting, boring
The weather	stormy, windy, hot, rainy, cold
The people	polite, nice, young
The place	historic, pretty, cheap, unpopular, awful, crowded, fascinating

- 4** What would you say in these situations? Use adjectives in exercise 3.

- There are a lot of people on the bus. **It's crowded!**
- You pay twenty euros for a sandwich at a café.
- The mountain road is very narrow.
- There's no one else swimming in the lake.
- It's starting to snow.
- The hostel you're staying in is very dirty.
- A lot of people visit this town.
- There aren't any clouds in the sky.
- You get lost and someone helps you.
- You spend the whole day sightseeing.

STRATEGY
Avoiding repetition

When you write, don't use the same words all the time. Use different adjectives, and try to use new words you have learned. This will help you to remember new vocabulary and make your writing more interesting.

- 5** Read the strategy. Then read travel blog entry B from the same trip. Underline the word the writer uses to describe the weather, the journey, the city, places in the city and the people. Replace the word with an adjective from the list.

■ cheap ■ sunny ■ long ■ popular ■ friendly ■ lively ■ pretty ■ clean

DVD extra Queenstown, New Zealand

WRITING GUIDE

- **Task** Think about an interesting place you visited in the past. Write a travel blog entry about the place and your visit.
- **Ideas** Read the instructions and make notes.
 - Decide which place you are going to write about.
 - Choose four of these things to write about.
 - How and when you got there.
 - The location of the place and its history.
 - The name of the place and where it comes from.
 - What you did and what you saw.
 - What the weather was like.
 - What the people were like.
- **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Introduction. Say where you went and how you got there.

Paragraph 2: Give background information. Say something about the place and its history.

Paragraph 3: Say what you did and saw.

Paragraph 4: Sum up why you liked it.
- **Write** Write a description of the place you visited. Use the paragraph plan to help you.
- **Check** Check the following points.
 - Have you included the information asked for in the task?
 - Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
 - Is there a variety of adjectives?
 - Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 2 Using a dictionary: synonyms and antonyms

1 Work in pairs. Think of a town or city you know well. Tell your partner about the places below.

- a a cheap place to eat
- b famous monuments to see
- c a beautiful area to walk around
- d old buildings to take photos of
- e a quiet place to relax
- f a large market

2 Read phrases a–f in exercise 1 again. Which six words in the phrases are adjectives?

STRATEGY

Using a dictionary to find synonyms and antonyms

Learning the synonyms and antonyms of a word can help you to improve your reading and writing skills. For example, they can help you to identify paraphrases when reading a text and to avoid repetition when writing.

You can find useful information about the synonyms and antonyms of a word in a dictionary. Most dictionaries use the following abbreviations:

- SYN = synonym (a word with a similar meaning)
- OPP = antonym (a word with an opposite meaning)

The synonyms and antonyms of a word are always the same part of speech as the word itself. For example, if the word is an adjective, all its synonyms and antonyms will be adjectives, too.

3 Read the strategy above. Then study the dictionary entry for *cheap* and answer the questions.

- 1 What is a synonym of *cheap*?
- 2 What is an antonym of *cheap*?

cheap /tʃi:p/ *adj* (**cheaper**; **cheapest**) **1** low in price, costing little money: *Oranges are cheap at the moment.* ♦ *Computers are getting cheaper all the time.* **SYN** inexpensive **OPP** dear, expensive **2** charging low prices: *a cheap hotel/restaurant* **SYN** inexpensive **OPP** expensive **3** low in price and quality and therefore not attractive: *The clothes in that shop look cheap.* **IDM** dirt cheap → dirt

4 Complete the table with the words below. Use a dictionary to help you.

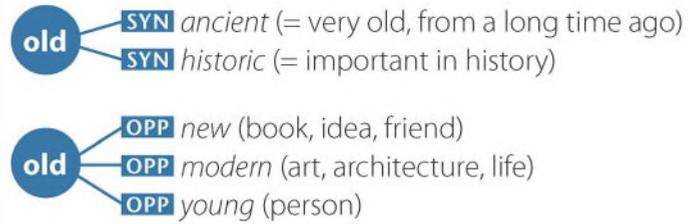
- ancient ■ big ■ expensive ■ inexpensive ■ modern
- noisy ■ peaceful ■ pretty ■ small ■ ugly ■ unknown
- well-known

adjective	synonym	antonym
1 cheap	<i>inexpensive</i>	<i>expensive</i>
2 famous		
3 beautiful		
4 old		
5 quiet		
6 large		

STRATEGY

Using synonyms and antonyms correctly

Some words, especially adjectives, can have more than one synonym or antonym. These words are often used in different contexts, so it is important to choose the correct synonym or antonym for the context. For example:



To help you choose the correct synonym or antonym, look at the dictionary entry for the word. Example sentences, **HELP** and information boxes give you extra information so that you choose the most suitable word for the context.

5 Read the strategy above. Then study the dictionary notes and choose the correct adjectives in sentences 1–5.

- 1 That music is too **loud** / **noisy**. Turn it down.
- 2 Our flat is on a main road, so it is very **loud** / **noisy**.
- 3 Anna is very **tall** / **high**. She's a basketball player.
- 4 How **tall** / **high** is this mountain?
- 5 Sam is a **big** / **large** boy for his age.

loud /laʊd/ *adj* (**louder**; **loudest**) *adv* **1** making a lot of noise; not quiet: *Can you turn the TV down? It's too loud.* ♦ *Could you speak a bit louder – the people at the back can't hear.* **OPP** quiet, soft

HELP Loud or noisy? Loud is usually used to describe the sound itself or the thing producing the sound: *a loud noise/bang* ♦ *loud music*. Noisy is used to describe a person, animal, place, event, etc. that is very loud or too loud: *a noisy road/party/engine/child*.

OTHER WORDS FOR

big

Big and **large** can both be used when talking about size or number: *a big/large house* ♦ *a big baby*. **Large** is more formal and should be used in writing, unless it is in an informal style. **Large** is not usually used to describe people, except to

HELP Tall or high? Tall and high have similar meanings. We use **tall** to describe the height of people, trees and other narrow objects: *He is six foot three inches tall.* ♦ *A tall oak tree stands in the garden.* ♦ *I saw the tall skyscrapers of Manhattan.* We use **high** to describe things that are not narrow: *high mountains* ♦ *The wall is two metres high.* and the distance of something from the ground: *a room with high ceilings*

6 Match words 1–4 with synonyms and antonyms a–d. Then find the words in a dictionary and compare their meanings.

- | | |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| 1 short | a OPP unsafe, dangerous |
| 2 cold | b SYN awful, terrible |
| 3 safe | c OPP long, tall |
| 4 bad | d SYN chilly, cool |

Vocabulary

- 1 Read the text and write the antonyms of the adjectives in italics.

Tourist attractions Spain

The Rastro of Madrid is a famous street market in Spain. It's in the historic centre of Madrid, where the buildings are very ¹*modern* and the streets are very ²*wide*. The area gets ³*deserted* on Sunday mornings because thousands of people go to the market. When the Rastro opens at 9 a.m., all of the stalls are ⁴*messy*, but at the end of the day, you can't find anything and the streets are very ⁵*clean*. It's ⁶*safe* to take a lot of money to the Rastro because someone might steal it from you.

Marks / 6

- 2 Complete the definitions with places in town.

- 1 you can see famous paintings here:
- 2 you go here if you break your leg:
- 3 you can borrow books here:
- 4 you can study a science degree here:
- 5 you go here if someone steals your bag:

Marks / 5

- 3 Complete the sentences with the words below.

■ hear ■ sight ■ skin ■ smelly ■ tongue

- 1 Put sunscreen on your so that it doesn't burn.
- 2 That cheese is very I don't like it.
- 3 Jack lost his in an accident, so now he's blind.
- 4 We can the birds singing when we wake up.
- 5 A person's can identify four different flavours.

Marks / 5

- 4 Complete sentence b with three words so that it has a similar meaning to sentence a. Use the correct form of the verbs below.

■ belong ■ borrow ■ learn ■ wait ■ warn

- 1 a Travelling teaches you many things.
b You can from travelling.
- 2 a My friend lent me this book.
b I from my friend.
- 3 a They were at the taxi rank for an hour.
b They taxi for an hour.
- 4 a That's my brother's digital camera.
b That digital camera brother.
- 5 a They told us to be careful of scorpions in the grass.
b They scorpions in the grass.

Marks / 5

Grammar

- 5 Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

One day last year, I ¹ (go) to our local shopping centre with some friends. I ² (take) my mobile phone with me. The next day, I realized that I ³ (not have) my phone. My mum ⁴ (call) my number to see if my phone was at home. We listened, but we ⁵ (not hear) the ringtone. Suddenly, my mum's phone started ringing. She ⁶ (answer) it and ⁷ (speak) to a woman who ⁸ (have) my phone. We ⁹ (arrange) to meet at her house. When I got there, she ¹⁰ (give) me back my phone. I couldn't believe my luck!

Marks / 10

- 6 Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Where (be) you yesterday morning?
- 2 Rosie (not study) at 8 p.m. last night. She was at a party.
- 3 What time the train (leave) the station?
- 4 I got up, (have) breakfast and went out.
- 5 you (sleep) when I called?
- 6 People (not write) emails in the past. They sent letters instead.
- 7 It was the first day of August and the sun (shine).
- 8 We were going to school when it (start) to snow.

Marks / 8

- 7 Complete the sentences with *while* / *as* or *when*.

- 1 Jack fell asleep he was watching a film.
- 2 We went out the rain stopped.
- 3 Ann was driving to work the accident happened.
- 4 I was walking through the park, I remembered it was mum's birthday!
- 5 They were listening to the radio they were making breakfast.
- 6 Paul bought a ticket he got to the station.

Marks / 6

Total / 45

Cumulative review Units 1–2

Listening

- 1  1.12 Listen to four people talking about places they visited. Match speakers 1–4 to sentences A–E. There is one sentence that you do not need.

Speaker 1
 Speaker 2
 Speaker 3
 Speaker 4

- A Many people didn't know this place existed until the beginning of the twentieth century.
 B There are some unanswered questions connected to this place.
 C This place was the site of the last battle fought by its ancient rulers.
 D This place changed the way experts thought about the past.
 E This place shows how much the builders knew about science at the time.

Speaking

- 2 Work in pairs. You are sightseeing on holiday when you see a person from your hotel. Prepare a dialogue.

- Attract their attention and explain how you know them.
- Find out how long they are staying at the hotel.
- Ask about the activities they are doing on holiday.
- Find something you both enjoy doing.

Reading

- 3 Read the travel blog. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Right now, the writer of the blog is
 a planning a visit to Pompeii.
 b relaxing in her hotel.
 c sightseeing in Naples.
 d travelling to Naples.
- 2 People weren't worried about living next to Mount Vesuvius because
 a they didn't know it was a volcano.
 b it wasn't very near Pompeii.
 c it was only a very small volcano.
 d they couldn't see it from their houses.
- 3 The writer was happy with the tour guide because
 a she told them where to have lunch.
 b the tour didn't last very long.
 c her English was very good.
 d they saw things that tourists didn't usually see.
- 4 Inside the houses in Pompeii today, you can see
 a typical food and drinks from the area.
 b films about everyday life in Pompeii.
 c furniture and objects from Roman times.
 d actors performing the daily life of people in Pompeii.
- 5 The writer's plan for this afternoon is to
 a go back to Pompeii.
 b see something she didn't see the day before.
 c stay in the hotel and rest.
 d learn something about the history of Naples.

 Pompeii

Pompeii: the city

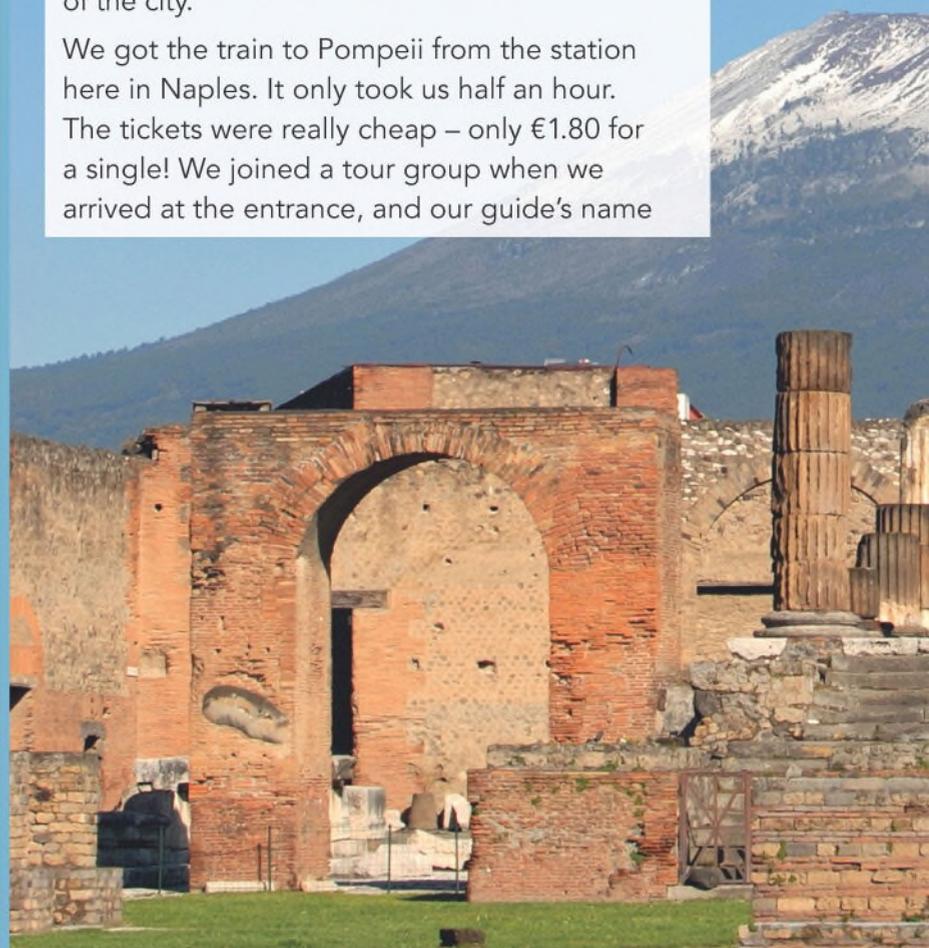


28 June

We're staying in our hotel in Naples this morning after spending all day yesterday in Pompeii. We had a great time, but there was so much to see that we're exhausted!

Pompeii is the city that disappeared when the local volcano, Mount Vesuvius, erupted in AD 79. At the time, people thought the volcano was a mountain, and so no one was worried about living next to it. They didn't realize their mistake until the 'mountain' exploded and volcanic ash started falling on top of the city. By then it was too late. Soon a thick layer of ash covered the houses and the people inside them. About 2,000 people died in the disaster. Eventually, the city of Pompeii disappeared completely under the ash, until it was found again in 1748. Since then, archaeologists have uncovered about two-thirds of the city.

We got the train to Pompeii from the station here in Naples. It only took us half an hour. The tickets were really cheap – only €1.80 for a single! We joined a tour group when we arrived at the entrance, and our guide's name



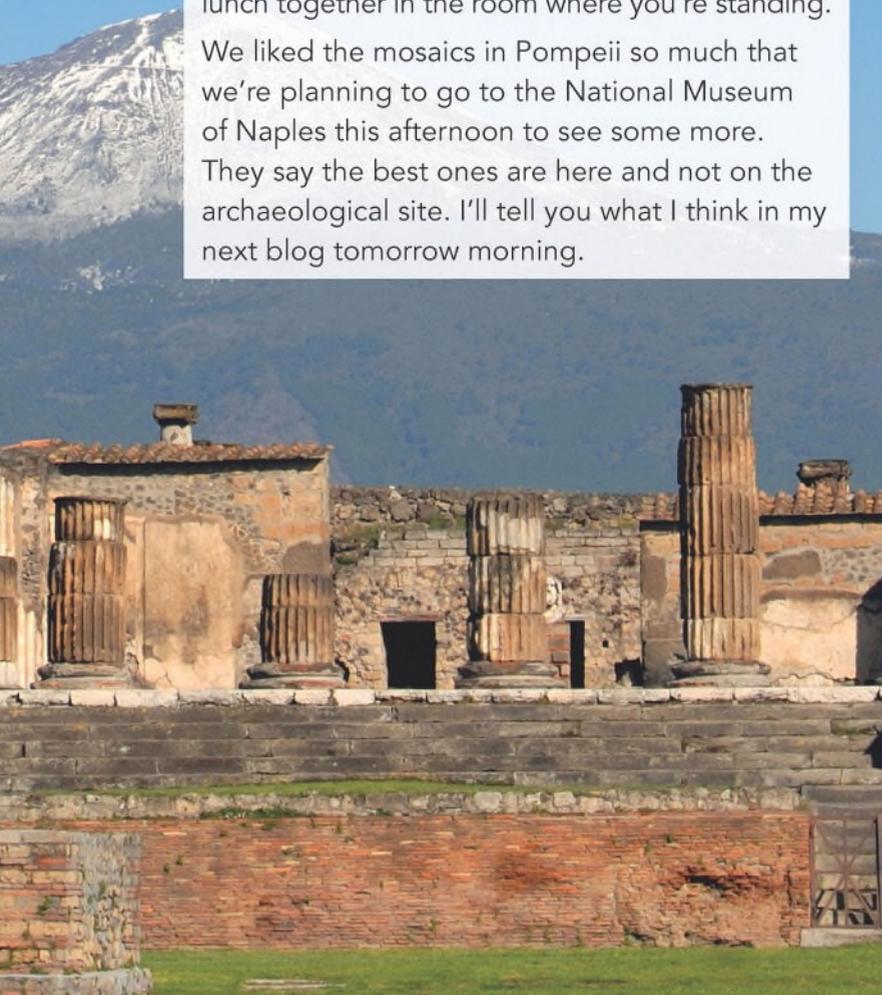
that time forgot



was Paola. She spoke fantastic English and she showed us lots of things that weren't in the guide book, which was really good. The tour took two hours, and then we had a small pizza and a bottle of water for lunch. After lunch, we spent another four hours looking round. We saw the amphitheatre, the baths, the forum and some of the most important houses.

The thing I liked best about our visit was that you really got an insight into Roman life nearly two thousand years ago. Pompeii was an important city at the time and the people lived in large, beautiful houses. The ash kept the houses and their contents in perfect condition, and the objects are just as the people left them. There are pots and pans in the kitchens and cups and plates on the tables, so you can imagine families having lunch together in the room where you're standing.

We liked the mosaics in Pompeii so much that we're planning to go to the National Museum of Naples this afternoon to see some more. They say the best ones are here and not on the archaeological site. I'll tell you what I think in my next blog tomorrow morning.



Grammar and vocabulary

4 Choose the correct answers.

Volcano threatens holidays in the Canaries

The Canaries are a group of islands off the north-west coast of Africa that belong ¹..... Spain. There are seven large islands, such as Tenerife and Gran Canaria, and a number of smaller ones. About twelve million tourists ²..... the islands every year, making them one of the most popular holiday destinations in Spain. But this summer, the island of El Hierro ³..... attracting any visitors. This is because the National Geographic Institute of Spain is warning people ⁴..... the possibility of a natural disaster. This year, the island ⁵..... many earthquakes every day, which is an indication that there is volcanic activity in the area. At first, the residents didn't notice the earthquakes at all, but the latest one to hit the island registered four on the Richter Scale. People ⁶..... the earth move under their feet.

Last summer, the organization also ⁷..... volcanic activity near El Hierro and people became anxious ⁸..... their safety. However, the main activity was out at sea, and they got ⁹..... the year without any problems. This summer, however, the activity is actually under the island. El Hierro is now on yellow alert and everyone is afraid ¹⁰..... a big disaster that could completely destroy the island.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 a from | b of | c to |
| 2 a visited | b are visiting | c visit |
| 3 a wasn't | b isn't | c doesn't |
| 4 a about | b for | c from |
| 5 a experience | b experiences | c experienced |
| 6 a felt | b heard | c saw |
| 7 a was detecting | b detected | c detects |
| 8 a of | b about | c in |
| 9 a away | b off | c through |
| 10 a from | b for | c of |

Writing

- 5 Imagine that you went on holiday to Italy last month. You made friends with a guest staying at your hotel and you visited the city of Pompeii together. Write an informal letter to a friend from home telling them about your visit to Pompeii. Include this information:

- when you arrived back home and how much you enjoyed your holiday.
- what you found out about your new friend.
- what you found out about Pompeii.
- two differences you noticed between Italy and your country.

3 Choices

Reading and vocabulary In my fridge

1 SPEAKING Look at the photo and answer the questions. Then read the article and compare your ideas.

- 1 What food items can you see in the fridge?
- 2 Which countries does this food probably come from?
- 3 Study the dictionary entry below. Is a big carbon footprint good or bad for the environment? Why?

carbon footprint noun [C] a measure of the amount of carbon dioxide that is produced by the daily activities of a person or company: Companies are looking at ways to **reduce** their carbon footprints.



2 Read the article again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 What does the writer want to find out about the food in his fridge?
 - a If it is good for his health.
 - b If it is good for the environment.
 - c If it saves him money.
- 2 What can we learn from food labels?
 - a Information about the people who make our food.
 - b How far the food has travelled.
 - c Why the price is low or high.
- 3 Why does the writer feel guilty about the pizza?
 - a Because it is made in Thailand.
 - b Because it has a big carbon footprint.
 - c Because it is bad for his health.
- 4 Why are bananas better than grapes?
 - a Because they don't have any packaging.
 - b Because they don't travel very far.
 - c Because they grow in natural sunlight.
- 5 Why are burgers 'the really ugly'?
 - a Because they are unhealthy.
 - b Because they come from the USA.
 - c Because they come from cows.
- 6 What does the writer want to do?
 - a He wants to stop eating meat.
 - b He wants to reduce his carbon footprint.
 - c He wants to have a healthy lifestyle.

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Which of the food items below are good and which are bad according to the writer? Why?
 - pizza ■ prawns ■ bananas ■ grapes ■ burgers
- 2 Think about the food you have in your fridge at home. Do you know where it comes from? Which items are produced in your country?

Vocabulary bank Food and nutrition page 136

Food for **THOUGHT**

The good, the bad and the really ugly



How often do you look in your fridge? And what's in it? Look at what you eat in a day and multiply that by the millions of people all over the world. All those people, all that food. Where does it come from? Should we care?

Vocabulary: life cycle of food; compounds; containers

Grammar: determiners; indefinite pronouns and adverbs; relative pronouns and adverbs

Speaking: talking about food; discussing diets and eating habits; inviting
Writing: short texts

Today, in my fridge, there are a few grapes, a bunch of bananas and some fruit juice – things that are not expensive and that are good for me. There is also a pizza, and some burgers in the freezer – which are not so good. I know what this food does to my body, but what does it do to the world around me? It's time to look at my carbon footprint and sort out the good from the bad and the really ugly.

Food miles

My first stop is the label. Labels give us lots of information: how long we can keep our food, how many calories it has and where it comes from. A few hundred years ago, most of our food came from places we could walk to, but today, food travels thousands of miles*. We refrigerate it, then transport it in planes and ships all over the world. This creates pollution and causes global warming.

I look at the slices of pizza and immediately feel guilty – not because it's unhealthy, but because the prawns on it are from Thailand. I know we produce prawns in the UK, but they're more expensive. I take out a banana – it's from Brazil, but that's not too bad. It came here by boat, so the carbon footprint of this healthy snack is small.

Packaging

The next stop is the packaging. In the UK, we don't recycle all our packaging; we throw away more than 30% of it. This waste goes to the rubbish dump and not to the recycling centre. Luckily, we don't need to package food like bananas, but food like grapes needs protection. I look at the grapes in my fridge – they're in a plastic container and they're from Spain.

Production

So my grapes are from Spain, but at least they grew in natural sunlight. In the UK, people grow grapes in heated greenhouses, which means British grapes are less energy-efficient. But there is one other thing in my freezer, and if pizza and grapes are 'bad', then this food is 'really ugly'. It's the burgers. They have the biggest carbon footprint because they come from cows. In the USA, cows create the same amount of greenhouse gases as 20 million cars! As I close the fridge door, I make a checklist for my next trip to the supermarket: 1 Read the label. 2 Look at the packaging. 3 Don't buy a lot of meat. Maybe I could grow my own vegetables, too. It's eco-friendly, I'd save some money and I wouldn't feel guilty about eating burgers!

* 1 mile = 1.6 km

V Life cycle of food

4 Study the highlighted words in the article. Then complete the food facts with the correct form of the verbs.

Food facts

- 1 When we less meat at mealtimes, we help to reduce pollution.
- 2 There are 91 million cows in the USA. The USA most of the world's beef.
- 3 Food companies often bananas over 5,000 miles from Brazil to supermarkets in the UK.
- 4 Today, companies in the UK 70% of the food to protect it. They use plastic, paper and metal.
- 5 In the UK, people about 70% of food packaging. But more than 30% goes in the bin!
- 6 The best food for our planet is fruit and vegetables that we can locally.
- 7 Supermarkets in the UK food to keep it cold. This produces the same amount of pollution in one year as a plane flying from London to New York 2.5 million times.
- 8 Every year, people in the UK seven million tonnes of food. That's a lot of waste!

V insight Compound nouns and adjectives

5 Match the words in A to the words in B to make compound nouns and adjectives. Then match the compound words to definitions 1–7. Which two words are adjectives?

- A ■ eco- ■ energy- ■ food ■ greenhouse ■ global
■ recycling ■ rubbish
- B ■ centre ■ dump ■ efficient ■ friendly ■ gases
■ miles ■ warming

- 1 we leave things that we can't recycle in this place
- 2 not harmful to the environment
- 3 the increase in the temperature of the world's atmosphere
- 4 we take old objects and materials to this place and use them again
- 5 the distance food travels to get to our homes
- 6 not using a lot of power
- 7 gases like carbon dioxide that are bad for the environment

6 **SPEAKING** Work in groups. Choose a snack you eat at school and design a leaflet for an eco-friendly version of that snack. Use the ideas below to help you.

- its place of origin ■ how people make it ■ the distance it travels ■ information about the packaging

Compare your leaflets as a class. Decide which snack has the biggest carbon footprint and which has the smallest.

3B ■ Grammar and listening Burger or broccoli?



What's on your plate?

A recent study shows that more and more teenagers are not eating a healthy diet. We asked seventeen-year-old student Tanya Fairhurst to keep a food diary, to see what a typical teenager eats and drinks. Does she eat **any fruit and vegetables**? Are there **many hamburgers** in her diet? Is there **much juice**? Read on and find out!

Day 1

Breakfast: I woke up late for college, so I didn't eat any breakfast. My mum leaves for work before I'm awake. She left me some cereal, but I threw it away. I had some orange juice instead.

Lunch: My dad gives me money every week for my lunches, but I use it to buy magazines and CDs, so there's not **much money** left for food. Today, I had **some biscuits** instead of lunch.

Dinner: By 5 p.m. I was hungry, so I had **a little peanut butter** on bread for a snack, but I didn't eat any vegetables. For dinner, I had a burger. I don't have **many big meals** because I want to stay slim.

Day 2

Breakfast: I had **some bread** and drank **a lot of water**. I was still hungry, but I don't know how to cook, so I didn't eat any more.

Lunch: I drank **a few glasses** of orange juice, then I had a banana, some chocolate and a few crisps. I know you should eat five portions of fruit and vegetables a day. I sometimes eat fruit, but I don't eat many vegetables. I hate salad.

Dinner: I ate quite well this evening because I had dinner with my family. We had soup, chicken, baked potatoes, peppers and broccoli, but I didn't eat **any soup or potatoes**. I had some apple juice before I went to bed.

- 1 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Look at the photo of seventeen-year-old Tanya with some of her favourite food. Which of the food items do you think are healthy?
- 2** Read Tanya's food diary and answer the questions.
 - 1 Why didn't Tanya eat breakfast on Day 1?
 - 2 What does she spend her lunch money on?
 - 3 Why doesn't she eat big meals?
 - 4 Why didn't she eat more for breakfast on Day 2?
 - 5 Why did she eat well at dinner time on Day 2?
- 3** Study the highlighted words in Tanya's diary. Which words are plural countable nouns? Which are uncountable nouns?

Determiners

- 4** Study the words in bold in Tanya's diary. Then complete the table with *a little*, *a few*, *some*, *any*, *much* and *many*.

	Affirmative sentences	Negative sentences	Questions
with countable nouns	a lot of	a lot of	a lot of
with uncountable nouns	a lot of	a lot of	a lot of

5 Complete the dialogue between Tanya and her mum. Use *some* or *any*.

- Mum** Tanya, let's have ¹..... pasta for lunch.
Tanya No thanks, Mum. I'm not very hungry.
Mum Well, there's ²..... salad in the fridge.
Tanya You know I don't like salad. Is there ³..... juice?
Mum No, there isn't ⁴..... juice, but there's ⁵..... milk.
Tanya Hmm, I'll have ⁶..... water instead.
Mum You can't just have water for lunch, you didn't have ⁷..... breakfast.
Tanya You're right, Mum. Have you got ⁸..... biscuits or crisps?

6 Read a nutritionist's opinion about Tanya's diet. Choose the correct words.



Tanya wants to stay slim, so she doesn't eat ¹**much / many** food. What she does eat isn't good for her. She usually has snacks with ²**a lot of / a few** sugar and fat. That's bad for her heart. She doesn't drink ³**much / many** milk or have ⁴**much / many** cheese, but her bones need calcium. She doesn't eat ⁵**much / many** apples or bananas, and she doesn't have ⁶**much / many** vegetables. This isn't good for her immune system. A healthy diet should include ⁷**a little / a few** fruit, ⁸**a little / a few** vegetables, ⁹**a little / a few** meat and carbohydrates. She could eat ¹⁰**a lot of / a few** healthy food and still stay slim.

7 **1.13 Listen to a radio programme about teenage diets and complete the table.**

Teenagers in the UK ...	Yes	No
1 eat junk food.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
2 miss out meals.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
3 are too lazy to eat well.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
4 often eat with their families.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
5 eat fruit and vegetables.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

8 **1.13 Make questions with *how much* or *how many*. Then listen again and answer the questions.**

- 1 junk food / British teenagers eat?
- 2 sugar and fat / they have in their diet?
- 3 meals / some teenagers miss out?
- 4 times a week / they go out with friends?
- 5 homework / teenagers have?
- 6 times a week / they eat with their family?
- 7 fruit / they have every week?

9 SPEAKING Write your own food diary. Make a list of the type of food you usually eat for breakfast, lunch and dinner. Then work in pairs and interview your partner to find out about their diet. Do they have five portions of fruit and vegetables per day?

Are there any vegetables on your list?

How much fruit do you eat?

Do you drink much milk?

3C ■ Listening, speaking and grammar Eating out



1 SPEAKING Look at the photos. What are vending machines? What can you buy from them?

STRATEGY

Listening for key words and phrases

When you listen to people speaking in English, remember to listen for key words and phrases. Key words are often nouns and verbs. These words are usually stressed in spoken English.

2 **1.14** Read the strategy. Listen to four people talking about vending machines. Match the key words to speakers A–D.

- animals ■ snack ■ apples ■ junk food ■ December ■ airport ■ healthy food ■ forgot ■ refrigerate
- Japan ■ school ■ camera ■ postcard ■ T-shirts and shoes ■ depends

- A** Jake **B** Guy **C** Sally **D** Dexter

3 **1.14** Match sentences 1–6 to speakers A–D in exercise 2. There is one sentence that you do not need. Use the key words to help you. Then listen again and check your answers.

- 1 He / She went on holiday last year in January.
- 2 You can buy clothes from a few machines.
- 3 The country he / she visited has a lot of unusual machines.
- 4 He / She bought electrical equipment from a machine.
- 5 Some machines sell food that is good for you.
- 6 He / She often buys unhealthy food from vending machines.

Indefinite pronouns and adverbs: some-, any-, no-, every-

4 **1.15** Complete the sentences from the radio programme with words from the table. Which words do we use to talk about places? Which ones do we use for people and which ones for things? Listen and check your answers.

some	+	one / body
any		thing
no		where
every		

Indefinite pronouns and adverbs refer to people, things or places without saying exactly who, what or where they are. The difference between indefinite pronouns and adverbs with *some-* and *any-* is like the difference between *some* and *any* on their own.

- 1 Today's gadget show is aboutthingone uses at one time or another.
- 2 Today, you can see themwhere – at bus stations, in schools, shopping centres and sports clubs.
- 3one buys the apples.one prefers chocolates or crisps.
- 4 Is therething we can't buy from them?

Reference and practice 3.2 Workbook page 108

5 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 No one ordered pizza. **Everyone** / **Anyone** had burgers.
- 2 There's **nothing** / **something** in this vending machine. It's empty!
- 3 I can't find my phone, but I know it's here **anywhere** / **somewhere**.
- 4 I'm hungry! Have you got **nothing** / **anything** to eat?
- 5 Can **anyone** / **no one** help me with the shopping?
- 6 You can find junk food **nowhere** / **everywhere** you go.
- 7 **No one** / **Anyone** was interested in cooking.
- 8 **Someone** / **Anyone** gave me a few sweets in class.

- 6 **SPEAKING** Work in groups. Read the announcement. Then prepare a proposal and present it to the class. Vote for the best proposal.

Wanted: a vending machine

Attention all students! The head teacher of our school agreed to have a vending machine and now wants us to submit proposals.

The proposals should suggest:

- what the machine can sell.
- the best location for it.

The head teacher would also like to know:

- what things students want to buy.
- what things students can afford.

Send your proposals to the head teacher by 15 December.



Inviting

- 7 **SPEAKING** What do you usually do at weekends? What are you doing this weekend?
- 8  1.16 Listen to the dialogue. What is Paul doing at the weekend? What is Zara doing?
- 9  1.16 Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Listen again and check.

Inviting

Do you ¹ ?
² like to come
 with me?

Responding

That's a good ³
 Thanks, but I'm ⁴
 Oh, that's a ⁵

Keeping a conversation going

What do you ⁶ ?
 They've got ... , right?

- 10  1.17 Complete the dialogue with questions A–E. Then listen and check.

- A Where's that?
 B What time are you meeting?
 C Why are you in such a hurry?
 D What about 8.30 then, in the park?
 E Are a lot of people going?

Karl Hi, Nina. ¹

Nina I'm going to the library. I've got a lot of maths homework, you know.

Karl But it's for Monday, right?

Nina Yes, it is, but there's a rock concert on Saturday.

Karl Really? ²

Nina It's in the park on Sefton Street.

Karl ³

Nina Yes, everyone.

Karl Well, no one told me about it.

Nina I didn't know you liked rock music. Why don't you come with us?

Karl Thanks, I'd like that. ⁴

Nina At 6 p.m. outside the pizzeria.

Karl I can't make it at six. I've got basketball practice.

Nina ⁵

Karl That sounds great. See you there!

- 11 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of inviting and responding.
- 12 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below or use your own ideas. Take turns to invite your partner. Use the dialogue in exercise 10 to help you.
- You are going to the cinema on Friday and you have a spare ticket.
 - You are having a few friends over for a pizza on Saturday.
 - You are going bowling for your birthday next Sunday.

3D ■ Culture, vocabulary and grammar Notes from a big country

1 SPEAKING Study the shopping lists and answer the questions.

- Which food is nutritious and healthy? Which is unhealthy?
- Which of these things can you buy in your country?

Shopping List
 mushrooms
 broccoli
 muesli
 milk
 cheese

Shopping List
 chocolate cookies
 Cookie Crisp cereal
 pancakes
 bacon
 pizza
 toaster strudel



2 Read the extract from *Notes from a Big Country*. What type of food does the writer like?

3 Read the extract again. Are the sentences true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)? Correct the false ones.

- The writer always goes to the supermarket with his wife.
- His wife approves of his 'American' diet.
- There is more junk food than healthy food in the store.
- The writer has a good relationship with his wife.
- Breakfast pizza remains in the trolley.
- The writer agrees to eat all the junk food in the trolley.
- His wife ate some of the junk food.
- The writer thought the junk food was disgusting.

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- How would you describe the 'American' diet? Is your diet similar or different?
- If you lived abroad, which traditional food from your country would you miss the most?

V insight Containers

5 Look at photos A–H and match them to containers 1–8. Then find three containers in the text. What's inside them?

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|----------|
| 1 packet | 3 carton | 5 tube | 7 bottle |
| 2 jar | 4 box | 6 can | 8 bag |

6 Complete the table. Then use your own ideas to add more items to the list.

a box	of	chocolates, tissues
		eggs, milk
		jam, coffee
		water, vinegar
		toothpaste, cream
		potatoes, flour
		crisps, biscuits
		olives, soda

Junk Food Heaven

Some weeks ago I announced to my wife that I was going to the supermarket with her next time she went because the stuff she kept bringing home was not fully in the spirit of American eating. Here we were living in a paradise of junk food – the country that gave the world cheese in a spray can – and she kept bringing home healthy stuff like fresh broccoli.

It was because she was English, of course. She didn't really understand the possibilities for greasiness that the American diet offers. I longed for bacon bits, cheese in a shade of yellow unknown to nature, and chocolate fillings, sometimes all in the same product. So I accompanied her to the supermarket and while she was off pricing mushrooms I made for the junk food section – which was the rest of the store. Well, it was heaven.

There were two hundred types of breakfast cereal. The most immediately interesting was a cereal called Cookie Crisp, which tried to pretend it was a nutritious breakfast but was really just chocolate chip cookies that you put in a bowl and ate with milk. Brilliant. I grabbed* a box and rushed* back to the trolley.

"What's that?" my wife asked in the special tone of voice with which she often addresses me in retail establishments*.



“Breakfast,” I panted as I rushed past, “and don’t even *think* about putting any of it back and getting muesli.” 30

It was the breakfast pizza that finally made my wife snap*. She looked at the box and said, “No.”

“I beg your pardon, my sweet?”

“You are not bringing home something called breakfast pizza. I will let you have” – she reached into the trolley for some samples – “Cookie Crisp and toaster strudel and ...” She lifted out a packet she hadn’t noticed before. “What’s this?” 35 40

I looked over her shoulder. “Microwave pancakes,” I said.

“Microwave pancakes,” she repeated, but with less enthusiasm.

“Isn’t science wonderful?” 45

“You’re going to eat it all,” she said. “Every bit of everything that you don’t put back on the shelves now. You do understand that?”

“Of course,” I said in my sincerest voice.

And do you know she actually made me eat it. I spent weeks working my way through a symphony of junk food, and it was awful. Every bit of it. 50

Extract from *Notes from a Big Country* by Bill Bryson

Glossary

- * grabbed = took quickly
- * rushed = walked / ran quickly
- * retail establishments = shops
- * snap = speak with an angry voice

Relative pronouns and adverbs

7 Read the information about Bill Bryson and study the highlighted words. Find more examples in the extract from *Notes from a Big Country*. Then complete rules a–e.

Bill Bryson is a famous writer **who** grew up in America. He visited England in 1973, then moved there a few years later after he got married. It’s the place **where** he wrote *Notes from a Small Island*, a book about life in England. In 1995, the year **when** he returned to the USA, he wrote *Notes from a Big Country*. This extract is about a visit to an American supermarket. Bill goes shopping with his wife, **whose** opinions about food are very different from his. In the supermarket, there is a lot of junk food **which** you can only find in America. It’s food **that** Bill Bryson likes ...

Relative pronouns and adverbs introduce more information about a person, a thing, a place or a time.

We use:

- a or *that* for people.
- b or for things.
- c for possessions.
- d for places.
- e for times.

We can leave out *who*, *that* and *which* if they are followed by another pronoun or a noun.

We can’t leave out *who*, *that* and *which* if they are followed by a verb.

Reference and practice 3.3 Workbook page 109

8 Complete the sentences with the correct word. There may be more than one correct answer. In which sentences can you leave out the relative pronoun?

- 1 Bill Bryson is someone enjoys telling funny stories.
- 2 He’s the man trolley is full of junk food.
- 3 Cookie Crisp is a cereal you can buy in America.
- 4 This is the broccoli we bought from the supermarket.
- 5 Here are the pizzas are for breakfast.
- 6 Sunday is the day some supermarkets close.
- 7 A garden is the place we can grow our own vegetables.

9 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Make sentences using the words in the table and your own ideas. Can your partner guess who / what / where it is?

This is	a person	which	I know very well.
	a place	where	I go with my friends.
	a drink	whose	I really enjoy.
	a time / day	when	I can’t stand.
	a thing	that	I use all the time.
	a food	who	is really good at sport.

DVD extra Food in the UK

3E ■ Writing Short texts: notes, invitations, adverts and announcements

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at short texts A–F. Then answer the questions.

- Where might you find each text A–F? Choose from the places below.
 ■ on a school noticeboard ■ on a desk in an office or at home ■ on a fridge
- When was the last time you wrote a note, an invitation, an advert or an announcement? What was it about? Tell your partner about it.

A
 Tanya
 Don't forget your lunch box.
 It's on the third shelf, above the burgers.
 Working late tonight so can't cook dinner, but there's pizza in the fridge and some fruit, e.g. bananas and apples.
 See you later.
 Mum x

B
Lost python snake called Lucky.
 Black with brown spots.
 Last seen Friday 13 Nov, near South Park.
€20 reward if found.
 Call Eva, tel. 028 9018 0659.

C
 Helen
 Just wanted to say thanks for the flowers!
 Lovely surprise to find them on my desk. 😊
 They're beautiful, esp. the yellow roses.
 Lily xx

D
 Dan
 Kelly's birthday on Sat. Holly planning surprise party.
 Want to come?
 Party at 7.30 p.m., Gusto Pizza, Baker St.
 I'll be there from 7 - helping with decorations, lights, etc.
 RSVP to Holly if you can make it.
 Tanya

E
 Harry
 Colour printer not working.
 Need to fix it asap. Can you call the electrician?
 Anne
 PS Buy more paper, too.

F
Book Sale
 We are holding a second-hand book sale to celebrate World Book Day and raise money for schools in Africa.
 Date: 7 March
 Location: school canteen
 Time: 2 p.m. – 5 p.m.
 NB School canteen closed from 11 a.m. to 2 p.m. tomorrow, 7 March. Please bring your own lunch or use vending machine on the first floor, next to the gym.

STRATEGY

Thinking about purpose
 Before you write a note, an invitation, an advert or an announcement, think about why you are writing and what you need to include. Do you want to remind, invite, explain, make a request or an offer, give instructions, advertise, apologize, suggest, announce something, thank somebody or ask for help? Make sure the purpose is clear.

2 Read the strategy. Then read short texts A–F again. What is the main purpose of each text?

Abbreviations

- 3** An abbreviation is a short form of a word or phrase. Study the highlighted abbreviations in A–F and match them to words and phrases 1–9.
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 street | 6 this is very important |
| 2 please reply | 7 telephone number |
| 3 as soon as possible | 8 for example |
| 4 and so on | 9 especially |
| 5 I also want to say | |

- 4 Look at the informal letters on page 13 and compare them with short texts A–F. What are the differences? Think about:**
- the greetings (e.g. *Dear, Best wishes*).
 - the use of abbreviations.
 - the grammar: imperatives (e.g. *Don't be late.*), articles (*a / an* and *the*), pronouns and auxiliary verbs at the beginning of sentences (e.g. compare *I'm going to the beach.* with *Working late tonight.*).
- 5 Read the email below. What is its main purpose? Underline the most important information. Then write an advert to put on the noticeboard at Kelly's school. Use exercises 3 and 4 to help you.**



WRITING GUIDE

- 1** You are planning to spend the weekend camping and walking in the mountains with a group of friends from school. Write a note to a new student in your class to invite them to join you.
 - a Say where you are going.
 - b Give the time and place to meet.
 - c Ask them to tell you if they can come or not as soon as possible.
 - d Remind them that they will need good walking boots: this is very important.
- 2** You spent a week staying with an English friend and their family in London. Today is the last day of your visit and you have to get up very early to catch your plane. Write a note to thank your friend's parents.
 - a Say you are sorry not to say goodbye to everyone in person.
 - b Thank them for the food and the accommodation.
 - c Say how much you enjoyed your visit, especially the trip to Brighton.
 - d Add a message at the end to say you hope they will visit you soon.
- 3** You and two friends have tickets for a music festival this weekend, but one friend is ill and can't go. You want to sell the spare ticket. Write an advert to put on the school noticeboard.
 - a Say you have a spare ticket for sale and explain what type of event it is for.
 - b Describe the event and give information about the date, time and place.
 - c Say how much the ticket costs.
 - d Give your name and telephone number so that people can contact you.

■ **Task** Read tasks 1–3 and check you understand them.

■ **Ideas** Answer the questions.

- 1 Who is each short text for? Is it for a friend, a classmate, a member of your family, etc.?
- 2 Think about the main purpose of the texts. Are you writing to explain, invite, remind, make an offer, etc.?

■ **Plan** Follow the instructions.

- 1 Write the title of the message or the name of the person at the top, but don't include greetings.
- 2 Make sure the purpose of the text is clear. Keep it short. Use short sentences, imperatives and abbreviations where you can.

■ **Write** Write your note, invitation and advert. Use the plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Have you included the information asked for in the task?
- Have you used informal language, short sentences, imperatives and abbreviations?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 3 Recording vocabulary

1 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where do you record new vocabulary?
- 2 Can you find the words again easily? Why / why not?
- 3 What information do you record about a new word?

STRATEGY

Recording vocabulary

It is useful to have a vocabulary notebook or file on your computer where you can write down new words and find them easily later.

When you record vocabulary, first decide how important the word is. You should always include the meaning, part of speech and pronunciation. However, if it is a word you think you will use often, then it is a good idea to add more information about it, such as an example sentence, irregular forms, collocations, synonyms and antonyms.

You can find this information in a dictionary. It will help you to remember the word and use it correctly.

2 Read the strategy above. Look at the students' vocabulary records A and B. What information does each student have about the word *grow*? Which record do you think is more useful?

A

grow [grəʊ] (verb) - grew - grown
 = become bigger, develop in a place
 Translation: rosnąć, podrosnąć, podrastać
 Ex: My mum grows flowers in pots.
 (grow + plants / flowers)

B

grow - rosnąć, podrosnąć, podrastać -
 become bigger / longer

3 Study the dictionary entry and complete the vocabulary record for *healthy*.

healthy /'helθi/ *adj* (healthier; healthiest) **1** not often ill; strong and well: a healthy child/animal/plant **2** helping to produce good health: a healthy climate/diet/lifestyle **3** showing good health (of body or mind): healthy skin and hair **4** normal and sensible: There was plenty of healthy competition between the brothers. **OPP** for all meanings unhealthy ► **healthily** *adv*

healthy [_____] (_____)
 = strong and _____

Ex: _____

healthier / _____

≠ unhealthy

Collocations: child, diet, _____, _____

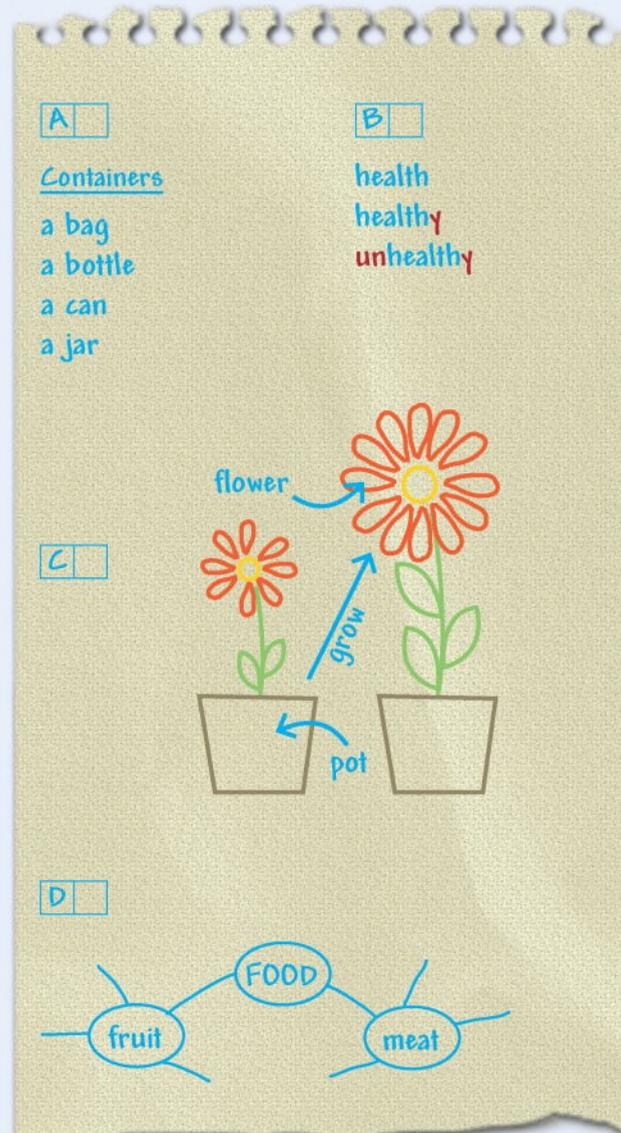
STRATEGY

Recording groups of words

Recording words in a group can help you to remember them more easily. There are different methods to record a group of words:

- 1 a labelled drawing
- 2 a mind map
- 3 in word families
- 4 a list with a topic heading.

4 Read the strategy above. Match A-D to methods 1-4 in the strategy.



5 Put the words below into three different groups using methods in exercise 4.

- delicious
- fresh
- grew
- grow
- grown
- growth
- jar
- label
- lid
- raw
- spicy
- tough

6 Work in pairs. Look at each other's records. Answer the questions.

- 1 Did you put the words into the same groups?
- 2 Did you use the same method to record each group of words?
- 3 Which method or methods do you think you will use in the future?

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.

eat ■ grow ■ package ■ produce ■ recycle ■ refrigerate
throw away ■ transport



Bananas

Bananas ¹..... in tropical countries on huge farms called plantations. One of the countries that ²..... the most bananas is Costa Rica. Farmers pick the bananas when they are green. They ³..... the fruit to keep it fresh. Then, they ⁴..... it to different countries by boat. The bananas are kept in special cupboards until they are the right colour. Then, workers ⁵..... them in plastic and take them to the shops. People buy the bananas and take them home to ⁶..... . Most countries don't ⁷..... plastic, so people have to ⁸..... the packaging when they finish the bananas. The plastic packaging means that bananas sometimes have a large carbon footprint.

Marks / 8

- 2 Complete the compound words in the sentences.

- The temperature on Earth is rising because of global
- If you can't recycle something, take it to the dump.
- Take old newspapers, used cans and bottles to the centre.
- gases, like carbon dioxide, are bad for the environment.
- Buy an energy-..... refrigerator to save power and money.
- Eco-..... shopping bags don't pollute the environment.

Marks / 6

- 3 Match the words in A to the words in B to make things you can buy. Then complete the sentences.

A ■ bag ■ box ■ carton ■ jar ■ packet ■ tube
B ■ biscuits ■ chocolates ■ eggs ■ jam ■ potatoes ■ toothpaste

- I want to make chips, so I need a
- There's a in the fridge, if you want something on your toast.
- My brother never puts the lid on the after he cleans his teeth.
- Our guests gave us a to say thank you.
- Shall we have a with our cup of tea?
- Tony bought a so that he could make omelettes for lunch.

Marks / 6

Grammar

- 4 Read the text and choose the correct words.

All foods are divided into groups. How ¹some / much / many groups are there? Well, there are five. The most important is fruit and vegetables. They contain ²a lot of / any / much vitamins, so you need to eat ³many / much / a lot of fruit and vegetables to be healthy. The next group is carbohydrates, like bread, pasta and rice. You should have ⁴any / some / a few food from this group with every meal. Protein is next, which is in meat, fish and eggs. Protein is good for you, but you shouldn't eat ⁵any / some / many eggs per week – no more than five. You shouldn't have ⁶much / a little / any red meat either – no more than twice a week. After that comes milk and dairy foods. How ⁷a lot of / much / many cheese can you eat? Well, cheese contains fat, so you should only eat ⁸a little / much / some every day. The final group is fats and sugars. Food in this group doesn't contain ⁹some / a few / any vitamins or protein, so you shouldn't have it often. Only eat it on special occasions, when you can have ¹⁰any / a little / a few biscuits or a piece of cake for a change.

Marks / 10

- 5 Complete the sentences with indefinite pronouns or adverbs with *some-, any-, no- or every-*.

- taught me to cook. I learned on my own.
- Has seen the knife? I can't find it.
- Let's eat different tonight.
- Are you enjoying the meal? Is all right?
- You can eat pizza nearly in the world.
- We need to go shopping. There's in the fridge.
- I wasn't hungry this morning so I didn't eat
- loves home-made cakes. They're delicious!

Marks / 8

- 6 Complete the sentences with *who, which, where, when or whose*.

- Sir Walter Raleigh was an Englishman brought the first potatoes from America to England.
- Camembert is a place in France they make delicious cheese.
- Brazil is a country in South America produces a lot of coffee.
- Do you remember the day we first met?
- Buñol is a town in Spain a tomato fight festival takes place.
- Queen Margherita was an Italian monarch favourite food was pizza.
- Jamie Oliver is a British chef tried to make school meals in the UK healthier.

Marks / 7

Total / 45

4

My space

Reading and vocabulary Moving house

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photo of a kitchen in a 1940s house. Choose the things you think the average family had in the 1940s. Do you think life was difficult? Why / why not?

- central heating ■ a DVD player ■ a fridge
- a microwave ■ a radio ■ an oven ■ a computer
- a washing machine ■ a Hoover ■ a dishwasher
- a phone ■ a television

2 Read the article and compare your ideas in exercise 1.

3 Read the article again. Then match sentences 1–7 to paragraphs A–F. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- 1 The most important thing for a 1940s family
- 2 The reasons why Lyn enjoyed the experiment
- 3 Why the family didn't have much to eat
- 4 Why the family decided to leave
- 5 What a 1940s house looked like
- 6 The difference between men's and women's lives
- 7 The reason for the experiment

4 SPEAKING Discuss the questions.

- 1 Would you like to take part in an experiment like this? Why / why not?
- 2 Do you think people were happy in the 1940s? Why / why not?
- 3 How were men's and women's lives different in the 1940s?

V insight Adverbs of manner and comment

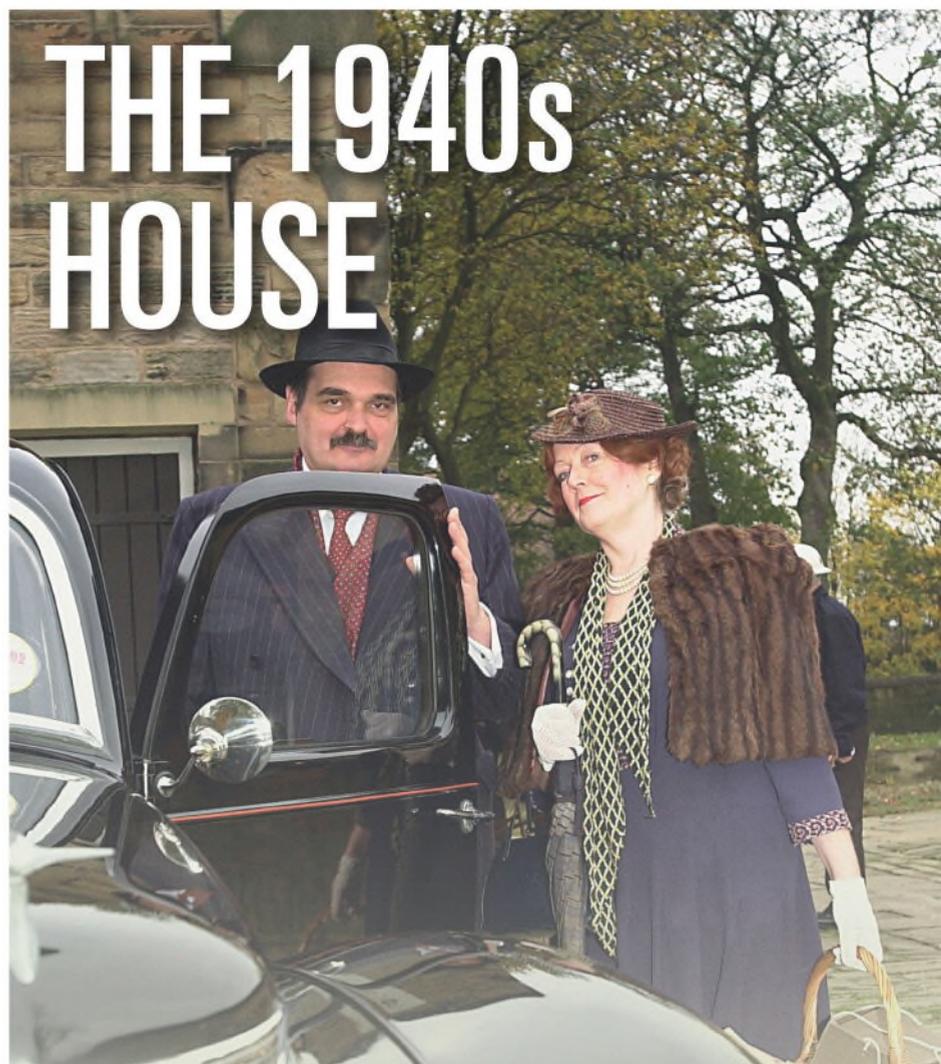
5 Study the adjectives in the table below. Find and underline the adverbs in the article. Then complete the spelling rules.

Adjective	Adverb
(un)fortunate	
lucky	
quick	
easy	
(un)surprising	
helpful	
necessary	
happy	

Spelling rules

To form adverbs from adjectives, we:

- a add
- b change -y at the end of adjectives to and add



THE 1940s HOUSE

A 'There were many times when I thought, "I can't do this. I am a twenty-first century woman, I don't work eighteen-hour days." But then I'd stop and say, "Hang on. In the 1940s, women didn't say they couldn't do it. They just got on with it.'" These are the words of fifty-year-old Lyn Hymers, who took part in an experiment called *The 1940s House*. The purpose of the experiment was to see if a modern-day family could survive in the 1940s.

B In March, Lyn, her husband Michael, her daughter and two grandsons arrived at a three-bedroomed, semi-detached house in south London. Unfortunately, when they opened the door, all twenty-first century labour-saving devices magically disappeared. There was no central heating in the two-storey house, not much soap or toilet paper and only a radio for entertainment! The family didn't have a fridge, but luckily they had an oven and a larder. They also had a coal fire to keep them warm.

C But food and warmth were not as important as safety – their first task was to quickly dig a hole in the garden for a 2 metre by 1 metre air-raid shelter*. World War II started in 1939 and, although the war wasn't real for the Hymers, they spent a lot of time in the old-fashioned shelter. They wanted the experiment to be as realistic as possible.

Vocabulary: adverbs; compound adjectives; collocations; phrasal verbs
Grammar: comparative and superlative adjectives; (not) as ... as, too, enough;
 verbs + infinitive or -ing form

Speaking: talking about houses and labour-saving devices;
 comparing rooms; discussing house rules; asking permission
Writing: an email: description of a room

D The war wasn't real, but the difficulties of everyday life were. In the 1940s, there was food rationing*. There wasn't much meat or milk, or many eggs, and the food was really boring. As a result, the family were often hungry, especially the children. Before the experiment, the children often had snacks, but now they ate dry sandwiches for lunch, filled with lettuce from the garden.

E Domestic chores were a challenge, too. In the 1940s these chores were like a full-time job. While Michael went out to work, Lyn and her daughter spent most of their time preparing meals, doing the dishes and Hoovering the floor. Things that Lyn did easily before, now became terribly difficult. She missed her washing machine most of all. 'We had to boil the clothes and when the weather wasn't good, it was impossible to dry anything,' said Lyn.

F Today, Lyn is back in her modern, open-plan home, but surprisingly, she misses the 1940s house. The family grew closer, she feels, because they helpfully shared the hard work. In the evenings they played board games with the children, read books or just talked. Life in the 1940s wasn't easy, but an easier and more comfortable life doesn't necessarily mean a better life. 'I would happily go back there,' she says. 'I loved that house and the shelter where we all laughed and cried together as a family.'

* *air-raid shelter* = a small building used to protect people from attacks from the air

* *food rationing* = people are allowed a small amount of food each week

6 Adverbs can have different functions in the sentence. Study the adverbs you underlined in the article. Then answer the questions.

- Which adverbs tell us how something is done?
- Which adverbs give an opinion about the situation?

7 Complete the sentences with an adjective or adverb in exercise 5.

- The children ate their meal They were very hungry!
- After their meal, they were very and washed the dishes.
- Lyn smiled when she finished her chores.
- Everyday life in the 1940s house wasn't It was hard work.
- There was no central heating, so in winter it was to use a coal fire.
- The family built a shelter, but, the war wasn't real.
- The children didn't have a DVD player or a computer, but, they didn't get bored.
-, Lyn can never go back to the 1940s house.

V insight Compound adjectives

8 Complete the text about Mr and Mrs Average with the highlighted words in the article.



Mr and Mrs Average are a typical ¹ British family. They live in a ², ³ house with their two children and a pet cat.

Thirty-eight-year-old Mr Average has a ⁴ job, while forty-year-old Mrs Average works part-time in a supermarket. They have two cars and their ⁵ house is full of ⁶ devices.

Mrs Average hates anything ⁷, so all the furniture is new in their ⁸ living room. They also have the latest computer and three mobile phones.

9 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine you are going to take part in a similar experiment, but you are allowed to take three labour-saving devices or gadgets with you. Agree on three things to take with you. You can use the list in exercise 1 to help you.

Vocabulary bank Houses and homes page 137



4B ■ Grammar and listening A room of my own

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 What are the typical rooms in a house?
- 2 Which is your favourite room? Why? Think about these qualities:
 ■ size ■ comfort ■ privacy ■ warmth ■ light ■ decoration ■ entertainment

2 1.18 Listen to three people talking about their favourite rooms. Complete the sentences.

- 1 The worst room in Maya's house is
- 2 is more comfortable than Maya's bedroom.
- 3 The busiest and the most interesting room in Adrian's house is
- 4 Yasmin's is the best room, although it isn't the biggest.
- 5 It's also smaller and quieter than

Comparative and superlative adjectives

3 Find comparative and superlative adjectives in exercise 2. Then complete the table.

	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives		
big	bigger	
quiet		the quietest
small		the smallest
busy	busier	
Long adjectives		
comfortable		the most comfortable
interesting	more interesting	
Irregular adjectives		
bad	worse	
good	better	
far	further	the furthest

Reference and practice 4.1 Workbook page 110

4 Complete the text from a book about the history of homes with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.



We sleep in the bedroom, have breakfast in the kitchen, watch TV in the living room ... But in the past, many houses only had one important room and that was called the hall.

Hundreds of years ago, the hall was ¹..... (important) than it is now. It was ²..... (big) room in the house and everyone ate there and slept there. Halls were ³..... (busy) and ⁴..... (noisy) rooms. They were also ⁵..... (warm). There was often a big fire in the middle of the hall and a hole in the ceiling for smoke. Because of the smoke, homes were ⁶..... (dirty) than today and the ceiling in the hall was ⁷..... (high). Rooms were also ⁸..... (dark) than modern rooms because the only light they had came from fires or candles. Today, homes are ⁹..... (clean), lighter and ¹⁰..... (comfortable) than they were in the past ... and less crowded, too!

5 SPEAKING Make questions. Use comparative or superlative adjectives. Then work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 which / bright / room in your house?
- 2 which / useful / labour-saving device in your kitchen?
- 3 a computer / expensive / a mobile phone?
- 4 which / unusual / object in your house?
- 5 why / semi-detached houses / expensive / one-bedroomed flats?
- 6 which / tall / building in your town?
- 7 your house / far / from the town centre / your best friend's house?
- 8 what / quick / way to get to school?



A

We moved to the city last year. ¹Our new house isn't as big as our old house, so I share a room with my sister. It's not a problem for me, but my sister hates it. I'm not as tidy as she is. She often complains that ²the room is too messy and that ³there isn't enough space for two people. She's a year older than me, but I'm as tall as she is. I sometimes borrow her clothes ... Then I forget to put them back and that really annoys her. Why can't she just relax?

I share a room with my brother. I'm not as old as he is and he has more homework than me. He always does his work in the bedroom and that causes problems. We often argue. If I play my music or talk on my mobile, he complains that it's too noisy to work. I don't mind sharing, but he isn't as relaxed as I am. He says ⁴the room isn't big enough for both of us. ⁵It's too small to share.



B

(not) as ... as, too, enough

6 Read extracts A and B from two problem page letters. What is the problem? What do you think is the solution?

7 Match sentences 1–5 in the letters to rules a–b.

- a We use *(not) as ... as* to compare two people or things. The adjective comes between *as* and *as*.
 b We use *too* and *enough* to talk about degree.
- *too* comes before an adjective.
 - *enough* comes after an adjective, but before a noun.
 - An infinitive with *to* can come after an adjective + *enough*, or *too* + an adjective.

Reference and practice 4.2

Workbook page 110

8 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 My wardrobe isn't big enough for all my clothes! (too)
- 2 It isn't quiet enough to do my homework! (too)
- 3 You're too young to watch that horror film. (enough)
- 4 This chair is not comfortable enough to sit on. (too)
- 5 The room was too messy to sleep in. (enough)
- 6 The windows are very small in this room. It isn't light enough. (too)

9 Complete the extract from a report with the words below.

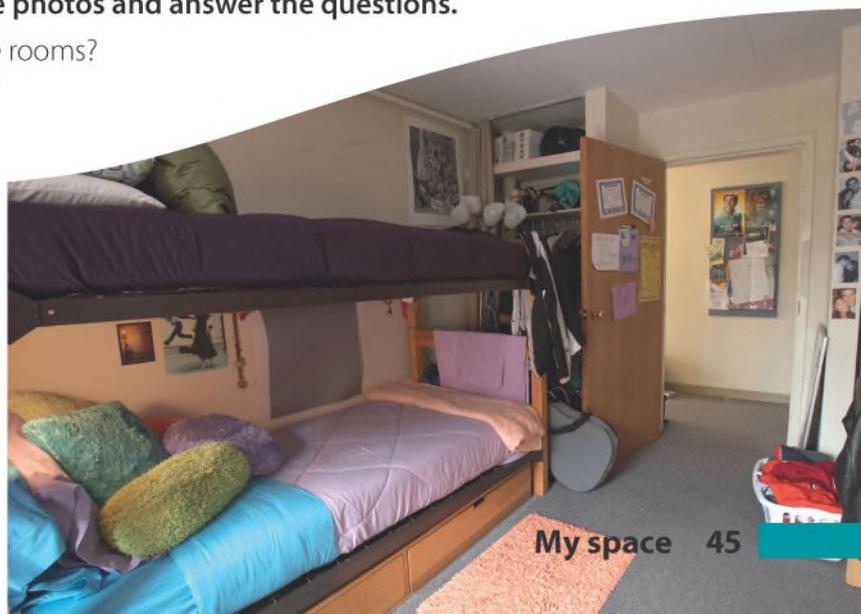
- than ■ enough (× 2) ■ more ■ as (× 2) ■ lonely ■ healthiest ■ most

Rooms with a point of view

Kids who share a room sometimes complain that their room isn't big ¹....., but a new study says teenagers who don't share space aren't ²..... happy as teenagers who do. The study found that sharers aren't as ³..... as non-sharers. They might not have ⁴..... space, but there is always someone to talk to about their problems. However, non-sharers spend more time alone, so they aren't as confident ⁵..... sharers and can't negotiate as well. Some are very shy; others are more selfish ⁶..... children who share. Sharers, on the other hand, are ⁷..... easy-going and relaxed. The study concluded that kids who share are the ⁸..... and the ⁹..... sociable.

10 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photos and answer the questions.

- 1 Which adjectives best describe these rooms?
- 2 Which room do you prefer and why?
- 3 Why don't you like the other room?



4C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary House rules

1 SPEAKING Look at the photos and answer the questions.

- 1 What are the people doing?
- 2 Do you think children should help with household chores? Why / why not?
- 3 Do you think girls are more hard-working than boys? Why / why not?



V insight Collocations: household chores

2 Match 1–8 to a–h to make sentences and questions. Which of these household chores do you do? Which is the worst chore? Which is the easiest?

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 The bathroom is dirty. Can you clean | a the rubbish? |
| 2 After I get up, I usually make | b the table. |
| 3 Before we eat, dad always lays | c my bed and get dressed. |
| 4 After dinner, can you help me to do | d the bath, please? |
| 5 Take these dirty clothes and load | e the washing machine. |
| 6 When the clothes are dry, please do | f the dishes? |
| 7 The bin is full. Can you take out | g the floor. |
| 8 The carpet isn't clean. Let's Hoover | h the ironing. |

3 1.19 Listen to the first part of a talk about household chores and complete the factfile. Are you similar to or different from children in the survey?

Whose house is it anyway?

In the UK, there was a survey of children aged ¹..... to sixteen. The results were:

- Percentage of children who don't cook: ².....%.
- Percentage who don't help with ³.....: 63%.
- Percentage who never clean ⁴.....: 75%.
- Boys don't ⁵..... hard as girls.
- Many children don't ⁶..... in the morning.

4 1.20 Listen to the second part of the talk and choose the ideas that you hear. Which do you agree with?

- 1 Today's children aren't as busy as children in the past.
- 2 Teenagers have more energy than young children.
- 3 It's important for children to learn how to cook and clean.
- 4 Chores remind children of their responsibility to other people.
- 5 Children who do chores feel more confident.
- 6 Parents are usually very selfish.
- 7 Children who do chores become better citizens.
- 8 Children like to do things that benefit other people.

5 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine you are agreeing a list of house rules with your parents. Use the ideas below and your own ideas. Choose four rules for your house.

House Rules

- 1 Everyone helps with household chores.
- 2 Complete homework on time.
- 3 Clean up any mess that you make.
- 4 Ask before you borrow or take something that belongs to others.
- 5 Ask for permission in advance to go out at night with friends.
- 6 Be kind and helpful at all times.
- 7 Eat regular meals: breakfast, lunch and dinner.
- 8 Get up for school on time.

Asking permission

6 SPEAKING Study the situations. Whose permission might you ask in each situation: a parent's, a friend's or a teacher's?

You want to:

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 stay out late. | 3 make a phone call. | 5 buy a new mobile phone. |
| 2 borrow some clothes. | 4 get a tattoo. | 6 use a dictionary. |

7 1.21 Listen to dialogues A–D and match them to four of the situations in exercise 6.

8 1.21 Complete the phrases from the dialogues. Then listen again and check.

Asking permission

1 I use a dictionary, please?

Can I 2 borrow your T-shirt?

Is it OK if I use ... ?

Is it 3 if I stay ... ?

Responding

Of course you can.

Sure, no 4

5, go ahead.

That 6

9 1.22 Put the dialogue in the correct order.

Then listen and check.

- **Joel** I can come back earlier, Mum.
- **Mum** Hmm, I'll think about it.
- **Joel** Hi, Mum. Shall I do the washing? I can load the machine if you like.
- **Mum** That depends. What time does it finish?
- **Joel** Thanks, Mum. Oh, there's just one more thing. Could I please have my pocket money today? The tickets are expensive.
- **Mum** Thanks, Joel, that's helpful.
- **Joel** Er, Mum, Harry has got some tickets for a rock concert this Saturday. It's at the football stadium. Do you mind if I go?
- **Mum** Then I'm afraid not. We're going to your grandad's on Sunday, remember?
- **Joel** Around midnight.

10 Read the dialogue again. Underline two more ways of asking permission and two ways of responding.

11 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Read the instructions and prepare a dialogue. Use the dialogue in exercise 9 to help you.

Student A

You are B's child and you want to do one of the following:

- dye your hair purple.
- go away for a weekend with your friends.
- have a party at home.
- have extra pocket money for expensive trainers.

Think of ways you can get your parent to agree.

Student B

You are A's parent. Listen to what they want. Then do one of the following:

- think of reasons for not granting permission.
- think of things you might want them to do to earn their extra freedom / pocket money.



4D ■ Culture, vocabulary and grammar Historic homes

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think about your home and answer the questions.

- When was it built? Do you know who lived there before?
- Do you know anything else about its history?

STRATEGY

Predicting content

Before you read a text, try to predict its content and purpose. Look at:

- the layout. This can tell you where the text is from and who it is for.
- the title and paragraph headings. These give content clues.
- the pictures. Think about what's happening in them and what you can see.

2 Read the strategy. Look at the text and the photos and choose the correct answers. Then read the text and check your answers.

- The text looks like it is from
 - a leaflet.
 - a newspaper.
 - a blog.
- The title tells me that the text will probably be
 - mostly fiction.
 - mostly fact.
 - mostly opinion.
- People who read the text will probably be
 - tourists.
 - historians.
 - journalists.
- The photos tell me that the text is about
 - a modern house.
 - a very old house.
 - a small house.

3 Read the text again and match paragraphs 1–5 to headings A–F. There is one heading that you do not need.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| A Upstairs, downstairs | D Planning your visit |
| B Living in London | E Treasure and tragedy |
| C Size matters | F The small screen |

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- What was the most interesting fact you learned about Highclere Castle?
- Think of a famous house in your country. How is it similar to or different from Highclere Castle?

V insight Phrasal verbs

5 Find eight phrasal verbs in the text and match them to definitions 1–8.

Paragraph 1

- to try and impress other people

Paragraph 2

- got out of bed
- moved to a higher place from a lower one
- made someone very tired
- became an adult
- took care of someone
- to learn some information

Paragraph 3

- caused; made something happen



A HOUSE WITH A HISTORY

1

Imagine living in a huge house, a house so big that you don't know how many rooms it has! Lady Carnarvon, owner of Highclere Castle, is not sure about the number of rooms, but she does know that Highclere is one of the biggest houses in England. From the outside, the castle looks like the Houses of Parliament in London. In fact, the same person, Sir Charles Barry, built both places. In the nineteenth century, many wealthy people **decided** to show off and built massive houses, and the Carnarvons did the same. When Barry **finished** building Highclere in 1842, the castle had more than fifty rooms, including one room with a fifteen-metre-high ceiling! But this room was only used on special occasions. Today, Highclere is one of the most expensive houses in Britain, worth more than 150 million pounds.

2

Country houses like Highclere sometimes had hundreds of servants. These servants got up before their employers and **carried on** working after their employers were in bed. They lived in rooms in the basement or attic and used a small staircase at the back of the house. They went up and down the stairs all day, cleaning or carrying water, meals or coal for the fires. The work tired the servants out, but they **managed** to



do it. Rooms for the family upstairs were more comfortable, although family life was very different then. Children didn't spend much time with their parents – they grew up in a separate part of the house and a nanny looked after them. You can still see the family rooms and servants' rooms at Highclere today and find out more about everyday life.

3
Do you **want** to learn about ancient Egypt? Visit Highclere and find out about its famous Egyptian connection. In 1922, the fifth Earl of Carnarvon and the archaeologist Howard Carter opened the tomb of Tutankhamun in the Valley of the Kings. Unfortunately, a few weeks later, Lord Carnarvon died from a mosquito bite. Many people thought that the Pharaoh's curse brought about his death. Today, you can read about his discovery in the castle's Egyptian exhibition and make up your own mind!

4
Nowadays, Highclere is one of the most well-known homes in Britain, but it's not because of its interesting past or its Egyptian treasures. Highclere is also the star of a British TV show called *Downton Abbey*. The show is all about the life of a wealthy family in the 1910s and more than ten million viewers **enjoy** watching it every week. Fans **love** coming to Highclere and many **hope** to see their favourite actors, too!

5

Open from May to September, 7 days a week, from 10.30 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.

Tickets: £9.50 child, £16.50 adult

Visit: www.highclerecastle.co.uk

6 Complete the text with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

- look after ■ grow up ■ tire out ■ find out ■ get up
■ go up

Charlotte ¹..... in a village near Highclere Castle. When she was sixteen, she made up her mind to find work at the castle. Her mother ²..... about a job there as a kitchen maid. Unfortunately, it was the worst job in the castle! Every morning Charlotte ³..... early and ⁴..... from the basement to the kitchen. She did the washing-up all morning. It was hard work and it ⁵..... her In the afternoons, she helped to ⁶..... the children. That was more fun!

Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

7 Match sentences 1–2 to rules a–b. Then add the highlighted verbs in the text to the table.

- 1 Imagine **living** in a huge house.
2 Do you want **to learn** about ancient Egypt?
a Some verbs are followed by an infinitive.
b Some verbs are followed by an *-ing* form.

Verb + infinitive	Verb + <i>-ing</i> form
agree	can't stand
try	don't mind
need	hate
promise	avoid
pretend	look forward to
would like	like

Reference and practice 4.3 Workbook page 111

8 Match 1–8 to a–h to make sentences.

- 1 I hope
2 My best friend can't stand
3 My parents don't mind
4 After school, I want
5 This weekend, I need
6 I am looking forward
7 A lot of British people enjoy
8 I sometimes pretend
a to do my homework.
b being late for class.
c to watch my favourite TV programmes.
d watching *Downton Abbey*. It's popular in the UK.
e to be a tour guide when I grow up.
f doing all the housework together.
g to like football because my friends like it.
h to hearing from you.

9 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Use the verbs in exercise 7 to make sentences that are true for you. Then interview your partner and compare your sentences.

Vocabulary bank Parts of a house page 137

DVD extra Homes in the UK

My space, my world

This week we want to know all about your personal space. What things do you have in your room? Email us a description of your room, including the three words which best describe it. The most entertaining description will appear in next month's magazine.

Email: ed@myspacemyworld.ed.uk



- 1 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Read the advert from a student magazine and look at the photos. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Do you have any of these things in your room?
 - 2 What is your most prized possession? Why?
- 2** Read the opening paragraphs of different descriptions that students sent to the magazine. Which of the objects in exercise 1 are included?

A My mum says my room is a pigsty. She doesn't understand how I can live in such a mess. I tell her to close the door and to stop worrying. Yes, there are clothes on the floor, but it's not very messy, and I know where everything is. In fact, I think my room is quite comfortable.

B When I was ten, I pretended to be Spiderman, jumped off my bed and banged my head on the bookcase. The bookcase is still in my room, but today it's full of books like *The Hunger Games* – there aren't any Spiderman comics now!

C In my room, there is a bed, a desk and a chair. There are some posters on the wall and a really nice photo of my family.

D When I look out of my window, I can see shops, restaurants and a bus stop. It's always busy outside and a bit noisy, but it's interesting. My desk is next to the window, so I get a good view of the street when I'm doing my homework.

E There's a strange-looking wardrobe in the corner of my room. It's huge and rather old-fashioned and it belonged to my grandmother. Inside the wardrobe, ...

STRATEGY

Writing opening sentences

When you write a description, try to get the reader interested. Start your writing in a way that makes the reader want to find out more.

Start with:

- 1 a quote or an opinion, then agree or disagree with it.
- 2 an interesting or mysterious object, then describe other things in your room.
- 3 a view from outside (for example, a view from the window), then go inside.
- 4 a dramatic event. Use the past tense for this, but remember to use the present tense when you start describing your room.

Don't start with:

- 5 a straight description, like *There is a ... in my room.*

- 3** Read the strategy. Then read the opening paragraphs A–E again and match them to points 1–5. Which description do you think will be the most interesting? Why?

It's a small room, but ... by Jenni

'It's **incredibly** small,' said my best friend when she first saw my bedroom. She's right: it's tiny and **a bit** dark, but it's also **very** special.

When you walk through the door, the first things you see are a **rather** small bed and a **really** big poster on the wall. The poster is of Orlando Bloom in *Elizabethtown*, my favourite romantic film of all time. There isn't much space in my room, so it's **not very** tidy. Right next to my

bed is a dusty old bookcase full of textbooks and music magazines. I like reading vampire stories, so there are a lot of *Twilight* books there, too. On top of the bookcase, there are some family photos and my pink MP3 player. That's my most prized possession, apart from my guitar.

Opposite the bookcase is a small red desk. It's the messiest part of my bedroom because there's homework everywhere. Then, at the side of my desk, there is a big beanbag. It's **extremely** comfortable, so I often relax there and listen to music. My friends like to sit there when they visit, too.

The three words that best describe my room are: cosy, **slightly** messy and **quite** original. It's my own private space and I love spending time there.

4 Read the description the magazine published. What type of opening does the writer use to get the reader's attention?

5 Read the description again and answer the questions.

- 1 What is Jenni like? Choose the adjectives that describe her.
 friendly polite romantic boring tidy messy musical quiet
- 2 Which adjectives does she use to describe the room in general? Which adjectives does she use to describe the furniture?
- 3 Which prepositions of place does she use to say where things are?

V insight Adverbs of degree

6 Study the highlighted adverbs in Jenni's description. Put them into the correct category.

Words that mean **a little**:

Words that mean **a lot**:

7 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. Compare with a partner.

- 1 I'm **quite** / **extremely** good at keeping my room tidy.
- 2 My bedroom is **not very** / **really** big, compared to my friend's.
- 3 It's **incredibly** / **rather** easy to make your own bed.
- 4 My alarm clock was **slightly** / **very** noisy this morning.
- 5 It's **a bit** / **incredibly** difficult to describe my room!

WRITING GUIDE

■ **Task** Write an email with a description of your room to *My space, my world*.

■ **Ideas** Decide how you are going to start your description. Remember to make it interesting. Make notes about:

- the general appearance of your room. Is it small or big? Tidy or messy? Dark or light?
- the things inside your room. Where exactly are they? What do they say about your personality and interests? Remember to use adjectives and adverbs.
- the things you like best about it. Choose three adjectives that best describe your room.

■ **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Open your description in an interesting way.

Paragraph 2: Describe the most important things first.

Paragraph 3: Describe other things in your room.

Remember to say what you use them for.

Paragraph 4: Sum up your description.

■ **Write** Write your email. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Is there a variety of adjectives and adverbs?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 4 Phrasal verbs: literal and non-literal meanings

- 1** Work in pairs. Study the verbs below. Do you know what they mean? Choose three verbs and write example sentences.

■ bring ■ come ■ get ■ go ■ grow ■ look ■ sit ■ stand
■ throw ■ turn ■ show

STRATEGY

Phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb is a combination of two or three words: a verb and at least one particle (a preposition or an adverb). The particle changes the meaning of the verb. Compare:

- *show* = to let somebody see something
They showed me their new house.
- *show off* = to try to impress somebody
He bought a new sports car just to show off.

Recognizing literal meanings

Some phrasal verbs have a literal meaning. You can guess the meaning of a literal phrasal verb by thinking about the meaning of the verb and the particle.

- *go* = to move to another place
- *down* = to or at a lower place or position
- *go down* = to move from a higher to a lower position
The sun is going down and it will get dark soon.

- 2** Read the strategy above. Then choose the correct particles to complete the sentences.

- 1 Welcome to our new house! Please come **out** / **in** and sit **down** / **off**.
- 2 Throw this old phone **in** / **away**. It doesn't work.
- 3 Turn **up** / **down** the radio. It's too loud.
- 4 Slow **away** / **down**! You're driving too fast.
- 5 When I grow **in** / **up**, I want to be an architect.
- 6 Could you bring **off** / **in** another chair? There aren't enough chairs for everyone.

STRATEGY

Recognizing non-literal meanings

Many phrasal verbs have a non-literal meaning. You can't guess the meaning of a non-literal phrasal verb even if you know what the verb and the particle mean.

- *look* = to turn your eyes in a particular direction
- *up* = to or at a higher place or position
- *look up* = to find information in a dictionary
If you don't know what this phrasal verb means, look it up in the Oxford Phrasal Verbs dictionary.

Some phrasal verbs have both a literal and a non-literal meaning.

- *get on* = climb onto
I think we got on the wrong bus.
- *get on* = have a good relationship
I often argue with my parents. We don't get on.

- 3** Read the strategies. Then look at the pairs of sentences 1–4. Is the meaning of the underlined phrasal verbs **literal (L)** or **non-literal (NL)**?

- 1 a The crowd looked up when they heard the plane.
b I looked up the answers on the internet.
- 2 a The teacher went over the instructions again.
b He kicked the ball and it went over the wall into the neighbour's garden.
- 3 a I took off my coat and sat down.
b Hurry up! The plane takes off in ten minutes.
- 4 a My friends and I often hang out in the park.
b Tom, can you help me hang out the washing?

- 4** Study the dictionary entries. Then complete the sentences with the correct particles.

look 'after sb/sth/yourself (especially BrE)
1 to make sure that sb/sth is safe; take care of sb/sth: *His parents are looking after the children for the weekend.* ◊ *She doesn't look after her clothes.* ◊ *Sophie will look after the visitors.* ◊ *They're old enough to look after themselves now (= they don't need any help).* ◊ *Would you mind looking after my bag for a minute?* ◊ *He needs to be properly looked after.* ◊ *See you soon—look after yourself (= when saying goodbye to sb).* **NOTE**

look at sb/sth **1** to turn your eyes towards sb/sth so that you can see them/it: *Don't look at me like that!* ◊ *What are you looking at?*

- 1 a Look my new poster. Do you like it?
b I'm looking my neighbours' cat while they are on holiday.

stand **1** /stænd/ verb (pt, pp stood /stud/)
> ON FEET **1** [I] to be on your feet, not sitting or lying down; to be in a vertical position: *He was standing near the window.* ◊ *Stand still—I'm trying to draw you!* ◊ *Only a few houses were left standing after the earthquake.* **2** [I] **stand (up)** to rise to your feet from another position: *He stood up when I entered the room.*

stand for sth **1** to be a short form of sth: *What does BBC stand for?* **2** to support sth (such as an idea or opinion): *I hate everything that the party stands for.*

- 2 a Can everyone stand and leave the room quietly?
b What does U.N. stand

bring sth a'bout to make sth happen: *What has brought about this change?* ◊ *His nervous breakdown was brought about by stress.*

bring sth 'back **1** (to sth) to return sth to the place it came from: *If the dress doesn't fit, bring it back to the shop and we'll change it for you.*

- 3 a You can borrow my dictionary, but please bring it tomorrow.
b The new head teacher brought a lot of changes at school.

- 5** Read the pairs of sentences in exercise 4 again. In which sentences does the phrasal verb have a non-literal meaning?

Vocabulary

- 1 Make adverbs from the adjectives below. Then use the adverbs to complete the text.

■ helpful ■ lucky ■ necessary ■ quick ■ surprising
■ unfortunate

Labour-saving devices are designed to help people do household chores ¹ and efficiently. ², some of these devices are quite complicated and you don't ³ save time the first time you use them. ⁴, most companies have a hotline that you can call for advice. There's always an operator on the end of the line who will ⁵ explain how to switch the machine on. ⁶, some of these operators work in call centres in countries as far away as India!

Marks / 6

- 2 Match the words in A to the words in B to make compound adjectives. Then complete the sentences.

A ■ full- ■ modern- ■ old- ■ semi- ■ two-

B ■ bedroomed ■ day ■ detached ■ fashioned ■ time

- 1 We can't afford a big house in London, but we've got enough money for a flat.
2 families don't usually have many children.
3 People with jobs don't have much time for housework.
4 Most young people don't like furniture.
5 The most popular home in the UK is a house.

Marks / 5

- 3 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Dinner's ready. Can you **load** / **lay** the table, please?
2 Adam **hoovered** / **made** his bed before he left the house.
3 The bin smells. We need to **take out** / **do** the rubbish.
4 Our cleaning lady **makes** / **does** the ironing every Friday.
5 I **took out** / **loaded** the washing machine before I switched it on.
6 Please **clean** / **lay** the bath after you wash your hair.

Marks / 6

- 4 Replace the words in italics with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

■ find out ■ tire out ■ bring about ■ show off ■ look after
■ grow up

- 1 Alec only bought that big house to *impress his friends*.
2 The long staircase always *makes* visitors *tired*.
3 We *became adults* in the country.
4 A neighbour *takes care of* our dogs when we're away.
5 They *learned* about the opening times on the internet.
6 Moving house often *causes* many changes.

Marks / 6

Grammar

- 5 Complete sentence b so that it has a similar meaning to sentence a. Use comparative or superlative forms and write three words in each sentence.

- 1 a Flats are usually cheaper than houses.
b Houses are usually flats.
2 a In the UK, there aren't any cities bigger than London.
b London is in the UK.
3 a My brother's room is better than mine.
b My room my brother's.
4 a My neighbourhood is noisier than yours.
b Your neighbourhood mine.
5 a The cellar is colder than the attic.
b The attic the cellar.
6 a There's no easier way to get home than by taxi.
b to get home is by taxi.

Marks / 6

- 6 Complete the sentences with (*not*) *as ... as*, *too* or *enough* and the adjectives below.

■ big ■ comfortable ■ fast ■ small ■ tall ■ warm

- 1 My room is There isn't space for a wardrobe.
2 The bus is very slow. It is the Underground.
3 We can't sit in the garden. It isn't
4 Our kitchen isn't for a table and chairs.
5 My brother and I are the same height. He's I am.
6 I don't like these armchairs. They are the sofa.

Marks / 6

- 7 Complete the text with the infinitive or the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

If you enjoyed ¹ (watch) Tim Burton's film *Alice in Wonderland* and you want ² (see) the place where it was made, you need ³ (go) to Antony House in Cornwall. The Carew family decided ⁴ (build) this enormous country house in the early eighteenth century and they've carried on ⁵ (live) there ever since. Fortunately, they don't mind ⁶ (have) visitors and they've agreed ⁷ (open) the house three days a week. Try ⁸ (visit) in good weather so that you can see the gardens when you finish ⁹ (walk) around the house. You can imagine ¹⁰ (be) Alice during one of her adventures!

Marks / 10

Total / 45

Cumulative review Units 1–4

Listening

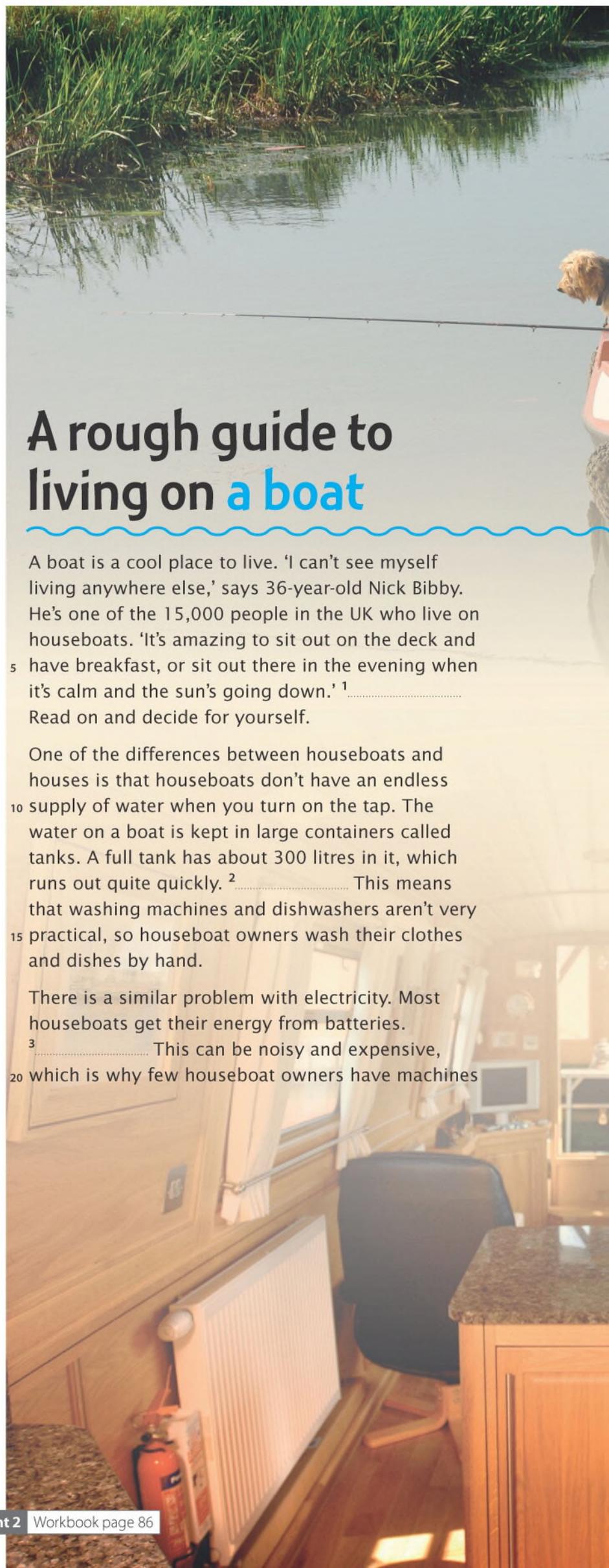
- 1**  **1.23** Listen to a radio programme about Knebworth House in England. What is the speaker's main purpose?
- To invite somebody to his house.
 - To give instructions to visitors.
 - To announce an event at the house.
 - To encourage people to visit the house.
 - To give a warning.
- 2**  **1.23** Read sentences 1–8 and underline the key words. Then listen to the radio programme again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?
- Knebworth House is only interesting for people who like music.
 - The Lytton family built Knebworth House more than five centuries ago.
 - No one lives in the house today.
 - In the past, the house had some important visitors.
 - The speaker only gives the names of three rooms in the house.
 - Knebworth House is in some famous films.
 - You don't need much time to visit the house and gardens.
 - You can take your own food to Knebworth House.

Speaking

- 3** Work in pairs. You want to invite a friend to a barbecue at your house this weekend. Prepare a dialogue.
- Say what type of event it is and when it starts. Invite your friend.
 - Suggest a different day if your friend is busy.
 - Suggest your friend brings someone along.
 - Ask permission to borrow your friend's music system.

Reading

- 4** Read the article about living on a boat. Match sentences A–F to gaps 1–5 in the article. There is one sentence that you do not need.
- These get their power when the boat's engine is turned on.
 - You only need the basics like a bed and a table.
 - You just need to turn on the engine and sail away to somewhere different.
 - But some boat owners say that life on a houseboat is not as romantic as it sounds.
 - If you've never been on a boat, then do try it out for a few days.
 - Every few days, you have to find somewhere to fill it up again.

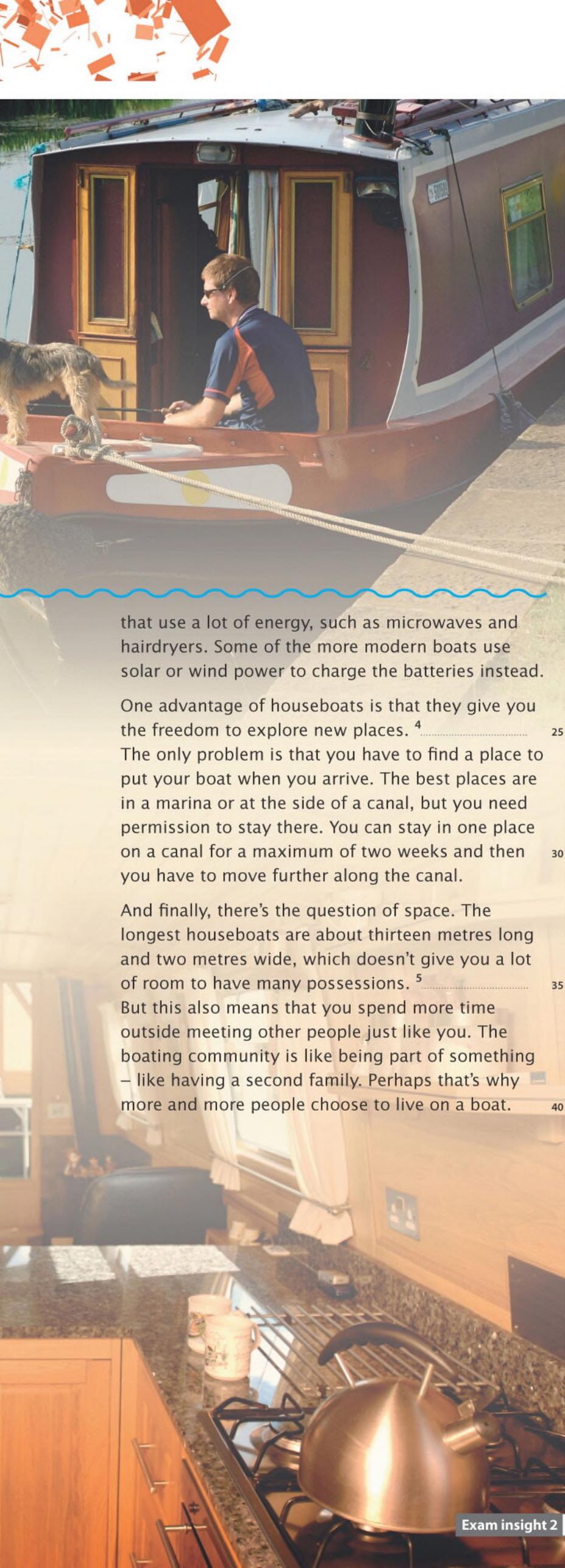


A rough guide to living on a boat

A boat is a cool place to live. 'I can't see myself living anywhere else,' says 36-year-old Nick Bibby. He's one of the 15,000 people in the UK who live on houseboats. 'It's amazing to sit out on the deck and have breakfast, or sit out there in the evening when it's calm and the sun's going down.' ¹..... Read on and decide for yourself.

One of the differences between houseboats and houses is that houseboats don't have an endless supply of water when you turn on the tap. The water on a boat is kept in large containers called tanks. A full tank has about 300 litres in it, which runs out quite quickly. ²..... This means that washing machines and dishwashers aren't very practical, so houseboat owners wash their clothes and dishes by hand.

There is a similar problem with electricity. Most houseboats get their energy from batteries. ³..... This can be noisy and expensive, which is why few houseboat owners have machines



that use a lot of energy, such as microwaves and hairdryers. Some of the more modern boats use solar or wind power to charge the batteries instead.

One advantage of houseboats is that they give you the freedom to explore new places. ⁴..... 25

The only problem is that you have to find a place to put your boat when you arrive. The best places are in a marina or at the side of a canal, but you need permission to stay there. You can stay in one place on a canal for a maximum of two weeks and then ³⁰ you have to move further along the canal.

And finally, there's the question of space. The longest houseboats are about thirteen metres long and two metres wide, which doesn't give you a lot of room to have many possessions. ⁵..... 35

But this also means that you spend more time outside meeting other people just like you. The boating community is like being part of something – like having a second family. Perhaps that's why ⁴⁰ more and more people choose to live on a boat.

Grammar and vocabulary

5 Choose the correct answers.

The edible house

EATHOUSE is a house that is a garden, or a garden in the shape of a house, if you prefer. It was the idea of a group of Dutch architects, who are very proud ¹..... the design.

The basic structure is a set of long thin metal poles that you put together to form a house. Then you fill the spaces between the poles with special boxes called crates. The crates are the walls of the house and they contain plants which, eventually, ²..... vegetables.

The house is ³....., so you don't damage the environment when you build it. And you can take it down and build it in a different location whenever you want to. The good thing is that you don't leave ⁴..... waste when you move it. The system is very simple, so anyone who is keen ⁵..... growing vegetables can use it. However, you'll probably need the help of ⁶..... friends to hold the poles and carry the crates on your first day.

You only need sunshine, water and a lot of loving care to look ⁷..... Eathouse – it isn't as hard ⁸..... you might think. And it doesn't cost much either, because plastic crates and growbags are cheap ⁹..... for most people to afford. The watering system is probably the most ¹⁰..... part.

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1 a in | b for | c of |
| 2 a package | b produce | c recycle |
| 3 a eco-friendly | b energy-efficient | c open-plan |
| 4 a some | b any | c a few |
| 5 a on | b in | c of |
| 6 a a little | b much | c some |
| 7 a at | b after | c for |
| 8 a as | b than | c that |
| 9 a much | b enough | c too |
| 10 a popular | b tiring | c expensive |

Writing

6 Think of a house that you like. It can be a friend's house, the house of someone in your family or a house that you saw on TV. Write an email to a friend describing the house. Include this information:

- where it is, who it belongs to, and its general appearance.
- the rooms inside the house. What do they say about the personality and interests of the owner(s)?
- the things you like best about the house. Choose three adjectives that best describe the house.

5

No limits

Reading and vocabulary Taking risks

1 **SPEAKING** Look at the photos and discuss statements 1–4. Do you agree with them?

- 1 Small children take more risks than teenagers.
- 2 Boys take fewer risks than girls.
- 3 Teenagers often take risks when they want to be part of a group.
- 4 Seventeen-year-olds take more risks than younger teenagers.

2 Read the article. What does the author think about the statements in exercise 1? Has the article changed your opinion of any of them?

STRATEGY

Understanding pronoun referencing

When you read, notice the pronouns and think about what they refer to.

Understanding pronouns will help you to understand the text. Pronouns can refer to:

- a word ■ a phrase ■ a whole sentence or idea

3 Read the strategy. Study the bold pronouns in the article. What do they refer to?

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 This (line 5) | 5 it (line 21) |
| 2 they (line 10) | 6 This (line 22) |
| 3 that (line 16) | 7 they (line 28) |
| 4 it (line 19) | 8 their (line 32) |

4 Match sentences A–G to gaps 1–5 in the article. There are two sentences that you do not need.

- A 'I just felt like it.'
- B Have you ever taken a risk to impress your friends?
- C You can get your dopamine fix in lots of other exciting ways.
- D They encourage us to take more risks.
- E Check out the latest theories and what you can do about it.
- F What has dopamine got to do with you?
- G Girls don't show off very often.

Vocabulary bank Generations page 138

V insight Adjective suffixes: -ing and -ed

5 Study the highlighted words in the article. Find the adjective forms of the verbs below. Then answer the questions.

- excite ■ frighten ■ amaze ■ surprise ■ embarrass

- 1 Which adjectives describe how someone feels?
- 2 Which adjectives describe what someone or something is like?



It's a fact: many teenagers take more risks than children and adults. The question is, why? ¹.....

The 'wow' factor

Have you ever been on a rollercoaster ride? How did you feel when you got off? **Excited?** **Amazed?** **This** is the 'wow' factor, the feeling of pleasure we get when we take and survive a risk. Scientists know that a brain chemical called dopamine causes this feeling of enjoyment. ²..... Well, some scientists believe that dopamine levels are sometimes lower in adolescence than **they** are in childhood. This means that some teenagers might need to take more risks to get the same 'wow' factor.

'I just felt like it'

Have you ever done something dangerous or **frightening** without thinking about what happens next? When an adult asks a teenager, 'What were you thinking of when you did **that?**' a common reply is, ³..... But the question misses the point, because the point is that the teenager might not have been thinking at all! The teenager had no intention of taking a risk, **it** just 'happened'. A few years ago, scientists made a **surprising** discovery: the teenage brain goes through many physical changes, and some parts of **it** develop later than others. The last part to fully develop is the frontal cortex. **This** is the area of the brain which allows us to do things such as controlling emotions and making good decisions.

This passage is heavily adapted from a section of *Blame My Brain – The Amazing Teenage Brain Revealed* by Nicola Morgan. Nicola Morgan is not responsible for the wording of this passage. For a clear understanding of the science, readers should refer to the original book.

Vocabulary: adjective suffixes: *-ing* and *-ed*; noun suffixes: *-ment* and *-ion*; base and strong adjectives; phrasal verbs: stages in a journey
Grammar: present perfect and past simple; *already*, *just* and *yet*; *for* and *since*

Speaking: discussing why people take risks; talking about experiences; talking about phobias; describing photos
Writing: a letter: description of a person



6 Complete each sentence with two adjectives formed from the verb in brackets. Use *-ed* or *-ing*.

- 1 It was a really match! Everyone was when our team scored a goal in the last minute. (excite)
- 2 I'm not like my friends. I hate things. I'm too to go on a rollercoaster ride. (frighten)
- 3 The skatepark was We were by how big it was. (amaze)
- 4 We're by the statistics. It's that boys take more risks than girls. (surprise)
- 5 I feel when I wear my bicycle helmet. It's because it's too big! (embarrass)

V insight Noun suffixes: *-ment* and *-ion*

7 Complete the table with words from the article and the sentences in exercise 4.

Verb	Noun
enjoy	1
2	development
3	encouragement
argue	4
5	impression
decide	6
intend	7
solve	8

8 Complete the news story with the correct form of a noun or a verb in exercise 7.

A party for 'friends'

When his parents went away for the weekend, 18-year-old Karl ¹ to have a party. He posted an invite on Facebook because he wanted to impress his girlfriend, Mim. He did, but he also made an ² on 200 other people. His invite was posted on other Facebook pages and 'friends of friends' didn't need much ³ to come.

At first, only a few people came, but as more teenagers arrived, people started to damage things and then they

started to steal. Karl asked some people to leave, but they just laughed. They had no ⁴ of leaving. Then he got into an ⁵ with another boy. Unfortunately, it ⁶ into a fight. Things were getting out of control and the only ⁷ was to call the police.

The next day, most people said they ⁸ the party and Karl got seventy-five 'likes' on his Facebook page. But Karl was in big trouble. The house was a mess and his parents were on their way back home.

9 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Interview your partner. Then read the key. Are they a risk-taker? Do you agree with the results?

Peer pressure

⁴ Even teenagers who are not usually big risk-takers may suddenly do something dangerous because **they** want to show off or fit in. If you look at statistics, boys often take more risks than girls, perhaps because they don't want to be **embarrassed** in front of **their** friends – though girls dislike that, too. Boys are more likely not to wear seat belts or motorbike helmets, more likely to get into an argument or a fight, and more likely to carry a weapon, smoke and drink. But is taking risks really the best way to get people to respect, notice and like you?

What you can do

There's no easy solution, but try to make good choices and be independent. Don't get pushed into doing things by your friends.

⁵ Sports, rollercoasters, skateboarding, go-karting and trampolining will all give you the same 'wow' factor. And if you're around seventeen, stop worrying, because your brain has reached the stage where you can more easily make sensible decisions. You've survived up until now, so you've achieved a lot – well done!

Do you:

Are you a risk-taker?

- 1 enjoy rollercoaster rides?
- 2 like films where you can't predict the ending?
- 3 do frightening things to impress your friends?
- 4 feel bored if you stay at home for a long time?
- 5 like to try new food you have never tasted before?
- 6 wear unusual clothes and enjoy looking different?
- 7 do things without thinking about 'what happens next'?

KEY: If you answered 'yes' to more than five of these questions, then you are probably a risk-taker!

5B ■ Grammar and listening Too young, too old?

1 SPEAKING Look at the profiles of Jordan Romero and Anthony Smith. What is unusual about them? What have they achieved? Why do you think they did it?

Present perfect and past simple

2 **1.24** Listen to an interview with a climbing instructor. Why did Jordan Romero climb Everest?

3 **1.24** Choose the correct answers. Then listen again and check.

- 1 How many mountains has Jordan Romero climbed?
 - a He's climbed eight mountains.
 - b He's climbed seven mountains.
- 2 When did he climb Everest?
 - a He climbed Everest in 2010.
 - b He climbed Everest in 2011.
- 3 How old was he then?
 - a He was thirteen.
 - b He was nine.
- 4 Has he been to Antarctica?
 - a Yes, he has.
 - b No, he hasn't.
- 5 Has Marco ever climbed with a young explorer?
 - a Yes, he's climbed with Jordan.
 - b No, he's never done that.

4 Study the questions and answers in exercise 3. Which sentences are in the past simple? Which are in the present perfect? Complete the rules.

- a We use to talk about an event that happened at a definite time in the past.
- b We use to talk about an event that happened at an indefinite time in the past.
- c We form the present perfect with the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the main verb.
- d We often use *ever* and *never* with the present perfect to talk about experiences. We only use in questions.
- e Compare the participles *been* and *gone*:
He's been to Antarctica. = He went to Antarctica and came back.
He's gone to Antarctica. = He went to Antarctica and is still there now.

Reference and practice 5.1 Workbook page 112

5 Complete the text about young adventurers with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

6 SPEAKING Choose three of the activities below. Then ask and answer with a partner. Use the present perfect for the questions and the past simple to give more details.

- try a risky sport ■ watch an adventure film
- travel to another country ■ give money to charity
- be on a motorbike ■ fly in a hot-air balloon

Jordan Romero

Achievement: climbed Everest

Ambition: climb the highest mountain in every state of the USA

Recent activity: wrote a book

Interests: skiing, skateboarding, friends' parties



This month's

Young adventurers

Most people ¹..... (never visit) the North Pole, but Parker Liautaud has. Last year, Parker ²..... (ski) 130 km across the Arctic in freezing temperatures. In the same year, he also ³..... (start) a Facebook page about climate change. It's amazing because Parker is only sixteen years old and still ⁴..... (not finish) school – he's a very young explorer.

⁵..... you (ever be) to the South Pole? Maybe not, but in 2009, Katie Walter ⁶..... (walk) there and back in twenty days. She was only seventeen years old and she ⁷..... (make) a lot of money for charity.

Parker and Katie ⁸..... (achieve) great things, but they are both still teenagers. ⁹..... they (do) too much, too young? Some people think so. Some psychologists say that it's dangerous for teens to take these risks because their brains ¹⁰..... (not develop) enough. Katie and Parker probably disagree! What do you think?

Have you ever tried a risky sport?

Yes, I have. I went skiing two years ago and broke my leg!

Anthony Smith

Achievement: flew a hot-air balloon from Zanzibar to East Africa

Ambition: climb a mountain, go skydiving

Recent activity: sailed across the Atlantic in a raft

Interests: science, gardening, reading



cool explorers

A veteran's story

Anthony Smith is an old-age pensioner from London. He ¹..... a life full of adventure. When he was young, he ²..... biology at university. After that, he ³..... a pilot and also ⁴..... as a science correspondent for a newspaper. He ⁵..... more than thirty books, but he ⁶..... any films. In January 2012, he ⁷..... from the Canary Islands to the Bahamas in the Caribbean. He wanted to prove that old people can still have adventures. He ⁸..... alone. Three other old adventurers joined him. He ⁹..... a lot of money for a charity that provides clean water for people in Africa, Asia and Central America. He ¹⁰..... through seventy countries, but he ¹¹..... to the South Pole. He ¹²..... an interview for our newspaper. You can read it in the next issue.

Present perfect with *already, just* and *yet*

- 7 Look at the profile of Anthony Smith, then read the advert he posted in a newspaper. What is it asking for? What type of person would answer the advert?

Fancy sailing across the Atlantic in a raft?

Famous traveller needs three crew.

Must be old-age pensioners.

Serious adventurers only.

- 8 Read the profiles of Jordan and Anthony again and complete the sentences.

- 1 has *already* flown in a hot-air balloon.
- 2 hasn't climbed a mountain *yet*.
- 3 has *just* written a book.

- 9 Study the sentences in exercise 8 and complete the rules with *already, just* and *yet*. Then make three more sentences about Jordan and Anthony.

With the present perfect, we use:

- a to talk about recent events.
- b to talk about an event or action that happened sooner than expected.
- c to talk about an event or action that has not happened.
- d in negative sentences and questions. It goes at the end of the sentence.
- e and before the past participle.

Reference and practice 5.2 Workbook page 113

- 10 Complete the text about a veteran's story with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs below. Can you add *already, just* or *yet* to any of the sentences?

■ become ■ give ■ have ■ not be ■ not go ■ not produce
■ raise ■ sail ■ study ■ travel ■ work ■ write

- 11 **SPEAKING** Work in groups. How well do you know your classmates? Complete the profile for each person in your group. Then ask and answer to find out if your ideas are correct.

Name

Achievement:

Ambition:

Recent activity:

Interests:

DVD extra Great explorers: Edmund Hillary

5C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary Fears and phobias

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photos and the chart. Answer the questions.

- Do any of these things make you feel scared? Rate them on a scale of 0–5 (0 = not scared at all, 5 = terrified). Then compare your scores with a partner.
- Did anything score 4 or 5? Can you explain why?

Are you afraid of ...?

Score	0	1	2	3	4	5
the dark	●	●	●	●	●	●
small spaces	●	●	●	●	●	●
large crowds	●	●	●	●	●	●
heights	●	●	●	●	●	●
spiders	●	●	●	●	●	●
public speaking	●	●	●	●	●	●
flying	●	●	●	●	●	●
injections	●	●	●	●	●	●
exams	●	●	●	●	●	●
open spaces	●	●	●	●	●	●



- 1.25** Listen to the introduction to a programme about phobias. What is a phobia? Why do people have phobias?
- 1.26** Listen to three people talking about their phobias. Which phobias in exercise 1 do they mention?
- 1.26** Listen again and match speakers A–C to statements 1–8. There are two statements that you do not need.

- Speaker A** 1 This person thinks their phobia is silly.
Speaker B 2 This person thinks their phobia started in childhood.
Speaker C 3 This person can't stand cold weather.
 4 This person has a fear of heights.
 5 This person has the same fear as a parent.
 6 This person doesn't mind walking up stairs.
 7 This person doesn't like huge open spaces.
 8 This person asked someone for help with their phobia.

V insight Base and strong adjectives

5 1.27 Complete the table. Then listen and check your answers.

■ boiling ■ freezing ■ hilarious ■ huge ■ ridiculous ■ furious ■ terrible ■ tiny

Base adjectives	hot	silly	cold	big	funny	angry	small	bad
Strong adjectives	boiling (=very hot)							

- Which adjectives in exercise 5 would you use to describe these things?
 - the weather in Alaska ■ your favourite joke ■ an unpleasant experience
 - the temperature in the Sahara ■ a baby ■ how you feel when someone has lied to you

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Study the unusual phobias and answer the questions.

- Which do you think is the most ridiculous? Why?
- Which of these phobias might start when you are
 - a child? ■ a teenager? ■ an adult?

Fear of ...

- colours
- clowns
- cars
- the number 13
- storms
- dancing
- the sun
- youth
- school



Describing a photo

8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at photos A and B and discuss the questions.

- 1 What type of event do you think it is?
- 2 What are the people doing?
- 3 How do you think they feel?
- 4 Which adjectives would you use to describe the events?
 - frightening ■ amazing ■ boring
 - ridiculous ■ exciting

9 **1.28** Listen to the dialogue. Which photo are the people talking about?

10 **1.28** Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.

Locating	Describing	Speculating
in the ¹	I can ³ that it's	Judging ⁴ his face,
in the foreground	It shows	He does ⁵ a bit
in ² of	In this photo, there is / are	It looks ⁶ it was
on the right / left		
next to		

11 **1.29** Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- **Hannah** It's in Dublin. It's a photo of a St Patrick's Day concert.
- **Josh** Hey, that's a nice picture. Where is it?
- **Hannah** Yes, it's a big celebration in Ireland on 17 March. There's usually a huge parade through the streets.
- **Josh** St Patrick's Day?
- **Hannah** Yes, we did. It was amazing!
- **Josh** I've never celebrated St Patrick's Day, but it looks fun. Is that you in the middle of the picture?
- **Hannah** Oh, these are shamrocks. It's the symbol of Ireland.
- **Josh** There are lots of people there. What are they waving?
- **Josh** That's interesting. Well, I bet you all had a good time!
- **Hannah** Yes, it is. And that's my cousin on the left. My friends Liz and Dora are just behind us.

12 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of locating and speculating.

13 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photo and prepare a dialogue. Use the dialogue in exercise 11 to help you.

- Take turns to ask about the photo. Ask questions about:
- the place and the event: Where is it? What is it?
 - the people: What are they doing? Why are they there? Who are they?



5D ■ Culture, vocabulary and grammar Antarctic adventure

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. How much do you know about the Antarctic? Do the quiz. Then read the text and check your answers.

- The Antarctic is than the Arctic.
a colder b less cold
- Thousands of live there.
a polar bears b penguins
- The Inuit people have lived there.
a never b always
- It's dark
a all year round b for half the year
- It's the place on Earth.
a wettest b driest

2 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- What job does Brita do?
- How was Amundsen's expedition different from Scott's?
- Why did most of Scott's team go back?
- Why was Scott disappointed when he got to the South Pole?
- What problems did he experience on the way back?
- What makes Scott's boots special?
- Why does Brita think Scott's story is an inspiration?

3 SPEAKING Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you think it is important to preserve historic buildings like Scott's Hut? Why / why not?
- Which famous explorers do you know of? What did they explore / discover? Are there any from your country?

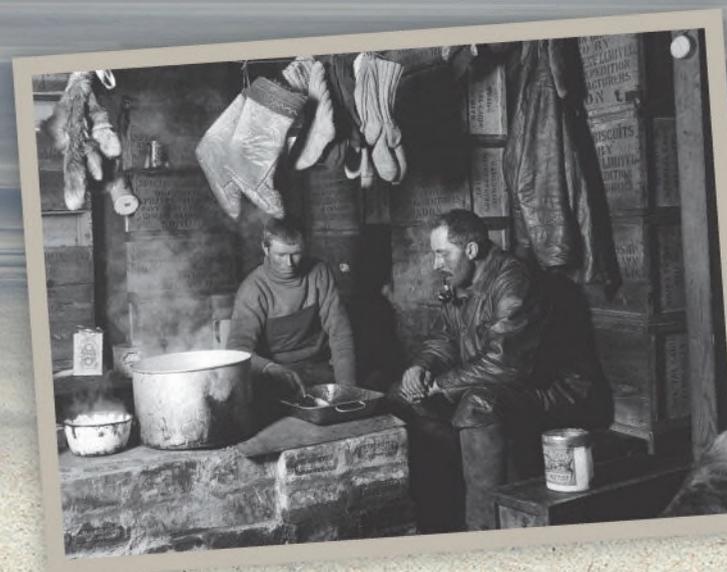
V insight Phrasal verbs: stages in a journey

4 Study the highlighted phrasal verbs in the text. Then read sentences 1–8 and replace the words in *italics* with the correct phrasal verb.

- Last August we went on a road trip. The first day of the holiday, we *began our journey* from home.
- After a few kilometres, we decided to *stop for a short time* and have breakfast at a small café.
- We were there for an hour, then we *continued* with our journey.
- Unfortunately, it started to rain. Then we *travelled down* the wrong road and got lost.
- Later, things got worse and the car *stopped working*. Dad's mobile phone stopped working, too!
- We spent half an hour repairing the car, but in the end we *stopped trying*.
- We decided to *go in the opposite direction* and go home, so we got out of the car and started walking.
- We didn't *meet or find* any other cars or people all the way home!

5 SPEAKING Have you ever been on a long or eventful journey? Where were you going? Describe the journey.

Eyewitness account: Scott's Hut



Brita Harding is a scientist and she's been in Antarctica for five weeks. She is working in a small building called Scott's Hut and helping to preserve it. The British explorer Captain Robert Scott used the hut as a base camp in 1911.

The Antarctic is the driest, coldest and windiest continent in the world. It's dark for six months of the year and not many animals live here, apart from penguins. There are no native people like the Inuits, and tourists never **stop off** to explore. It's easy to understand why. It isn't the best place to live and work and it's freezing at the moment – we've had temperatures of -73°C since Monday!

Every day, I **go down** to Ross Island and work in Scott's Hut with other scientists. Inside there are books, wooden skis, biscuits, penguins' eggs and many other interesting things. All these things have been here for a hundred years and they're completely frozen. That's why we want to save the hut – it brings Scott's expedition to life!

The race to the South Pole is a famous story. Captain Scott and a Norwegian explorer called Roald Amundsen both wanted to get there first. They both prepared for many months, but in the end their expeditions were very different: Amundsen used dogs to pull his sleds and Scott used motorized sleds and horses. Amundsen had good weather during his expedition, but Scott had bad weather. When Scott's team **set out** from the hut on 1 November 1911, there were terrible snow storms and the sleds **broke down**. After a few weeks, the horses died and most of his team **turned back**. In the end, only five men **carried on** to the South Pole: Scott, Oates, Evans, Bowers and Wilson.



On 17 January 1912, Scott's team reached the Pole and **came across** the Norwegian flag – Amundsen's team were there before them and were already racing back to tell the world. Tired and disappointed, Scott made his way back home, but the return journey was a nightmare. They ran out of food and got lost in snowstorms; then on 17 February, Evans had a bad fall and died. A month later, Oates walked into a snow storm and disappeared. Scott, Bowers and Wilson stayed in the tent for two more weeks. Sadly, the storm didn't stop, so they died. They were only eighteen kilometres from a supply of food.

In Scott's hut, there is a pair of old explorer's boots. Scott wore these boots for years and they are dirty and broken, but they're very special, too. They tell us Scott's story – that he was hard-working, ambitious and determined, and that he pushed himself to the limit. Although the journey was terrible and terrifying, Scott never **gave up**, and that's an amazing achievement.



Present perfect with *for* and *since*

6 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

We've had temperatures of -73°C **since** Monday.

The skis have been in the hut **for** a hundred years.

How long have you lived in the Antarctic?

- When did it start getting very cold? Is it still very cold today?
- When did Scott first put the skis in the hut? Are they in the hut now?
- Do the sentences refer to the present, the past, or both?
- We use *for* and *since* with the present perfect to say how long a situation has existed. Which word do we use with a period of time? Which one do we use with a point in time?
- Which question word do we use with the present perfect when we want to know the duration of an activity?

Reference and practice 5.3 Workbook page 113

7 Read the email from Brita to a friend. Complete the text with the present perfect or the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.



Hi Carine

I ¹..... (live) in Antarctica for two months now and it's been an interesting experience. It's an amazing place, but I ²..... (not see) my family since Christmas and I'm starting to feel homesick. It's summer here now, so lots of scientists ³..... (arrive) recently. More come in the summer as they can do more research.

One of my friends is a biologist and he's studying penguins. He ⁴..... (tag) hundreds since he arrived. But he ⁵..... (not do) any tagging since Monday this week because the weather has been terrible. No one ⁶..... (be) outside because there's a 'category 2' warning, which means there's a huge snow storm. I ⁷..... (have) two thick jumpers on for days, but I still feel cold!

I ⁸..... (not send) an email last week because I didn't have any news – I ⁹..... (stay) in my room all week, read books about astronomy and wrote my blog. I also ¹⁰..... (chat) with Max, one of the scientists. Have I told you about him? He ¹¹..... (live) here for six months and he's studying astronomy. It's easier to see the night sky as there's no light pollution here. I have to go now, but I'll write again next week.

Brita

8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Student A is a scientist who works in the Antarctic. Student B is an interviewer for a radio programme. Use the email in exercise 7 to help you.

Interviewer Where do you live in the Antarctic?

Scientist I live in a research station near Ross Island.

Interviewer How long have you lived there?

Scientist I've lived here since December.

Vocabulary bank Personality adjectives page 138

My page



This month's competition is all about inspirational people.

- Write a description of a person you admire. It can be a famous person, a friend or a member of your family.
- Say why they are special and what they have achieved!
- Send in your description with a photo by Friday, 16th January.
- Winners will get a copy of the best-selling book *Teens Can Make It Happen* by Stedman Graham.

- 1 SPEAKING** Read the magazine competition announcement. What prize is the winner going to receive? Have you ever taken part in a magazine competition?
- 2** Read competition entries A and B on page 65. Which description is about a friend? Which description is about someone famous?

STRATEGY

Paragraphs and topic sentences

When you write, always organize your ideas into paragraphs.

- The introduction tells you what the text is going to be about.
- The middle paragraph(s) give background information and details.
- The conclusion repeats and summarizes the ideas from the introduction.

In each paragraph there is always a topic sentence which introduces the topic and often summarizes what the paragraph is about. The topic sentence is usually at the beginning of a paragraph.

- 3** Read the strategy. Then read description A again and put the paragraphs in the correct order.
- 4** Complete description B with topic sentences a–c.
 - People say you shouldn't judge by appearances and that's true.
 - Things aren't always easy for Stacey.
 - My best friend Stacey is a person I admire.

Expressing addition

- 5** Study the highlighted words in descriptions A and B. Complete the rules.

We use addition linkers to join ideas and add information when we write. We can use:

- as well* and at the end of a sentence or new idea.
- before a main verb, but after auxiliary verbs and *be*.
- and *what's more* at the beginning of a sentence or new idea.

- 6** Choose the correct words.

- Marathon running is fun. **In addition**, / **As well**, it's good for your health.
- My sister is hard-working. She's very ambitious **as well** / **in addition**.
- My cousin got fantastic exam results. He **also** / **what's more** passed his driving test!
- These trainers are comfortable. They are **in addition** / **also** very light.
- My friend Sarah is amazing at tennis. She's good at basketball, **too** / **also**.
- My dad is brilliant at chess. He can **also** / **too** do crosswords.
- Jaime speaks English well. **What's more**, / **Too**, he can speak Spanish and German.



A

Fauja started running when he was 89 years old, and you may wonder why. When his wife died, he moved from India to the UK to be with his son. He wanted something to focus on and running provided that. Fauja ran his first race in 1992 and since then has run marathons around the world. He's **also** broken many records and he's made a lot of money for charity, **too**.

When Fauja Singh runs a marathon, he never gives up. He always carries on. 'I don't want to stop,' he says. 'I want to die running.' And that's why I admire him.

Fauja Singh is a person I admire. Fauja shows that old people can achieve amazing things, just like young people. In 2011, when Fauja was one hundred years old, he became the oldest person to run a marathon. That's an incredible achievement!



B

1 She's taught me not to judge people by their appearances. **What's more**, she is a very brave person.

2 I met Stacey when we were both twelve years old. She was in my class, but I didn't talk to her at first. I was embarrassed because Stacey looked different. You see, Stacey uses a wheelchair. Then one day, in sports class, we played basketball. Stacey joined in and we had a lot of fun. **In addition**, she was a really good player! I started talking to Stacey and found that we had a lot in common.

3 It's difficult to open doors when you're in a wheelchair. People sometimes ignore you **as well**. 'We're all different,' she says, 'but it's good to be different.' But Stacey never complains about her disability – she just smiles and carries on, and that's why I admire her.

WRITING GUIDE

■ **Task** Think of a person you admire. Write a letter with a description of the person to enter the *My page* competition.

■ **Ideas** Decide who you are going to write about and make notes.

- 1 Make a list of people you admire. Decide who you are going to write about.
- 2 Make notes about:
 - why you admire them.
 - the things they have achieved.
 - if it's a friend, how you met them.
 - their personal qualities.

■ **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Say who you admire and why.

Paragraph 2: Give background information. Talk about their achievements, or how you know them.

Paragraph 3: Say why you admire them again.

■ **Write** Write your letter. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Does each paragraph have a clear topic and a topic sentence?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 5 Phrasal verbs: understanding the particle

1 Work in pairs. Study the words below. Which ones are not phrasal verbs? How do you know?

- play games ■ look after ■ sit down ■ feel bored
- go out ■ take risks ■ look up

STRATEGY

Understanding the meaning of the particle in phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb is a combination of two or three words: a verb and at least one particle (a preposition or an adverb). Some of the most common particles are *at*, *back*, *down*, *for*, *in*, *off*, *on*, *out*, *to*, *up* and *with*. The same particle can have different meanings in different phrasal verbs. For example, *out* and *up* have several meanings:

OUT

- sharing: Share the chocolates out between you.
- leaving: We set out early on our trip.
- removing: I've just had a tooth taken out.

UP

- moving from a low to a high position: Please stand up when the head teacher comes into the room.
- finishing: I've used up all my money.
- increasing: He grew up on a farm in Ireland.

Knowing the possible meanings of a particle will help you to understand new phrasal verbs.

2 Read the strategy above. Then study the underlined phrasal verbs in the sentences below and match the particles to meanings a–f.

- 1 She went over to the crying child and picked him up.
- 2 I got some fruit juice out of the fridge and drank it.
- 3 The price of petrol has gone up again.
- 4 I went around the guests, serving out tea and biscuits.
- 5 They ate up the rest of the cake.
- 6 We started out at six in the morning and arrived at lunchtime.

- a increasing
- b finishing
- c removing
- d sharing
- e leaving
- f moving from a low to a high position

3 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Ann, can you help me to give **out** / **up** the dictionaries?
- 2 Please turn the music **out** / **up**. I can't hear it.
- 3 Don't leave your coat on the floor! Pick it **out** / **up** and put it in your wardrobe.
- 4 Drink **out** / **up** all your milk!
- 5 I took the books **out** / **up** of my bag and started doing my homework.
- 6 They checked **out** / **up** of the hotel at eight o'clock.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

- eat up ■ get up ■ go out ■ hurry up ■ rub out

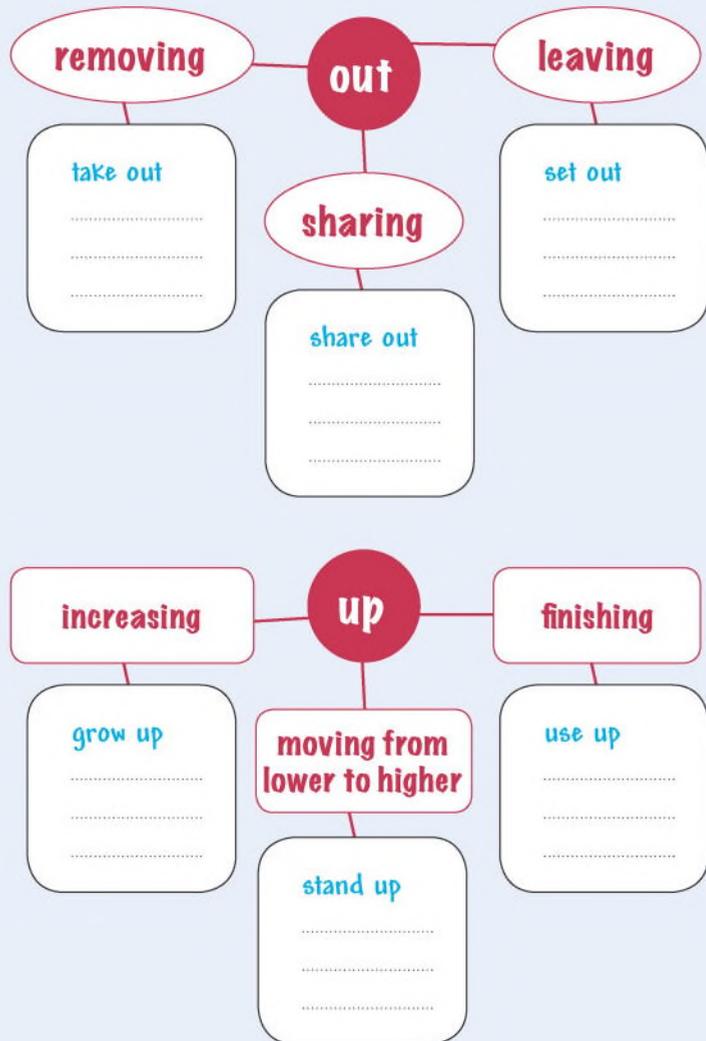
- 1 I at six o'clock this morning and had a shower.
- 2 Dad, I'm just See you later.
- 3 your sandwich and let's go.
- 4! We're going to be late.
- 5 The teacher the drawing on the board and wrote the date.

STRATEGY

Recording phrasal verbs

It is useful to group and record phrasal verbs by the meaning of the particle. A mind map can be a good technique to use. You can add more phrasal verbs to the group as you learn them.

5 Read the strategy above. Put the phrasal verbs from exercises 2, 3 and 4 under the correct particle meaning in the mind map. Can you add one more phrasal verb for each particle meaning?



6 Work in pairs. Take turns to say a sentence using a phrasal verb from exercises 2, 3 and 4. Your partner has to guess the meaning of the particle.

- A Bus ticket prices have gone up.
- B Increasing.
- A Correct!

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the text with the adjective form of the verbs in brackets. Use *-ed* or *-ing*.

People say that bungee jumping is ¹..... (amaze), but I'm not so sure. I once saw a video of a jump that went wrong and the images were quite ²..... (frighten). They showed a woman jumping at the Victoria Falls in Zambia. She was very ³..... (excite) before the jump, but it nearly ended in disaster. The bungee broke and she fell into the river below, which was full of crocodiles. The ⁴..... (surprise) thing is that the woman survived the experience, but she says she was very ⁵..... (frighten) and she would never do it again.

Marks / 5

- 2 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the underlined verbs.

- I enjoy skiing.
I get a lot of out of it.
- Mike impressed the interviewer.
He made a good
- We've solved the problem.
We've found a
- They didn't intend to do it.
It wasn't their
- Technology develops quickly today.
There are a lot of new in technology.

Marks / 5

- 3 Replace the words in italics with strong adjectives.

- Canada is a *very big* country. It's 9,984,670 km².
- It's *very hot* in Death Valley, California. The temperature goes up to 49°C!
- British comedian Peter Kay is *very funny*. He's sold over ten million DVDs.
- The Razzies are prizes for *very bad* films. They're the worst films of the year.
- Monaco is a *very small* country. It's only 2 km².

Marks / 5

- 4 Match the words in A to the words in B to make phrasal verbs. Then complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

A ■ break ■ come ■ set ■ stop ■ turn
B ■ across ■ back ■ down ■ off ■ out

- They some old friends at the hotel they were staying at.
- We at a petrol station to ask for directions.
- Can you help me? My car
- They early tomorrow to avoid the traffic.
- It started to rain, so we and went home.

Marks / 5

Grammar

- 5 Complete the dialogue with the present perfect or the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Ewan ¹..... you ever (climb) a mountain?

Max Yes, I have. I ²..... (go up) Snowdon in Wales with my brother last year. It ³..... (not take) long and we ⁴..... (have) a great view from the top. I ⁵..... (do) a lot of climbing with my brother. He's very good.

Ewan ⁶..... he ever (think) about climbing abroad?

Max Yes, but he ⁷..... (not try) it yet. Right now, he only goes climbing in the UK. Last month, he ⁸..... (fly) to Scotland to climb Ben Nevis.

Ewan ⁹..... he (get) to the top?

Max No, the weather was bad, so he ¹⁰..... (give up) before he reached the top.

Marks / 10

- 6 Choose the correct words.

- I've **just / yet / already** bought a new bike. Do you want to see it?
- Charlie can't go out. He hasn't done his homework **just / yet / already**.
- We've **just / yet / already** seen that film. We went to the cinema last month.
- Can we go home? Has the match finished **just / yet / already**?
- We are thirty minutes late. The concert has **just / yet / already** started.
- Tessa can't ski. She hasn't had lessons **just / yet / already**.
- They're wearing pyjamas. They've **just / yet / already** got up.

Marks / 7

- 7 Complete sentence b so that it has a similar meaning to sentence a. Use the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets with *for* or *since*.

- a Harry met Kate five years ago. (know)
b Harry five years.
- a The last time I had a holiday was in January. (not have)
b I January.
- a Caitlin became a doctor in 2010. (be)
b Caitlin 2010.
- a We came here eight years ago. (live)
b We eight years.
- a The last time Rob saw his family was in May. (not see)
b Rob May.
- a You lost your job six months ago. (not work)
b You six months.
- a I started learning English when I was eight. (study)
b I I was eight.
- a The last time it rained was five weeks ago. (not rain)
b It five weeks.

Marks / 8

Total / 45

6 Roads to education

Reading and vocabulary A hard lesson

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the photo. Where are the people? Is it a safe or a dangerous place? Read the article and compare your ideas.
- 2 Match sentences A–F to gaps 1–5 in the article. There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - A Police officers are not going to leave schools anytime soon.
 - B If they don't pay, their children will go to prison when they are seventeen.
 - C It's got a big sports hall, a nice canteen, a good library and well-equipped classrooms.
 - D The officer took out his gun and threatened a girl because she did not show respect.
 - E What happened there shocked people all over the country.
 - F The boy had learning difficulties and didn't understand what the police were saying.
- 3 **SPEAKING** Work in groups. Do you think having police officers in school is a good idea? Think of two reasons supporting the idea and two reasons against it. Use examples in the article to help you.

V insight Collocations: crime

- 4 Find the verbs in the article and write the nouns that go with them. Which phrases describe something the police do?
 - 1 get into (line 24)
 - 2 arrest (line 25)
 - 3 punish (line 29)
 - 4 pay (line 31)
 - 5 appear (line 31)
 - 6 commit (line 47)
 - 7 charge (line 54)
 - 8 spend time (line 55)
- 5 Complete the extract from a newspaper article with the correct form of the verbs in exercise 4.

Can you remember the last time you ¹..... trouble at school? What happened? Did your teacher talk to you about it? Perhaps they ²..... you or sent you to the head teacher? That's not unusual, but for students in some parts of America, it's a very different story. If you do something wrong, the police can ³..... you and put you in prison. Last year in California, a girl ⁴..... in court because she dropped food on the floor in the school canteen. In Texas, a boy ⁵..... in prison because he wasn't wearing his school identification tag. Was he just forgetful or did he ⁶..... a crime? Police officers in schools sometimes ⁷..... students for very small offences. In some schools, the students have to ⁸..... a fine for arriving late or not wearing their school uniform.

War Zones

Fulmore Middle School in Texas is an ordinary school that teaches the usual subjects. ¹.....
 When the bell rings at break time, ⁵ children walk out of the classrooms past teachers, monitors ... and police officers. 'Yes, there are police in our school,' says one fourteen-year-old student. 'They've got pepper spray and they've got guns ¹⁰ and they will use them.'

Police officers in American schools are nothing new. In the 1990s, there was a rise in juvenile and gang-related crime and newspapers started to report on a 'lost generation'. They talked about unhappy, ¹⁵ out-of-control children, irresponsible parents and schools which were like war zones. Then, in 1999, the unthinkable happened. Two students from Colorado shot twelve other students and a teacher at school. ²..... Everyone wanted ²⁰ protection for their children, and police officers in schools were the answer. Nowadays, police still protect schools, and in many schools, there is a zero tolerance policy*. This means that you can get into trouble for even small offences. ²⁵ Police officers arrest people for violence and bringing illegal drugs or weapons into school, but they can also arrest them for throwing paper planes or being



Vocabulary: collocations: crime; negative prefixes; adjectives in poems
Grammar: *will* and *going to*; first conditional; zero conditional; expressing probability: *may*, *might*, *will*; adverbs of probability

Speaking: talking about school life; making predictions about the future; making offers and suggestions; discussing a poem
Writing: a for and against essay

impolite. 'If a student behaves badly, the police officer will punish offenders and give them a ticket,' explains one student. The ticket might say you have to pay a fine, or appear in court. The fines can be up to \$500, and many poorer parents don't have the money.³ These students will get a criminal record, and when they leave prison, it'll be impossible for them to get a job or go to college. This record will destroy their lives, and all because they did something wrong at school. Unfortunately, the situation isn't going to change.⁴ 'We need police in school,' says a twelve-year-old student at Fulmore. 'In my school, it can get physical and it can turn out very bad.' However, statistics tell us what happened in Colorado was unusual. Most schools do not face a serious threat of violence, and police officers often only deal with 'naughty' or immature students. School is not like the outside world. Children don't usually commit terrible crimes. Severe punishments for small offences may do more harm than good. In one incident, police officers pepper-sprayed a sixteen-year-old student when he didn't respond to an order.⁵ When they pepper-sprayed him, he started swinging his arms around in pain and hit one of the officers by accident. Now the police are charging him with assault*, and he will probably spend time in prison. Police officers in schools may well be protecting some lives, but are they destroying others?

* zero tolerance policy = punishing all bad behaviour, even when it is not serious

* assault = when someone attacks another person



V insight Negative prefixes: *un-*, *im-*, *ir-* and *il-*

6 Study the adjectives from the article and read the rules. Then write the correct negative prefixes.

- 1happy
- 2responsible
- 3thinkable
- 4legal
- 5polite
- 6possible
- 7usual
- 8mature

We often add the prefix *un-* to a word to make it negative. However, when the word starts with *l*, *m*, *p* or *r*, we often use a different prefix.

- a *im-* + *m* or *p* perfect → imperfect
 b *ir-* + *r* rational → irrational
 c *il-* + *l* literate → illiterate

7 Add the correct negative prefixes to the adjectives.

- fortunate ■ helpful ■ logical ■ moral ■ practical
 ■ regular ■ safe ■ surprising ■ tidy

8 Complete the sentences with negative adjectives in exercises 6 and 7.

- 1 I think my school is an place to study. We really need the police.
- 2 The classroom looked at the end of the lesson. There were bits of paper on the desks and on the floor.
- 3 Stop talking! It's to hear what the teacher is saying.
- 4 When someone breaks the law and does something, it's necessary to punish them.
- 5 My brother is at school. He's scared because there are bullies in his class.
- 6 If you are, it means you can't read or write.

9 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine you are teachers at a new school and you have decided to introduce fines for bad behaviour. Look at the list of 'crimes' and agree on a fine for each one. The minimum fine is 10 euros. The maximum fine is 500 euros. Then compare your ideas as a class.

- being late ■ cheating ■ bullying ■ fighting
 ■ swearing ■ truancy ■ using a mobile phone in class
 ■ forgetting homework ■ vandalism

Crime	Fine
forgetting homework	€10

Vocabulary bank School: bad behaviour page 139

DVD extra An American high school

Editor's choice: the world's youngest head teacher



This week's amazing story comes all the way from India. ¹We think that Ali's school will make a big difference to his village!



It's two o'clock and sixteen-year-old Babar Ali has just got back from school in West Bengal. It's been a long day, but he isn't going to relax or play with his friends. What is he going to do? ²He's going to teach the children from his village what he learned today. Babar Ali has got his own school – he's the world's youngest head teacher.

Babar Ali started teaching when he was nine years old. At first, he taught friends as a game, but then he decided to do it seriously and help poor children in his village. There are other schools outside the village, but Babar Ali's school is different because it's free. It also gives students free books. ³Ali thinks that children won't go to a school which has fees, because their parents can't afford it. His school is their only chance to have an education. ⁴'I promise I'll help them learn,' he says.

It's 2.15 p.m. and children are arriving at the school, but there are big black clouds in the sky. ⁵It's going to rain and the classrooms are outside. Ali looks at the clouds and makes a difficult decision. ⁶'We'll close the school today,' he says, but he has a plan. ⁷He's going to raise money for a new building, so the school can stay open all the time.

The rain starts and the children run home. Will they come back tomorrow? Of course they will. They're hungry to learn and they want a better future. That's what Babar Ali wants, too.

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Read the sentences and decide if they are true for you. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 I study at school, so I can pass exams.
- 2 My parents think school is important.
- 3 I like school because all my friends are there.
- 4 My parents pay for my uniform / books / lessons.
- 5 I'd like to be a teacher when I leave school.
- 6 School is the most important thing in my life at the moment.

2 Read the article about the world's youngest head teacher. How is Babar Ali's school different from your school?

will and going to

3 Read the article again. Match sentences 1–7 to rules a–d.

We can use *will* for:

- a predictions, usually after *I think ...* or *I don't think ...*
- b decisions made at the moment of speaking, offers and promises.

We use *going to* for:

- c predictions, based on something we can see in the present.
- d future plans and intentions.

4 Choose the correct words.

- 1 'What are your plans for this afternoon?' 'We **'re going to** / 'll watch a film at home.'
- 2 'Do you think you **'re going to** / 'll pass your exams?' 'Perhaps. I don't know.'
- 3 'I can't do my homework.' 'Don't worry. I **'m going to** / 'll help you.'
- 4 'Why are you studying English?' 'I **'m going to** / 'll get a job in tourism when I leave school.'
- 5 'Oh no! I'm late for school.' 'Calm down – I **'m going to** / 'll take you in the car.'
- 6 'Can I help you with those books?' 'Careful! You **'re going to** / 'll drop them!'

5 **2.01** Complete the interview with Malika, a student at Babar Ali's school. Then listen and check your answers.

- Interviewer** Hi Malika, is the school open today?
Malika Yes, it is. There's a clear, blue sky, so it ¹..... (be) sunny.
Interviewer What are your plans for today, Malika?
Malika I ²..... (go) to school this afternoon.
Interviewer What are you studying today?
Malika I think it ³..... (be) geography, but I'm not sure.
Interviewer Are you going to study this evening?
Malika No, I'm not. I ⁴..... (work) this evening. I clean people's houses.
Interviewer What about after that?
Malika I usually teach my little sister, but I don't think I ⁵..... (have) time today.
Interviewer What do you think you ⁶..... (do) when you have your diploma?
Malika Well, I ⁷..... (not clean) people's houses. I want to be a teacher.
Interviewer Thanks, Malika, and good luck. Will you do another interview after your graduation?
Malika I'd love to. Perhaps I ⁸..... (have) a job as a teacher then!

6 SPEAKING Write six sentences about your future. Use the ideas below. Then work in pairs and compare your ideas.

- two things you think will happen next year / when you leave school
- two things you think won't happen next year / when you leave school
- one thing you are going to do tonight / this weekend
- one thing you are not going to do tonight / this weekend

First conditional

7 Read the text about a journey to school. What is unusual about it? Why do the children do it?

Pili village, China: The road to education is sometimes a very narrow path. Twice a year, a group of eighty children travel from their village in the mountains to a school in Taxkorgan, 190 kilometres away. They get to the school in three days when the weather is good. But when the weather is bad, it takes them a week.

There are no roads to the village, so the children travel across the mountains and rivers. The most dangerous part of their journey is a narrow path along the side of a 300-metre cliff. If they slip, they'll fall into the valley below. Every year, teachers

worry about this path. 'If anything happens, what will we tell their parents?' says one. But the danger doesn't end there. After the mountain path, there are narrow bridges over deep rivers. The children won't fall if they're careful, but some have slipped in the past. Fortunately, no one was hurt.

What do the children think about the trip? According to one teacher, they enjoy the adventure. But at the moment, the government is building a road to the school. Everyone hopes they'll finish it this year. If they do, the children won't have to risk their lives again.

8 Read the sentences and complete the rules. Find more examples of the first conditional in the text.

If they slip, they'll fall into the valley below.

They'll fall into the valley below if they slip.

We use the first conditional to talk about a possible future action or situation, and its probable result.

condition: *if* + tense

result: + verb

The condition clause can come before or after the result clause. We don't use a comma when *if* comes in the middle of the sentence.

Reference and practice 6.2 Workbook page 114

9 Complete the chain story about Kai Yang, a student from Pili village. Use the ideas below.

If he doesn't do the journey, he won't go to school. → If he doesn't go to school, he won't learn to read. → If he doesn't learn to read, ...

- not do exams ■ not get a diploma ■ not get a job ■ be poor ■ not send his children to school

10 SPEAKING Choose one of the starting points below and create your own chain story. Compare with a partner.

- 1 Your alarm clock doesn't go off.
- 2 The weather is good / bad this weekend.
- 3 You forget your best friend's birthday.
- 4 You lose your mobile phone.

6C ■ Listening, speaking and grammar The best things in life



1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photos and read the opinions about play. Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you ever played these games? Which games might children play? Which games might teenagers play?
- 2 What type of games did you play when you were a child? What do you play now?
- 3 Do you think play is a good thing? Choose the opinions you agree with.

2 **2.02** Listen to a talk about play and compare your ideas in exercise 1.

STRATEGY

Taking notes

When you listen to a talk or presentation, it is useful to take notes. Notes should:

- 1 summarize and order the main ideas. What key points does the speaker make?
- 2 be concise. There won't be time to write complete sentences, so use abbreviations and symbols (=, →, >, <, +, ×, etc.).

3 **2.02** Read the strategy. Then listen again and complete the notes.

Best things in life seminar

- playing outside = kids' ¹ activity
- 89% prefer free play to ²
- all kids play, but ³ games = different from children's games

Benefits of play

- rat experiment: play → ⁴ brains
- schools in ⁵ & Japan: more breaks → better grades
- play → better ⁶ & communication skills
- Albert Einstein: ⁷ > knowledge
- children, teenagers and ⁸ can all benefit from play

Zero conditional

4 Match 1–5 to A–E to make sentences. Then complete the rules.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 When children play games, | A students get better grades. |
| 2 If schools have regular break times, | B their brains develop faster. |
| 3 If you add one and one, | C we don't play outside. |
| 4 When the weather is bad, | D you are tired the next day. |
| 5 If you go to bed late, | E you get two. |
- a We use the zero conditional to talk about general facts, when one event or action always happens as a logical result of another event or action.
condition: *if* + tense
result: tense
- b We can sometimes use instead of *if*.

Reference and practice 6.3 Workbook page 115



- 5 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Complete the table with your own ideas. Then make zero conditional sentences with *if* or *when*.

Condition	Result	Zero conditional
late for school	teacher gets angry	1 If I'm late for school, the teacher gets angry.
	get bored	2
play games		3
	feel scared	4
speak English		5
	say 'sorry'	6
mobile phone rings		7

Making offers and suggestions

- 6 **2.03 SPEAKING** Listen to the dialogue. What does Tom ask Rachel to do? What does Rachel decide? What do you usually do when you have a lot of homework and a friend asks you to go out?
- 7 **2.03** Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.

Making offers

Can I ¹ you?
 Do you want ² to ... ?
³ meet you at one o'clock,
 if you like.

Making suggestions

⁴ don't you ... ?
 What / How about going ... ?

Responding to offers

It's OK. I'm just looking.
 That'd be great, but are you ⁵ ?
 Thanks, that's really kind.

Responding to suggestions

Sorry, I can't.
 I don't know ⁶ I can.
 All right then.

- 8 **2.04** Complete the dialogue with responses A–F. Then listen and check.

A I'm looking for my train pass.
B Don't worry. It won't take long to get there.
C Sorry, that's not it either.
D OK, I'm almost ready.
E No, that's my student card.
F Sounds like a good idea.

Lily Hi, Seth. Are you ready? The concert starts in thirty minutes.
Seth ¹
Lily Yes, it will. It's at Festival Hall, so we should leave now.
Seth ²
Lily What's the problem?
Seth ³ I know it's here somewhere.
Lily I'll help you look for it. Is this it?
Seth ⁴
Lily What about this?
Seth ⁵ I think I've lost it. How annoying!
Lily Calm down, Seth, it's no big deal. Why don't we get the bus instead?
Seth ⁶ Come on, let's go. We're going to be late!

- 9 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of making and responding to suggestions and offers.
- 10 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below or use your own ideas. Take turns to make offers and suggestions. Use the dialogue in exercise 8 to help you.

A

Your friend is doing a photo story about your school for a local newspaper, but their digital camera isn't working. Offer them your camera for a few days. Suggest going shopping together to buy a new camera.

B

You want to go to the Design Museum with your friend to research a school project, but they have to babysit their little brother. Suggest doing the research at their house instead. Offer to bring your laptop and some fashion magazines.

C

Your friend is planning a New Year's Eve party. Make suggestions about where to have the party and who to invite. Offer to help with the food and decorations.

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the list of life goals below. Choose the ones you think people often achieve before they are twenty-one. Compare your ideas.

- get married ■ have children ■ find a job
- travel and / or live abroad ■ buy a house
- learn how to drive

2  **2.05** Read and listen to the poem. Who is it about? What was his life goal? Did he achieve it?

3 Read the poem again. Match summaries a–f to verses 1–6.

- a He loved these places, but he didn't leave the school. I didn't know why.
- b At school, people tidied up his classroom. They forgot about him, but I didn't forget.
- c My teacher told our class that he wanted to travel the world and see different countries.
- d He lived in an ugly house, but he often thought about the beautiful places he wanted to visit.
- e Today, I visit the countries my teacher loved. I love these places, too.
- f Then one day, my teacher didn't come to school because he was ill. He never visited the places he talked about.

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think about the poem and discuss the questions.

- 1 The poet couldn't understand why the teacher didn't leave the school. Can you think of reasons why he stayed?
- 2 The poet says: 'But a lesson he never knew he taught / Is with me to this day'. What was that lesson?

V Adjectives in poems

5 Read the poem again and underline the adjectives the poet uses. What do they describe? Add them to the table.

Places on the maps	warm, blue ...
The teacher's home	

6 Study the adjectives in exercise 5. What parts of the world do they describe? What other adjectives can you use to describe these places?

7  **2.05** Listen to the poem again and underline the rhyming words at the end of the lines. Can you think of other words which rhyme?

8 Study the words below. Do they rhyme with any of the words that you underlined in the poem?

- too ■ learned ■ free ■ play ■ told

9 Practise reading the poem out loud. Think about the rhymes and the rhythm.

The Geography Lesson

by Brian Patten (1946 –)



1
Our teacher told us one day he would leave
And sail across a warm blue sea
To places he had only known from maps,
And all his life had longed to be.

2
The house he lived in was narrow and grey
But in his mind's eye* he could see
Sweet-scented jasmine clinging to* the walls,
And green leaves burning on an orange tree.

3
He spoke of the lands he longed to* visit,
Where it was never drab* or cold.
I couldn't understand why he never left,
And shook off the school's stranglehold*.



Expressing probability

10 Read these students' life goals. Study the phrases in blue. Then complete the diagram and the rules.

- 1 I **will probably** travel to other countries. I'd like to visit America.
- 2 **Perhaps / Maybe** I **will** learn to drive. I **might / may** buy a car, too.
- 3 I **definitely / certainly won't** get married or have children.
- 4 I **will definitely / certainly** learn another language.
- 5 It's **possible** that I **will** find a good job.



- a We can use the modal verbs and *may* to say that something is possible.
- b We can also use + adverb or adjective to express degrees of probability.
- c *Probably, definitely* and go after *will* but before *won't*.
- d *Perhaps* and go before the subject + *will*.

Reference and practice 6.4 Workbook page 115

11 Rewrite the sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 It's very likely that I'll earn lots of money. (definitely)
- 2 It's possible that I won't own a big house. (probably)
- 3 I'll probably have a dog or a cat. (may)
- 4 I might buy a motorbike instead of a car. (possible)
- 5 I'm sure that I won't live in another country. (certainly)
- 6 It's possible that I'll marry someone from my school. (maybe)
- 7 I might not go to university. (perhaps)
- 8 But perhaps I'll write a book of poetry! (might)

12 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Which of the sentences in exercises 10 and 11 might be true for you? Give reasons for your answers.

Vocabulary bank School: compound nouns page 139

4
Then halfway through his final term
he took ill and never returned.
He never got to that place on the map
Where the green leaves of the orange trees burned.

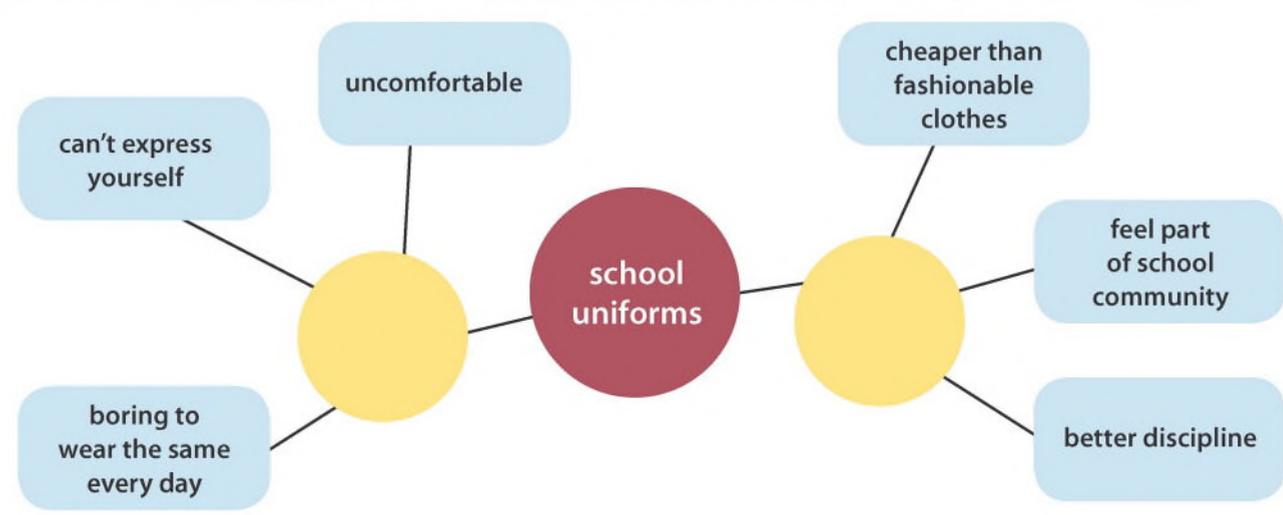
5
The maps were redrawn on the classroom wall;
His name forgotten, he faded away*.
But a lesson he never knew he taught
Is with me to this day.

6
I travel to where the green leaves burn,
To where the ocean's glass-clear and blue,
To places our teacher taught me to love –
And which he never knew.

Glossary

- * in his mind's eye = in his imagination
- * clinging to = holding on tightly to
- * longed to = wanted to
- * drab = dull
- * stranglehold = complete control over someone
- * fade away = disappear

6E ■ Writing A for and against essay



1 SPEAKING Study the mind map about school uniforms. Which ideas are for school uniforms and which are against them? Which do you agree with? Read model essay A and add more ideas to the mind map.

STRATEGY

Brainstorming ideas

Before you start writing:

- 1 think carefully about the topic and write down all your ideas – they can be one word, notes or phrases.
- 2 use a diagram or mind map to organize them into topic areas.
- 3 make sure all your ideas are relevant. Don't spend more than 5–10 minutes on this stage.

2 Read the strategy. Then read model essay B on page 77 and complete the mind map. Which ideas are the most important? Which do you agree with?

3 Look at the article on pages 68–69. Find more ideas for and against police in schools. Put them into the mind map. Then add your own ideas.

```

    graph LR
      A((police in schools)) --- B((for))
      A --- C((against))
      B --- B1[ ]
      B --- B2[ ]
      B --- B3[ ]
      C --- C1[ ]
      C --- C2[ ]
      C --- C3[ ]
    
```

Expressing contrast

- 4 Study the highlighted linking words in model essay A. Compare the way *however*, *but*, *although*, *on the one hand* and *on the other hand* contrast two ideas. Which words come:**
 - at the beginning of a sentence?
 - in the middle of a sentence?
 - at the beginning or in the middle?
- 5 Complete model essay B with the correct linking words.**
- 6 Rewrite the sentences using the linking words in brackets.**
 - 1 It was raining. They walked to school. (although)
 - 2 I arrived at school early. The teacher was late. (however)
 - 3 I enjoy basketball. I hate football. (on the one hand, on the other hand)
 - 4 He was tired. He finished his homework. (but)
 - 5 He finished his homework. He was tired. (although)
 - 6 The police stop crime. They cost schools a lot of money. (but)

A What are the arguments for and against school uniforms?

There have always been a lot of arguments about school uniforms. In Britain, 65% of students don't like them. **However**, I think that school uniforms are a necessary part of school life.

On the one hand, some people argue that school uniforms are boring. Everyone looks the same in a uniform, and you can't express yourself, **but** your clothes are only one way of saying who you are. Other people complain that school uniforms are expensive. Some parents can't afford uniforms, so their children do not go to school. This is a bad thing.

On the other hand, school uniforms can save parents money because they are cheaper than fashionable clothes. In addition, the idea behind school uniforms is to make everyone look the same, so you can't tell the difference between rich and poor. **Although** children might still get bullied for other reasons, they won't get bullied for their clothes. School uniforms make you feel part of something bigger, too. They show that students are proud to belong to their school.

In conclusion, I think that school uniforms are a good idea, **although** they are expensive for some people. It is important for students to feel part of a community, to work together and help each other to learn. School uniforms represent this unity.

B What are the arguments for and against police officers in schools?

People feel very strongly about police officers in schools. A school is usually a safe place to learn. ¹....., in some schools in America, this is no longer the case.

²....., people argue that teachers and students need more protection. There has been more crime in schools recently and teachers, as well as students, have been hurt. In addition, ³..... teachers try to control disruptive students, sometimes it is impossible to teach a class. In these types of schools the police can protect people and punish students who stop the teachers from doing their job.

⁴....., police have a zero tolerance policy. This means that they can arrest and fine students for even small offences. Students can feel anxious in this type of environment. The police are there to protect them. ⁵....., they are actually threatening them.

To sum up, ⁶..... they might make a difference in schools with violent pupils, I think having police officers in schools is not a good idea. Most schools are safe places to study, and most students do not commit crimes, they just misbehave. The problem is that police officers can't always tell the difference.

WRITING GUIDE

■ **Task** Read the task and check you understand it.

What are the arguments for and against more break times at school?

■ **Ideas** Write down your ideas in a mind map. Decide which arguments you support. Decide on the order of your arguments. Which are the most important?

■ **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Introduce the topic and your opinion. What are you going to write about?

Paragraph 2: Arguments you do not support.

Paragraph 3: Arguments you support.

Paragraph 4: Summarize the arguments you support.

■ **Write** Write your for and against essay. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Have you used contrast linkers correctly?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 6 Using a dictionary: verb and noun collocations

1 Work in pairs. Study the words below and answer the questions.

- a crime ■ homework ■ a mistake

- 1 What part of speech are these words?
- 2 Which word can you use with the verb *make*?
- 3 Which word can you use with the verb *do*?
- 4 Which word can you use with the verb *commit*?

STRATEGY

Using a dictionary to find verb and noun collocations

A collocation is a group of words which are often used together. Many English verbs collocate with certain nouns only, for example, we say *make a cake* and *make your bed*, but we can't say *make the dishes* or *make the housework*.

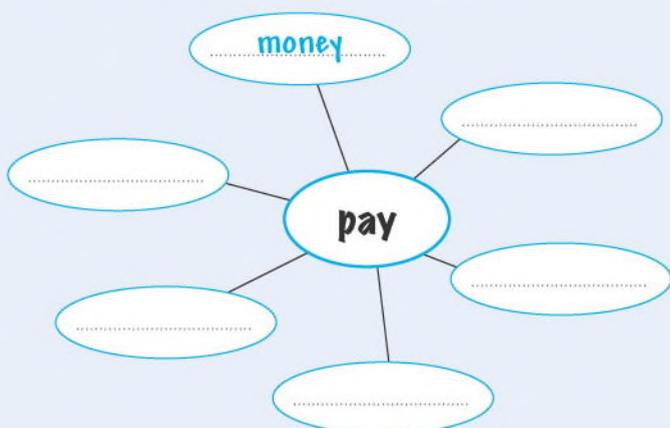
To find out which nouns are used with a verb, look the verb up in a dictionary and read the example sentences in the dictionary entry.

When you record new vocabulary, it is useful to include collocations and your own example sentences with them. If you learn to recognize collocations and use them correctly, your English will sound more natural.

2 Read the strategy above. Then study the extract from a dictionary entry for *pay*. Choose the nouns that collocate with *pay* and add them to the mind map below.

- advice ■ attention ■ beliefs ■ a bill ■ a compliment
- a fine ■ money ■ rent ■ trouble

pay ¹ /peɪ/ verb (pt, pp paid) **1** [I,T] pay (sb) (for sth); pay (sb) sth (for sth) to give sb money for work, goods, services, etc: *She is very well paid.* ♦ *The work's finished but we haven't paid for it yet.* ♦ *We paid the dealer £3000 for the car.* **2** [T] pay sth (to sb) to give the money that you owe for sth: *Have you paid her the rent yet?* ♦ *to pay a bill/fine* **3** [I,T] to be worth doing: *It would pay you to get professional advice before making a decision.* **4** [I,T] to make a profit: *It's hard to make farming pay.* **5** [I] pay (for sth) to suffer or be punished because of your beliefs or actions: *You'll pay for that remark!*
IDIOM charge/pay the earth ⇨ earth
pay attention (to sb/sth) to listen carefully to or to take notice of sb/sth
pay sb a compliment; pay a compliment to sb to say that you like sth about sb
pay your respects (to sb) (formal) to visit sb as a sign of respect: *Hundreds came to pay their last respects to her* (= went to her funeral).
pay tribute to sb/sth to say good things about sb/sth and show your respect for sb/sth



3 Complete the sentences with nouns from the mind map in exercise 2.

- 1 I always pay my telephone on time. It's usually about ten euros.
- 2 My boyfriend never pays me any Maybe he doesn't like me any more.
- 3 Laura, are you paying? Did you hear what the teacher just said?
- 4 I paid a lot of for this MP3 player, but it is not as good as my old one.
- 5 You can't park the car here. If you do, you'll have to pay a
- 6 I live in my own house, so I don't need to pay to anyone.

4 Match each verb in column A to two nouns in column B. Use a dictionary to help you.

A	B
give	time
spend	a film
watch	a present
	money
	advice
	TV

5 Work in pairs. Complete the questions with a collocation from exercise 4. Put the verbs into the correct tense. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What did you your best friend for his / her last birthday? Did he / she like it?
- 2 How much do you on new clothes every month?
- 3 Do you often in the evenings? What is your favourite programme?
- 4 When did you last go to the cinema? Which did you
- 5 How much do you doing your homework every week?
- 6 Who do you ask for help if you have a problem? What is the best someone has ever you?

6 Study the extract from a dictionary entry for *break*. Choose five nouns that collocate with *break* and write your own example sentences.

break ¹ /breɪk/ verb (pt broke /brəʊk/; pp broken /'brəʊkən/)
 ▶ **IN PIECES** **1** [I,T] to separate, or make sth separate, into two or more pieces: *She dropped the vase onto the floor and it broke.* ♦ *He broke his leg in a car accident.* ⇨ picture at chip
 ▶ **STOP WORKING** **2** [I,T] (used about a machine, etc.) to stop working; to stop a machine, etc. working: *The photocopier has broken.* ♦ *Be careful with my camera—I don't want you to break it.*
 ▶ **LAW/PROMISE** **3** [T] to do sth that is against the law, or against what has been agreed or promised: *to break the law/rules/speed limit* ♦ *Don't worry—I never break my promises.*
 ▶ **STOP** **4** [I,T] to stop doing sth for a short time: *Let's break for coffee now.* ♦ *We decided to break the journey and stop for lunch.*
 ▶ **END STH** **5** [T] to make sth end: *Once you start smoking it's very difficult to break the habit.* ♦ *Suddenly, the silence was broken by the sound of a bird singing.*

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.

■ appear ■ arrest ■ charge ■ commit ■ get ■ pay
■ punish ■ spend

The two boys responsible for the Colorado killings ¹ into trouble with the police the year before the incident. The police ² them after they stole some tools and other equipment from a parked van. They ³ the two boys with theft, so they had to ⁴ in court. The judge ⁵ them by sending them on a special programme for difficult young people. They didn't have to ⁶ a fine or ⁷ any time in prison. They ⁸ their terrible crime just a few months after they finished the programme.

Marks / 8

- 2 Add the correct negative prefix to adjectives 1–6. Then match them to the synonyms below.

■ damaged ■ messy ■ rude ■ uneducated ■ wrong

- 1 literate
2 moral
3 perfect
4 polite
5 tidy

Marks / 5

- 3 Complete the text with the negative form of the adjectives in brackets.

It's quite ¹ (usual) for students to use violence at my school, and I can only remember one day when I felt ² (safe). We were in our classroom getting quite impatient because the history teacher was late. Suddenly, an argument developed between two of the boys, Steven and Paul. It was completely ³ (rational) and it was ⁴ (possible) to stop them shouting. Steven was ⁵ (happy) because Paul was going out with his sister. He thought Paul was too ⁶ (mature) for her. Fortunately, the teacher arrived just as Steven was taking a knife out of his bag. He took Steven to the head teacher's office and then came back to speak to us. He told us that it was ⁷ (legal) to bring knives to school and that it was very ⁸ (responsible) of any student to do so. That day, we didn't have our history class and we never saw Steven again.

Marks / 8

Grammar

- 4 Complete the sentences with *will* or *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Matt and Ali are in the gym with the coach. They (play) basketball.
2 Tell me what's wrong. I promise I (not tell) anyone.
3 Grace is exhausted! She (not go out) tonight.
4 Wait, I (help) you to carry the shopping bags.
5 My exam is on Monday. I've decided that I (study) all weekend.
6 Our team isn't very good. I don't think we (win).

Marks / 6

- 5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the first conditional.

Students in the final year of school have to make some difficult decisions. If you ¹ (leave) school and get a job, you ² (have) your own money to spend. You ³ (not earn) anything for several years if you ⁴ (do) a university course. Then there's the question of where to study. You ⁵ (have) more opportunities if you ⁶ (study) in a different country. However, the course ⁷ (not cost) so much if you ⁸ (not go) abroad. The best thing is to talk to an expert who will help you to make the right decision.

Marks / 8

- 6 Complete the zero conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 It easier to study if you your own room. (be / have)
2 You anything if you your homework. (not learn / not do)
3 If you to very loud music, it your ears. (listen / damage)
4 You more if you regular breaks. (remember / take)
5 If you relaxed, you a lot of mistakes. (not feel / make)

Marks / 5

- 7 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 It's very likely that I'll go to university. (definitely)
2 Perhaps I'll become a volunteer. (might)
3 I'm sure that I won't leave home. (certainly)
4 I might get a summer job. (maybe)
5 It's possible that I'll move to another city. (probably)

Marks / 5

Total / 45

Cumulative review Units 1–6

Listening

1 **2.06** Listen to four speakers talking about exams in different countries. Match speakers 1–4 to sentences A–E. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- Speaker 1
- Speaker 2
- Speaker 3
- Speaker 4

- A** Exams in this country determine what a student can study at university.
- B** Exams in this country are so long that some students fall asleep before they finish.
- C** Exams in this country are so important that they affect everybody in the country.
- D** Exams in this country are not the only important thing for getting a university place.
- E** Exams in this country don't make up all of a student's final mark.

Speaking

2 Work in pairs. Look at photos A and B. Discuss the questions.

- Where are the people and what are they doing?
- How do you think the people are feeling?
- What are the advantages of doing this activity in each of these places?
- What are the disadvantages?
- Which place would you prefer and why?



Reading

3 Scan the review. Match pronouns 1–6 in the review to words a–h below. There are two words you do not need.

- a** the cows
- b** the game
- c** the viewers
- d** the lesson
- e** the programme
- f** the students
- g** the classroom
- h** the teacher

4 Read the review again. Choose the correct answers.

- 1** *The Unteachables* is
 - a a new TV programme.
 - b the writer's favourite TV programme.
 - c a TV programme about animals.
 - d a show about building schools.
- 2** The students in the programme
 - a wanted to learn about farming.
 - b won a competition.
 - c had problems at their old schools.
 - d enjoyed going to school.
- 3** At his first school, Philip Beadle's students
 - a learned to sing.
 - b studied many languages.
 - c bought his records.
 - d got very high marks.
- 4** According to the writer, Mr Beadle's teaching methods are
 - a very unusual.
 - b quite traditional.
 - c fairly normal.
 - d a bit boring.
- 5** In the first episode of the programme, the students
 - a didn't like the teacher.
 - b had fun.
 - c didn't learn anything.
 - d acted in a play.
- 6** According to the writer, the best thing about *The Unteachables* was
 - a the personality of the students.
 - b the methods used by the teacher.
 - c the change in the students' behaviour.
 - d the teacher's sense of humour.



An experiment in education

The best programme on TV last night was the first episode in a new series called *The Unteachables*. ¹It's a kind of reality show set on a farm. But this farm is not for animals, it's for children. The farm has been converted into a school for one class of difficult students. And it is the job of one man to try and teach these students something in the two weeks they are there.

The class is a group of sixteen boys and girls, aged thirteen and fourteen, who have all been expelled from schools at least once. Their previous teachers said that ²they were 'unteachable' and, judging by their behaviour on the programme last night, it isn't hard to see why. The teacher who has to deal with this class is forty-year-old Philip Beadle. Before working in education, Mr Beadle played in a rock band, but he gave up music eight years ago to become a teacher. At his first school, he helped his students to get the best English marks the school had ever seen. As a result, ³he was made Schoolteacher of the Year.

In the programme last night, we saw the students have their first lesson with Mr Beadle. He started by playing a game, where he and the students pointed at each other and said something bad about the other person. ⁴This might not sound very educational, but he had the attention of all the students the whole time. After that, Mr Beadle took his class outside for an English lesson. At their previous schools, most of these students refused to read in front of their classmates, so Mr Beadle took them to a field to read to some cows. Each student read an extract from a Shakespeare play to ⁵them, and the students seemed to enjoy ⁶it. In the next scene, Mr Beadle took them to another field to teach them basic punctuation. He did this through another game that involved jumping around and shouting, 'question mark!' and 'semi-colon!' Everyone seemed to enjoy this strange way of learning and by the end of the show the students were starting to accept their new teacher. Some of them even said he was 'all right'.

I really enjoyed *The Unteachables* because you could see the teacher was having a positive effect on the students. If, like me, you are fascinated by this experiment in education, you'll want to watch the next episode on Channel Four next Wednesday at 7.30 p.m. Personally, I can't wait!

Vocabulary

- 5 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

NO BALL GAMES HERE

Psychologists say that playing outside is extremely important for the ¹..... (DEVELOP) of a child. However, a report has shown that, ²..... (FORTUNATE), fewer children in the UK play in the streets today than ever before. The report says that at least half of the country's five to ten-year-olds never play outside. Children seem to have lost their ³..... (ENJOY) of playing. Fifty years ago, this situation was ⁴..... (THINK).

Both parents and children are responsible for these ⁵..... (SURPRISE) statistics. On the one hand, ⁶..... (FRIGHTEN) mums and dads believe that today's streets are ⁷..... (SAFE). This is because there are more cars on the roads and, in many places, crime has got worse. On the other hand, there are more activities to do inside these days, such as watching TV, playing with games consoles and using computers. Many children ⁸..... (HAPPY) stay at home doing these activities, instead of going outside to play. Experts say that parents should give them more ⁹..... (ENCOURAGE) to switch off their machines and go and call on a friend.

To help find a ¹⁰..... (SOLVE) to this problem, the government has decided to make the first Wednesday in August a national day of play. 'Playday' is part of a campaign to highlight the importance of play in children's lives. It is also a celebration of their right to play outside.

Writing

- 6 Think of a person who taught you an important lesson. Write a letter to a magazine with a description of the person. Include this information:

- who the person is and how you know them
- what the person is like
- what you learned from them and how they taught you
- why the person is special to you

7

Progress?

Reading and vocabulary Big and small

1 SPEAKING Look at the photos and the chart. Then answer the questions.

- How many people do you think live on our planet? Is this number getting bigger or smaller?
- Choose a foreign country that you have visited or read about. How is it different from your country? Are there any similarities? Think about:
 - the buildings ■ the language ■ the food
 - the music ■ the clothes ■ the people

2 Read the blog post and complete the missing information in the chart.

3 Read the blog post again and answer the questions.

- How long would it take to say 'hello' to all people on the planet?
- Why did the population start growing quickly after 8,000 BC?
- In what ways is the planet getting smaller, according to the writer?
- How many languages does the writer speak?
- Why are languages disappearing around the world?
- Does the writer prefer to live in a world with no cultural differences?

4 SPEAKING What problems will there be in the future if the population continues to grow? Is it a good thing or a bad thing if languages disappear? Why?

V Statistics

5 Study the highlighted verbs in the blog post. Read the text below and replace the words in italics with the correct form of the verbs.

Population experts ¹*separate* the countries of the world into two groups: those where the population is getting bigger and those where it is getting smaller. Most countries are in the first group. The population has ²*become a bigger number* fastest in Africa and parts of Asia. In Uganda, for example, the population has ³*grown* four times in the last fifty years. In Myanmar, there were 25 million people in 1967, but now there are 50 million: the population has ⁴*become twice as big*.

Japan and several countries in Eastern Europe are in the second group. The population of Ukraine ⁵*became a smaller number* from 52 million in 1990 to 46 million in 2012. Experts have ⁶*used maths to find an answer* that, in Europe as a whole, the number of births per woman ⁷*became twice as small* from about 2.8 in 1950 to 1.4 in 2005. The future is uncertain, but people ⁸*guess* that Europe, now home to 11% of the world's population, will be home to only 7% or 8% in 2050.

GOING GLOBAL

World population growth	
Year	Number
8,000 BC million
1805 AD billion
1927	two billion
1987 billion
1999	six billion
2011 billion
2100 billion



The world's population reached five billion on the day I was born. That was in Indonesia back in 1987, and my parents were amazed that there were so many people on the planet. However, since then the population has continued to **increase**. In October 2011, the seven billionth baby was born, and experts **estimate** that there will be ten billion of us before the end of this century.

A number as big as seven billion is hard to imagine. If you said 'hello' to a different person every second, it would take you 222 years to greet everyone on the planet. If seven billion people made a human chain with their hands, the chain would go to the moon and back nine times.

The growth of our human population is extraordinary. For more than two million years, humans lived with no permanent home, finding plants to eat and hunting animals for meat. Then, just 10,000 years

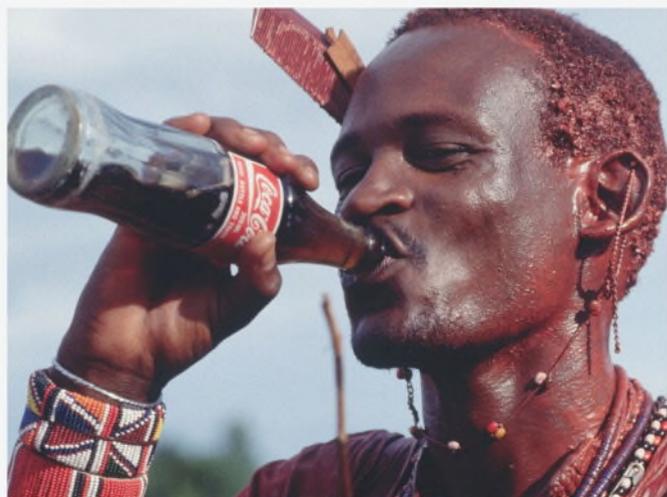


Vocabulary: statistics; nouns with two meanings; business; language
Grammar: *must, mustn't, have to, don't have to*; second conditional;
I wish ...

Speaking: discussing social issues; organizing an event for an international festival; talking about rules; asking for and giving advice
Writing: a formal email

ago, we invented agriculture. At that time, there were only about five million humans, but this figure quickly **doubled**. The population reached a billion in 1805, and since then it has **multiplied** seven times. One expert has **calculated** that about 6% of all the humans that have ever lived are alive right now.

The human population has never been bigger, but in some ways the planet seems to be getting smaller. In the past, travellers from Europe to Indonesia spent months at sea. Now you just have to sit on a plane for a few hours. When you arrived in another country a hundred years ago, you saw unfamiliar styles of clothing and architecture and discovered a completely different culture. In many places today, clothing and new buildings are very similar, and people enjoy the same sports, music, films and TV shows. We also buy the same products – Apple phones, McDonald's burgers, Coca-Cola, Colgate toothpaste – from huge, global companies. In our different continents, we are starting to live the same lives.



Even the languages that we use are becoming more global. There are around seven thousand languages in use today, but the number is **decreasing** fast. I grew up in a small village where everyone spoke Baras, one of Indonesia's 719 different languages. Today, like most of the younger people from my village, I live in the capital, Jakarta, and speak Indonesian there. The only regular Baras speakers at present are the older people who have stayed in the country. The same thing is happening around the world. Experts think that the number of different languages will **halve** to just 3,500 by the end of this century.

Where will it stop? Will there be a time in the future when Earth's billions all speak just one language, and there are no cultural differences to **divide** us? Perhaps the planet would be more peaceful if this happened, but I must admit that the idea is quite depressing. I prefer to think that, as our population grows, we can celebrate not the similarity but the fascinating diversity of the human race.

V insight Nouns with two meanings

6 Many English words have more than one meaning. Find words 1–8 in the blog post. Then choose the correct meaning for each word as it is used in the blog.

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| 1 end | a final part |
| | b purpose |
| 2 second | a each of the sixty parts of a minute |
| | b between first and third |
| 3 figure | a the shape of the human body |
| | b a number |
| 4 way | a path or route |
| | b method |
| 5 present | a gift |
| | b now |
| 6 country | a nation |
| | b land that is outside towns and cities |
| 7 time | a period |
| | b how often we do something |
| 8 race | a competition |
| | b group of people |

7 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in exercise 6. Then write a or b in the brackets to show the correct meaning.

India is a large ¹..... (.....) in South Asia. The people there are from different ²..... (.....) and speak 415 different languages. India has the ³..... (.....) biggest population in the world, after China. At ⁴..... (.....) there are 1.3 billion people in China and 1.2 billion in India, but India's population is increasing faster than China's. By the ⁵..... (.....) of the twenty-first century, there will probably be more people in India. Experts estimate there are also 25 million Indians who live in other parts of the world, but this ⁶..... (.....) might be wrong. Many Indians left at the ⁷..... (.....) when Britain controlled India, in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. They travelled all the ⁸..... (.....) to South America, East Africa and the Caribbean and started new lives there.

8 SPEAKING Work in groups. Imagine the mayor of your town or city has asked your school to organize an event for an international festival next month. Follow the instructions.

- 1 Talk about the things that you like: sports, games, music, films, TV shows, technology, food, etc. Do people like them all over the world or are they specific to your culture?
- 2 Choose the best things about global culture or your country's culture, and plan, in detail, a weekend in your town or city that celebrates these things. For example, include a sports event, a fashion show, a food festival, a music concert, etc.
- 3 Tell the class about your plans.

7B ■ Grammar and listening Be an entrepreneur

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who are / were these entrepreneurs? Can you match them to the type of business that they started?
- Entrepreneurs ■ Steve Jobs ■ Rupert Murdoch ■ Mark Zuckerberg ■ James Cameron
 ■ Donna Karan ■ Bill Gates
- Business ■ films ■ computer software ■ TV and newspapers ■ computers, MP3 players and smartphones ■ fashion and cosmetics ■ social networking
- 2 What types of business can teenagers start?

2 Read the article. Does it mention any of the business types that you thought of in exercise 1?

HOW TO MAKE MONEY:

THE YOUNG ENTREPRENEUR'S GUIDE

Lots of people dream of having their own business, but what do you have to do to become an entrepreneur?

Have a cool business idea

You'll enjoy your business more if it does something that really interests you, so use your hobbies for ideas. Sixteen-year-old Michelle Coakley from Ireland loved jewellery and her friend Jade Kearney was interested in environmental issues. Together they designed and sold eco-friendly jewellery, and have won an entrepreneur award for their efforts.

Work, work, work

You have to work hard to build a business, but you mustn't forget your schoolwork either. Even if your business is successful, you'll probably need good qualifications in the future. And don't go as far as US teenager Anton Schneider, who is so busy with his lawnmowing company that he sleeps for only four hours a night. 'I must get more sleep,' he says, 'but there just aren't enough hours in the day!'

Ask for help

You don't have to do all the work yourself. Family members are often happy to help, and school friends, too, if you pay them. And you don't have to limit yourself to people in your town. Thirteen-year-old Monik Pamecha runs a technology website in India with twenty-six writers from all around the world.

Spread the word

If you want people to use your business, you have to tell them about it. Social networking sites are great for this, but remember: you mustn't meet new contacts in person on your own. Some people on the internet are dangerous.



must, mustn't, have to, don't have to

3 Find and complete the sentences from the article. Then match them to meanings a–c below. There are two sentences for one of the meanings.

- 1 You work hard.
 - 2 You forget your schoolwork.
 - 3 I get more sleep.
 - 4 You do all the work yourself.
- a It's very important that you do this.
 b It isn't necessary for you to do this.
 c It's very important that you don't do this.

We usually use *must* when the speaker has decided that something is important, and *have to* when someone else has decided this. However, in many situations, we can use *have to* and *must* in the same way.

Reference and practice 7.1 Workbook page 116

- 4 Read the rules. Which entrepreneur from exercise 2 might have written them? Choose the correct words.

- 1 You **must** / **mustn't** arrive late.
- 2 You **have to** / **mustn't** be polite.
- 3 You **must** / **don't have to** bring your own lawnmower. You can use the customer's lawnmower.
- 4 You **mustn't** / **don't have to** leave the lawnmower on when you are not using it. This is dangerous and wastes petrol, too.
- 5 You **have to** / **mustn't** leave the garden tidy at the end of the job.
- 6 When you have finished, the customer **has to** / **doesn't have to** sign in your book, so we can pay you for the job.
- 7 You **mustn't** / **don't have to** collect money after every job. Some people prefer to pay the money into our bank account instead.

- 5 Read the text and complete it with *have to*, *don't have to*, *must* or *mustn't*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Writing a blog is fun and easy, and it can make you money, too. You ¹..... try it! Here's how:

- First, decide what you want to write about. It can be anything – technology, fashion, orang-utans. But if you want to make money, you ²..... write about something that interests lots of other people.
- Next, you ³..... choose a name for your website. You ⁴..... use a name that already exists, of course.
- Then, you ⁵..... set up your blog. This is quick and easy, and you ⁶..... pay – there are lots of free blog sites.
- Now start writing. You ⁷..... write something every day, but try to write at least two blog entries a week.
- When you have some interesting content on your blog, you ⁸..... go on social networking sites and tell everyone to come and visit. You can also write articles for other people's blogs. However, you ⁹..... publish the same article on your own blog – that's not allowed. And remember: you ¹⁰..... put the details of your own blog at the end, so readers know where to find you.
- Now lots of people are reading your blog, so it's time to include some adverts. People ¹¹..... read them, but if they choose to click on an advert, you will make some money. I ¹²..... say, this won't make you rich quickly, but if your blog is good enough, the money will come in the end. Good luck!

- 6  2.07 Listen to an interview with two Native American teenagers talking about their business, *Catch a dream*. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 If you have a dreamcatcher above your bed, you don't have to worry about nightmares.
- 2 A dreamcatcher catches only the bad dreams.
- 3 You don't have to use wood to make a dreamcatcher.
- 4 Maka and Zebi have to make their dreamcatchers between 6 p.m. and 8 p.m.
- 5 They mustn't leave the kitchen messy after they have used it.
- 6 If they want to sell dreamcatchers at the market, they have to get up early.
- 7 They rarely sell dreamcatchers to tourists.
- 8 They mustn't sell their dreamcatchers on the internet.

- 7 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations A–E below and decide on six rules: two things that the person has to do in the situation, two things that they mustn't do and two things that they don't have to do.

- A Your friend has decided to start a cake-making business.
- B Your brother's or sister's friends are going to stay in your house while you are away from home.
- C You are organizing a competition in your favourite sport or free-time activity.
- D Your brother or sister wants to borrow your camera.
- E You are going on a school trip to a foreign country.

7C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary Silicon Valley



1 **2.08 SPEAKING** Look at the map. Which country is Silicon Valley in? What type of business do you think it is famous for? Listen to a radio programme and check your answers.

STRATEGY

Listening for statistics

Numbers can be difficult to understand when you hear them quickly. Use these questions to help you.

- What type of number is it: e.g. a quantity, an amount of money, a distance, a length of time, a percentage or a year? Listen for key words like *dollars, kilometres, months, per cent*.
- Is it a big number or a small number? Remember that the first part of a big number is the most important (e.g. in 7,620 the most important part of the number is *seven thousand*).

2 **2.08** Read the strategy. Then read sentences 1–8 and decide what type of numbers are missing. Listen to the radio programme again and complete the sentences.

- 1 People first called the Santa Clara Valley ‘Silicon Valley’ in the
- 2 The first radio station in the USA began in
- 3 The first Apple computers appeared in
- 4 In 1980, the value of Apple was
- 5 Arun’s old home in India is about from his home today.
- 6 of Stanford’s students are from foreign countries.
- 7 People invented new things in Silicon Valley last year.
- 8 At least of these new inventions were eco-friendly.

V Business

3 Match nouns 1–9 to definitions a–i. Then work in pairs and think of an example for each word 1–9.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1 company | a something new that someone has created for the first time |
| 2 advert | b the study of something to discover new information |
| 3 product | c someone who owns a business with other people |
| 4 founder | d something that a business sells |
| 5 research | e the main office of an organization |
| 6 partner | f a text or picture that tells people to buy something |
| 7 invention | g someone who starts something, e.g. a business or school |
| 8 headquarters | h someone who buys things from a shop or uses a service |
| 9 customer | i an organization that sells something to make money |

4 Complete the text about Apple with the correct form of the nouns in exercise 3.

When Steve Jobs and his friend Steve Wozniak started a ¹..... in Silicon Valley in 1976, they called it Apple. At first, they used the Jobs’ family’s garage as their ²..... Steve Wozniak was a fantastic engineer, and one of his ³..... was the world’s first computer with a colour screen. The company needed money to produce this computer, but the banks didn’t want to lend to the two ⁴..... because they were very young and wore dirty clothes. Luckily, they soon found a third ⁵..... for the business. His name was Mike Markkula and he

put \$250,000 into the company. This was enough money to make the new computer, the Apple II, and pay for some ⁶..... to tell people about it. More than five million ⁷..... bought the computer, and Apple became a huge success. It never did much ⁸..... to find out what people wanted. Steve Jobs said, ‘People don’t know what they want until you show it to them.’ It seems that he was right. Successful ⁹..... like the iPod, iPhone and iPad have made Apple one of the most popular companies in the world.



5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 What inventions have made the biggest difference to your life?
- 2 Which big companies have their headquarters in your country? What products do they sell?
- 3 Name some famous businesspeople in your country. Are they the founders of their companies?

Asking for and giving advice**6 SPEAKING** Look at the photo and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the girl doing? How does she feel? Why?
- 2 Do you ever miss your friends or family? In what situations?

7  **2.09** Listen to the dialogue and compare your ideas in exercise 6. What advice does the girl's friend give her?**8**  **2.09** Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.**Asking for advice**

What do you ¹..... I should do?
 What's ²..... advice?
 Should I ... ?

Giving advice

You ³..... to ...
 Maybe it's a good ⁴..... to ...
 If I were ⁵....., I'd ...
 I think you ⁶.....

Responding to advice

I ⁷....., because ...
 That's not a ⁸..... idea.
⁹..... a good idea.

9  **2.10** Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- **Hugo** You ought to go to the mountains near Lake Tahoe for that, but I don't think you should go at this time of year. The snow will be better in January. I know! Why don't you join a surfing club and spend some time at the beach?
- **James** I don't know about that. I've never been very good at team sports. What else would you advise?
- **Hugo** Hi, James. Are you enjoying Silicon Valley?
- **James** I love snowboarding.
- **Hugo** Are there any other sports that you like?
- **James** That's a great idea. Thanks for the advice.
- **Hugo** If I were you, I'd join a local sports team. That's a great way to make new friends.
- **James** Well, my job is great, but I sometimes feel a bit lonely. I haven't made many friends here yet.

10 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of asking for, giving and responding to advice.**11 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations A–E below or use your own ideas. Take turns to ask your partner for advice. Use the dialogue in exercise 9 to help you.

A You are always very tired, but you find it difficult to fall asleep at night.

B Your computer at home is broken. You have to do some internet research for homework.

C You are often bored at the weekend. You want to have a more exciting life.

D You don't understand the science that you have studied in class, and there is going to be an important test soon.

E You would like to make some new friends, but you are very shy.

Vocabulary bank Electronic devices: compound nouns page 140



- 1 SPEAKING** English has taken words from lots of other languages. In pairs, discuss the meaning of words 1–6 and try to match them to their original languages a–f.
- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 banana, OK, jazz | a Caribbean languages |
| 2 sofa, yoghurt | b Hindi |
| 3 hurricane, potato | c Spanish |
| 4 cookie, cruise, snack | d West African languages |
| 5 jungle, pyjamas | e Dutch |
| 6 guitar, tornado | f Turkish |
- 2** Read the article. What other languages have English words come from?
- 3** Read the article again. Are the sentences true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)? Correct the false ones.
- More people speak Chinese as their first language than English.
 - There are 1.8 billion people who speak English as their first language.
 - English is an official language in Nigeria.
 - The Normans often spoke in Latin.
 - British people went to live in South Africa in the sixteenth century.
 - New technology will soon mean that people don't have to learn foreign languages.
- 4 SPEAKING** What's the story of your language? Which people spoke it first? Where do people speak it now? What other languages has it taken words from?

V Language

- 5** Study the highlighted words in the article. Then complete the text about Singapore with the words below.
- dialects ■ official ■ foreign ■ fluent ■ native
■ translations ■ accent ■ slang

Singapore has four ¹..... languages: English, Mandarin Chinese, Tamil and Malay. If you visited the country, you would see street signs with ²..... in all four languages. About 32% of Singaporeans speak English at home with their families. As well as these ³..... English speakers, there are a lot of other ⁴..... English speakers, because most lessons at school are in English.

There are two different English ⁵..... in Singapore. One is close to British English, but with a different ⁶..... for certain sounds. The other, Singlish, is a mix of English and other Singaporean languages, and uses a lot of American ⁷..... that people have learned from TV shows. It has its own grammar rules. For visitors to Singapore from the UK and the USA, Singlish can sometimes sound like a ⁸..... language.

Singapore

All you need to know about ENGLISH

If you were an alien and had time to learn only one language before your visit to Earth, which language would you choose? English, of course!

- 5 Why not Chinese?**
- If you were only interested in talking to **native speakers**, Chinese would definitely be a better choice. About 1.2 billion people speak Chinese as their first language, compared with only 400 million who speak English.
- 10 However, Chinese wouldn't help you very much if you weren't in China, while you can usually find an English **translation** at major tourist sites and airports all around the world. If you needed information from the internet, English would be useful, too. About 56%
- 15 of all webpages are in English. What's more, English is an **official language** in fifty-four different countries, which together cover more than 28% of all the land on our planet.



- 20 So how many English speakers are there altogether?**
- About 1.8 billion, about a quarter of the world's population. That includes native speakers, people who are **fluent speakers** in countries where English is an official language, like India, Nigeria and
- 25 Singapore, and all the people who have learned it as a **foreign language** at school.

- What is English, anyway?**
- Several groups of people invaded England in the fifth century AD, from Germany and Denmark. We now
- 30 call them the Anglo-Saxons. English developed from the different Germanic **dialects** that they spoke. Later, in the eleventh century, the Normans from northern France took control of England, and about 10,000 French words became part of the English language.
- 35 English also took lots of words from Latin, and some words from ancient Greek and other languages.





How did it become such an important world language?

It started to spread around the world when British colonists went to live in North America in the seventeenth century, and later in Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The British also took control of parts of Asia, the Caribbean and Africa, and people there had to learn English. In the twentieth century, the spread of English continued because people wanted to do business with the USA. This was easier for people who spoke this country's language: English.

Is English exactly the same around the world?

Not quite. American English has a few different spellings from British English, and a few small differences in grammar. People around the world speak with many different accents, and slang words are often different in different countries.

What's next for English?

If an alien were clever enough to reach Earth, it would probably have amazing translation technology, too, and wouldn't have to learn any of our languages. However, it will be a long time before our own technology can replace the need for language learning. English is becoming the main language for lessons in more and more schools and universities around the world, because people think that fluent English will be very important for young people when they look for jobs. In this century, at least, English as a global language is here to stay.



Second conditional

6 Study the sentences. Then complete the rules.

If I were an alien, I would travel through space.

If an alien visited Singapore, it would see street signs in Mandarin Chinese.

- a We use the second conditional to talk about an imaginary situation in the present or an unlikely situation in the future, and its result.
condition: *if* + simple
result: + infinitive without *to*
- b In the condition clause, we sometimes use instead of *was* after *I, he, she* and *it*.

Reference and practice 7.2 Workbook page 117

7 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the second conditional.

I'm from Wales. If you ¹..... (visit) my country, everyone ²..... (speak) to you in English, but about 12% of us also speak fluent Welsh. If you ³..... (go) to school in Wales, you ⁴..... (have) Welsh lessons, and at some schools you would have all your lessons in Welsh. If we ⁵..... (not learn) Welsh, we ⁶..... (spend) more time learning foreign languages like French and Spanish. However, I think it ⁷..... (be) very sad if we ⁸..... (stop) speaking Welsh, because it is an important part of our culture. English is a useful global language, but the world ⁹..... (not be) very interesting if everyone ¹⁰..... (share) the same native language.



8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. What would you do if ... ?

- you had to learn a new language in a month
- you met an alien
- you were fluent in English
- you didn't have to go to school
- there were no dictionaries

I wish ...

9 2.11 Listen to the dialogue and complete sentences A–C. Then answer questions 1–3.

- A I wish I good at French.
 B I wish I a grandmother in Paris!
 C I wish she there.

- 1 Which tense do we use after *I wish ...* ?
- 2 Is the situation in the present or in the past?
- 3 Does the speaker want the situation to change?

Reference and practice 7.3 Workbook page 117

10 SPEAKING Write down six things that you wish. Use the verbs below. In pairs, talk about your wishes. Use the second conditional to explain your reasons.

- be ■ go ■ have ■ know ■ live ■ play ■ speak

- A I wish I had a pet spider.
 B Why?
 A If I had a spider in my bedroom, ...

DVD extra World English

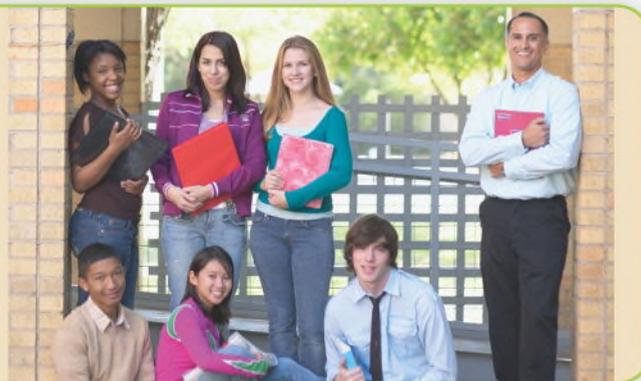
7E ■ Writing A formal email

Come and study English this summer in the lovely seaside town of Morsham.

Four-week courses start on 14 July and 10 August.

Cost: £900 including accommodation, delicious food at our café, and fun evening and weekend activities.

Contact info@MorshamCollege.co.uk for more details.



1 SPEAKING Study the advert. Would you like to go on a course like this? Why / why not?

STRATEGY

Using the correct register

Before you start writing, think about the register: is it formal or informal?

- Some words and phrases are formal. Use these for formal pieces of writing, e.g. job applications, emails and letters to people that you do not know.
- Other words and phrases are informal. Use these for informal pieces of writing, e.g. blogs, diaries, emails and letters to people that you know.

formal	informal
formal letter openers and closers, e.g. <i>Dear Mr Tanner, Yours sincerely / faithfully</i>	informal letter openers and closers, e.g. <i>Dear Charlie, Love from</i>
longer phrases and polite requests, e.g. <i>Please could you send me a brochure?</i>	imperatives, e.g. <i>Send me a brochure.</i>
full forms, e.g. <i>I am, there is</i>	contractions, e.g. <i>I'm, there's</i>
neutral or formal words, e.g. <i>children, wonderful</i>	informal or slang words, e.g. <i>kids, cool</i>
full words, e.g. <i>television, examination, advertisement</i>	abbreviated words, e.g. <i>TV, exam, advert</i>
longer linking words, e.g. <i>however, on the one / other hand, in addition</i>	shorter linking words, e.g. <i>but, and</i> (NB We can use these in formal writing, too.)

2 Read the strategy. Then read emails A and B on page 91 and answer the questions.

- Which writer uses a formal register?
- Which writer uses an informal register?
- Which register is more suitable for the content of the emails? Why?

3 Underline all the informal words and phrases in the informal email. Then match six of them to these more formal alternatives.

- Dear Sir or Madam,
- I am very interested in doing one of your courses.
- Please could you give me some more information about ... ?
- I would be very grateful for your help.
- I look forward to hearing from you.
- Yours faithfully,

4 Leonie and Jorge wrote notes for their emails. Match notes 1–6 to the writers. Write L or J.

- do three weeks for less money?
- see the sights?
- writing skills?
- what type of accommodation?
- cost without accommodation?
- no milk

A

From: Leonie Adler
Date: 21 May
To: info@MorshamCollege.co.uk
Subject: English course this summer

Hi there,

I saw your advert in *English Now*. Your courses sound cool. Please tell me more about the accommodation and the food.

The advert says that you'll find me somewhere to stay. Will this be with an English family, or with other international students? It would be cool to stay with an English family **because** I could practise my English with them.

What's the food like? I'm allergic to milk, **so** I mustn't eat things like cheese and ice cream. Do you have other things I can eat at the café?

As I'm on holiday from 20 July to 3 September and I mustn't miss any days of school, I can't do either of your four-week courses. If I did the 10 August course for just three weeks, would it be cheaper?

Thanks a lot for your help. Write soon!

Love,
Leonie Adler

B

From: Jorge Sanchez
Date: 19 October
To: info@MorshamCollege.co.uk
Subject: English course

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to find out more about the English language courses advertised in *English Now*.

Since my cousins live in Morsham, I have the choice of staying at their house. If I did not use college accommodation, would the course cost less? How much would I have to pay for four weeks?

My school examinations have a lot of writing tasks. **Therefore** I would like to work on my writing skills. Will your course give much help with writing?

The advertisement mentions fun evening and weekend activities. Please could you give me some information about these, including any sightseeing trips that you organize?

I have to book my flight to England by the end of this month. **As a result**, I would be very grateful if you could reply as soon as possible.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,
Jorge Sanchez

Expressing reason and result

5 Study the highlighted words and phrases in emails A and B. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Which words and phrases express a reason?
- 2 Which ones express a result?

6 Choose the correct words or phrases.

- 1 I don't want to go to Britain **because** / **so** it often rains there.
- 2 My mother is Canadian. **As a result**, / **Because** I am fluent in English and French.
- 3 **Therefore** / **As** the course is in England, you will learn a lot of English outside the classroom.
- 4 The course starts at 9 a.m. **Therefore** / **Since** we suggest that you arrive in Morsham the night before.
- 5 **Since** / **As a result**, your English is better than your sister's, you will be in a higher group.
- 6 It's a sunny day, **so** / **as** we'll have our lessons on the beach.

WRITING GUIDE

- **Task** Imagine you want to do an English course in the UK. Write a formal email to Morsham College.
- **Ideas** You have made a note of some queries for the college. Add three more queries. Then, for each query, note down some background that explains your reason for asking.

- friend lives in Brighton - how far? weekend visit?
- never do sport - other evening activities?
- don't want to share a bedroom - cost more?

- **Plan** Choose three queries to ask the college and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Say why you are writing.

Paragraphs 2, 3 and 4: Ask your queries. Each query should have some background, so the reader understands why you are asking.

Paragraph 5: Thank the reader for their help.

- **Write** Write your email. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

- **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Have you used expressions of reason and result correctly?
- Have you used formal language?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 7 Using a dictionary: words with more than one meaning

1 Work in pairs. Study the dictionary entries for *play*. Then answer the questions.

- How many different parts of speech are there for *play*? What are they?
- How many different meanings does *play*¹ have? Are any of them similar to the meanings of *play*²?

play¹ /pleɪ/ verb

>HAVE FUN 1 [I] **play (with sb/sth)** to do sth to enjoy yourself; to have fun: *The children have been playing on the beach all day.* ♦ *Emma's found a new friend to play with.*

>GAMES/SPORTS 2 [I,T] to take part in a game or sport: *to play football/tennis/hockey* ♦ *I usually play against Bill.* ♦ *She played him at table tennis and won.* ♦ *Do you know how to play chess?* ♦ *Who's Brazil playing next in the World Cup?*

>MUSICAL INSTRUMENT 3 [I,T] **play (sth) (on sth)** to make music with a musical instrument: *to play the piano/guitar/trumpet* ♦ *My son's learning the piano.* *He plays very well.* ♦ *She played a few notes on the violin.* ↻ note at music

>CDS, DVDS, ETC. 4 [I,T] to make a CD, DVD, etc. produce sound: *My favourite song was playing on the radio.* ♦ *Shall I play the DVD for you again?*

>ACT/PERFORM 5 [I,T] to act in a play, film, TV programme, etc.; to act the role of sb: *Richard is going to play Romeo.*

play² /pleɪ/ noun

1 [U] activity done for enjoyment only, especially by children: *Young children learn through play.* ♦ *the happy sound of children at play*

2 [C] a piece of writing performed by actors in the theatre, or on TV or radio: *Would you like to see a play while you're in London?* ♦ *a radio/TV play* ↻ note at theatre

3 [U] the playing of a game or sport: *Bad weather stopped play yesterday.*

HELP We play tennis, football, etc. but we **CAN-NOT** say a play of tennis. We have a game of tennis.

4 [U] a control on a CD or DVD player, etc. that you press to start the tape, etc. running: *Put the DVD into the machine then press play.*

IDM fair play ↻ fair¹

2 Read the strategy. Then look at the dictionary entries again. Write the part of speech and the meaning number of the underlined words below.

- The actor who played the detective was brilliant.
verb, meaning 5 (act / perform)
- I play basketball for the school team.
.....
- I'm learning to play the guitar.
.....
- It's important to balance work and play.
.....
- What CD do you want me to play now?
.....
- Romeo and Juliet* is a famous play by Shakespeare.
.....
- The DVD won't start unless you press play.
.....

STRATEGY

Learning words with more than one meaning

Many English words can be more than one part of speech and often have more than one meaning. Compare:

Did you sign the letter? (verb = to write your name on a document)

In Singapore, there are road signs in several languages: English, Mandarin Chinese, Tamil and Malay. (noun = a notice that gives directions or a warning)

Each part of speech of a word has a separate entry in the dictionary. The different meanings within the entry are usually numbered.

Knowing the part of speech will help you to find the correct entry and definition when you look up the word in a dictionary.

3 Read the sentences. Write the part of speech of the underlined words.

- Did they give you a birthday present?
- The head teacher will present the guest to the staff and students this afternoon.
- Some parts of Australia are very flat and dry. There aren't any mountains or hills.
- I live in a flat in the city centre.
- I'm fine, thanks. How are you?
- My dad had to pay a fine for speeding.
- We need to hurry if we want to catch the last train.
- I'm going to train hard all winter so I can run in the National Championship.

4 Match the underlined words in exercise 3 to meanings a–h below. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- healthy and happy
- low, no part higher than any other
- something you give to someone
- a type of public transport that runs on rails
- a home, usually part of a large building
- introduce
- to prepare for a sporting event by practising
- money you pay if you break the law

5 Find the words below in a dictionary. Choose two meanings for each word and write example sentences.

- hard ■ pay ■ right ■ plant ■ native ■ show

Vocabulary

- 1 Replace the words in italics with the correct form of the verbs below.

■ decrease ■ divide ■ double ■ estimate ■ halve ■ increase

- The population of the USA *will be twice as big* by 2075.
- The size of the polar ice caps *is getting smaller* each year.
- They *guess* that the building will cost about €3 million.
- The price of petrol *has gone up* again.
- The number of visitors *has gone down by 50%* this year.
- They *separated* the people into three groups.

Marks / 6

- 2 Complete each pair of sentences A and B with the same word.

- A Schumacher won, Alonso was and Lewis Hamilton was third.
B Messi scored in the last of the match.
- A Russia is the largest in the world.
B Many people moved from the to the city.
- A My friends bought me a birthday
B Forget the past and live in the
- A Eight athletes ran in the men's 100-metre
B Martin Luther King fought against discrimination in the USA in the 1960s.
- A It took me a long to make dinner.
B This is the first I've been to London.

Marks / 5

- 3 Complete the sentences with the words below.

■ advert ■ research ■ invention ■ company ■ founder

- Nokia is a Finnish
- The of Microsoft is Bill Gates.
- Have you seen the on TV for the new Sony laptop?
- The world changed after the of the computer.
- Companies do a lot of before they create a new product.

Marks / 5

- 4 Complete the text with the words below.

■ accent ■ dialects ■ foreign ■ official ■ native ■ slang

English is the ¹..... language of the UK and around 95% of the population are ²..... speakers. However, not everyone speaks the same version of English because there are many different ³..... The pronunciation of the language also varies from place to place and you can tell where a person is from because of their ⁴..... The main ⁵..... languages taught in schools are French, Spanish and German. Young people often use ⁶.....

Marks / 6

Grammar

- 5 Complete the sentences with *must*, *mustn't*, *have to* or *don't have to* and the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- We (speak) English in our English class. It's one of the rules.
- I (get up) early tomorrow. It's Saturday.
- You (make) phone calls on a plane. It isn't allowed.
- You (wear) a seat belt in a car. It's the law.
- You (learn) all the words in the English language. You can always use a dictionary.
- I (go) to bed. I'm very tired.
- He (study) tonight. He's got an exam tomorrow.
- You (ride) a bike without a helmet. It's very dangerous.
- They (wear) a uniform to school. They can wear jeans.

Marks / 9

- 6 Write second conditional sentences.

Example: I don't live in England. I don't speak fluent English.

If I lived in England, I'd speak fluent English.

- I'm not on holiday. I have to go to school today.
- Tom has a lot of homework. He doesn't go out.
- Anne makes the dinner. She likes cooking.
- You don't study. You don't pass your exams.
- I have my own money. I work on Saturdays.
- I'm not eighteen. I don't have a car.
- Jack doesn't play basketball. He isn't tall enough.

Marks / 7

- 7 Write sentences with *I wish*.

Example: I speak English badly.

I wish I didn't speak English badly.

- I'm not rich.
- I live in a small town.
- I haven't got a smartphone.
- I don't know a lot about computers.
- I fail most of my exams.
- I can't afford a tablet computer.
- I don't know what to do in the future.

Marks / 7

Total / 45

8

Achieve

Reading and vocabulary Against all odds

1 **SPEAKING** Read the quotes about success. Which quote do you like most? Why? Give examples from your own life to explain your choices.

‘Success is falling nine times, and getting up ten.’

‘Success is being able to live your life in your own way.’

‘Luck is the best way to explain the success of people that you don’t like.’

‘A successful person is someone who can build something with the bricks that others have thrown at him.’

‘No pain, no gain.’

2 Read the magazine article about three successful people. Then answer the questions.

Which person ... ?

- 1 never knew their mother and father
- 2 was part of a movement to make one part of their country separate from the rest of the country
- 3 is going to represent their country in a competition
- 4 wasn't a successful student as a child
- 5 has raised money to improve people's lives
- 6 had to change their ambition because of an injury
- 7 has had problems because of the beliefs of other people in their country
- 8 has written songs

3 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 What does Emmanuel think is his greatest success? What does Paul think? Do you agree with them? Why / why not?
- 2 Which of the three people has had the hardest challenge? Whose story is the most inspirational?

V insight Verbs + prepositions: success

4 Complete the sentences with *on*, *of*, *in* or *for*. Some prepositions can be used more than once. Then find the verbs in the article and check your answers.

- 1 I've always dreamed being a breakdancing champion.
- 2 There had never been a breakdancing championship in Wales, so I campaigned one. I wrote letters to dancers and dance judges, and finally everyone agreed to organize one.
- 3 I did lots of training to prepare the championship.
- 4 I competed the championship last weekend.

SUCCESS

What is success? For many people, it means being rich. For some high achievers, however, there are much more important things than money.

Emmanuel Jal

Emmanuel left his home in Sudan at the age of eight. There was a civil war and his village had become too dangerous. His only choice was to join the army that was fighting for the independence of South Sudan. The life of a child soldier was extremely violent and when he was eleven, he ran away.



He walked a distance of more than 1,500 km and managed to reach Kenya. There, for the first time, he was able to go to school.

As a teenager, he expressed the pain of his childhood memories by writing and performing rap music. Now he uses his songs to campaign for world peace, and has performed them at huge concerts in London. However, he believes that his greatest success is not his music, but his charity Gua Africa, which has helped lots of intelligent young Africans to get a good education.

Paul Connolly

Paul grew up in a British care home because his parents had abandoned him as a baby. The conditions at the home were terrible.

Paul was brilliant at sport and dreamed of becoming a professional



STORIES

sportsman, but an injury in his early twenties destroyed that dream. As a child, he had been too unhappy to learn anything in class, but he knew that without an education he couldn't succeed in a career. At the age of twenty-five, he went back to school.

With **patience** and hard work, he learned to read and write. This gave him more **confidence** and soon he was a successful fitness trainer with lots of famous clients. Later, he wrote an autobiography. People praised it for its honest account of life in a care home and it became a bestseller – not bad for a writer who had been illiterate in his twenties! Paul is proud of his book, but he's even prouder of his wife and children. He grew up without a family, so he knows the **importance** of having people who love him.

Sadaf Rahimi

Many girls in Afghanistan are wives before they are sixteen, but seventeen-year-old Sadaf is **different**. She is single and she is a boxer. There is no boxing ring where women can train in Afghanistan, but Sadaf trains in a gym at a sports stadium. Many Afghans believe that women shouldn't do sport, and recently Sadaf had to miss training for a month after people had threatened to attack her. Then she came second in a boxing competition in Tajikistan. Suddenly, people were congratulating her on her achievement and the threats stopped. Now she is preparing for her next big challenge: the Olympic Games. She might be the only female athlete from her country to compete in the Games, so she will be representing all Afghan women. She is determined to bring home a medal.



- 5 There were a lot of good dancers, so I had to fight a place in the final.
- 6 I succeeded winning the final.
- 7 The judges praised me my unusual dance moves.
- 8 Everyone congratulated me my success.

V insight Suffixes: *-ant, -ent, -ance, -ence*

5 Suffixes show the part of speech of a word. Study the highlighted words in the article. Then add them to the correct category in the table and write the corresponding adjectives or nouns.

Adjective		Noun	
<i>-ant</i>	1 distant	<i>-ance</i>	2 distance
	3		4
	5		6
<i>-ent</i>	7 independent	<i>-ence</i>	8 independence
	9		10
	11		12
	13		14
	15		16
	17		18

6 Complete the text with a noun or adjective in exercise 5.

Life would be boring if we were all the same, but luckily everyone is ¹..... . There aren't many people as ²..... as Albert Einstein or as ³..... at football as Lionel Messi. We may not look after the ill and poor with the ⁴..... of Mother Teresa, or inspire millions to fight for their ⁵..... like Mahatma Gandhi. We can't all run the ⁶..... of a marathon in less than three hours, or speak with ⁷..... in front of thousands of people, or catch ⁸..... criminals and put them in prison. However, we can all be heroes in our own community. We all have an ⁹..... part to play in the world.

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Choose a very successful person in each area. Then answer the questions.

- business ■ entertainment ■ politics ■ science
- sport ■ your community

- 1 What has each person achieved?
- 2 What qualities have helped them to succeed? Which is the most important quality to achieve success in each area?

8B ■ Grammar and listening Foul play

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- Have you ever watched the Olympic Games? What are your favourite Olympic sports?
- Are sportspeople always honest? Can you think of any examples of cheating? Use the words below to help you.
 ■ lying ■ bribes ■ illegal equipment ■ drugs ■ violence

Past perfect

2 Read the text and match paragraphs A–E to the words in exercise 1. Are some of these examples of cheating worse than others or are all types of cheating equally bad?

3 Study sentences a–b and answer the questions.

- Ben Johnson won the 100-metre running race.*
- He had taken illegal drugs.*

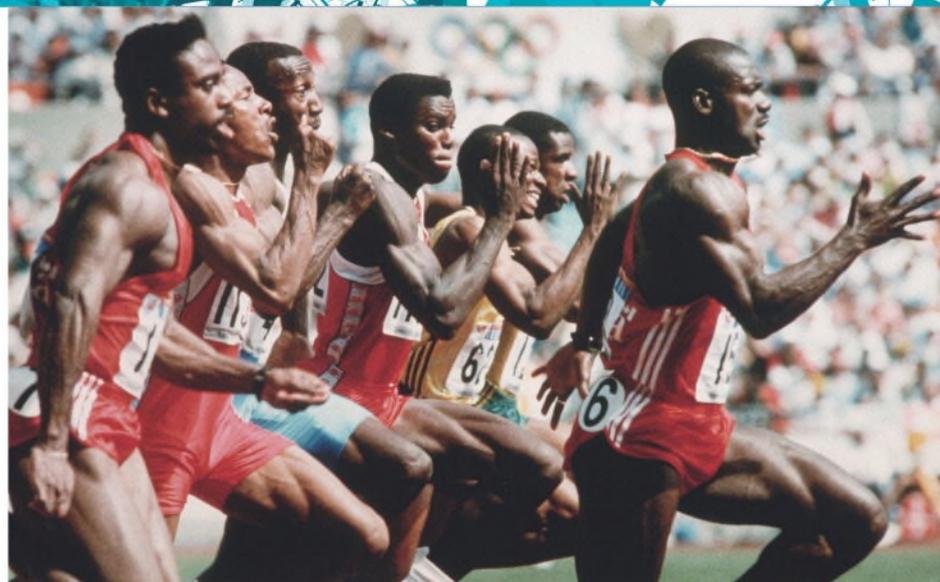
- Which event happened first, a or b?
- Study sentence b again. How do we form the past perfect?

Reference and practice 8.1 Workbook page 118

4 Read the text again and underline more examples of the past perfect. How do we form negative sentences and questions?

5 Study the sentence pairs. Number the events in the correct order.

- Julia joined the sports club at her school when she was fourteen.
 join sports club 2 become fourteen 1
 - Julia had joined the sports club at her school when she was fourteen.
 join sports club become fourteen
- When she decided to enter the race, she had done some training.
 decide to enter race do some training
 - When she decided to enter the race, she did some training.
 decide to enter race do some training
- She had put on her running shoes when the race started.
 put on shoes race start
 - She put on her running shoes when the race started.
 put on shoes race start
- When she finished the race, all the other runners went home.
 finish the race go home
 - When she finished the race, all the other runners had gone home.
 finish the race go home



What a cheat!

A Cheats in the Olympic Games have existed almost as long as the Games themselves. The first known cheat was Eupolus. He won the boxing competition of 388 BC because he had bribed his three opponents.

B In the 1905 marathon, US athlete Frederick Lorz crossed the finish line first, but he hadn't run the whole race. He had travelled 18 km in his manager's car, and he had only run the last part because the car had broken down!

C In the 1988 Olympics, Canadian athlete Ben Johnson won the 100-metre running race and set a new world record. But the organizers of the Games took away his medal three days after he had won it. What had he done to deserve this? He had taken illegal drugs to improve his strength and speed.

D Ice skater Tonya Harding's methods were even more extreme. Before the 1994 Winter Olympics, someone attacked Tonya's rival, Nancy Kerrigan, with a heavy stick. Tonya had asked her ex-husband to organize the attack so that Nancy couldn't compete in the Games. Unfortunately for Tonya, Nancy's injuries weren't serious and she was soon back on her skates. Nancy won a silver medal and Tonya only came eighth.

E The Paralympics have also had their cheats. In 2000, there was a basketball competition for intellectually disabled players. The Spanish team won easily, but they hadn't told the truth. Only two of the twelve players were intellectually disabled.

6 Read the story about Liam. Then write the reasons. Use the past perfect.

- 1 Liam dressed in women's clothes because **his friends had paid him some money.**
- 2 The race organizers put him in the women's race because
- 3 He ran faster than everyone else because
- 4 He won the gold medal because
- 5 Other people in the race complained because
- 6 He didn't keep his medal because

Liam's friends paid him some money. He dressed in women's clothes. The race organizers put him in the women's race. No other men entered the women's race. He ran faster than everyone else. He won the gold medal unfairly. Other people in the race complained. He didn't keep his medal.



7 Complete the text with the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

It ¹..... (be) the end of the TV quiz show and the presenter ²..... (say), 'Congratulations, Charles! You've won a million pounds.' Charles Ingram ³..... (answer) every question correctly. However, the TV company ⁴..... (not pay) Charles the money. Why not? Because Charles ⁵..... (cheat) during the show. The presenter ⁶..... (not notice) anything wrong, but another man in the audience, Tecwen Whittock, ⁷..... (help) Charles with some of the answers. How ⁸..... (they communicate)? Charles ⁹..... (read out) all the possible answers, and Tecwen ¹⁰..... (cough) after the correct one.

8 SPEAKING Look at the photo of pop group Milli Vanilli. When do you think they were famous? Can you think of any examples of cheating in the music business?

9 2.12 Listen to a radio programme about Milli Vanilli. Why were people angry with them?

10 2.12 Listen again and choose the correct words or phrases.

- 1 Fab and Rob had met in **the USA / Germany.**
- 2 They got a Grammy Award for **Best New Group / Best New Song.**
- 3 They ran off the stage in a concert because **their fans couldn't hear them / the equipment had stopped working properly.**
- 4 During the concert, they **had sung all the songs / had pretended to sing.**
- 5 The people who had sung on their album were **older / more successful** than Fab and Rob.
- 6 Fab and Rob had to give back **money to the fans who had bought their album / the Grammy Award they had won.**



11 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below and tell your partner about it.

- 1 Think about a time when you were late.
 - Where were you?
 - Who were you with?
 - Why were you late?
 - What were the consequences?

- 2 Think about a time when you forgot something important.
 - Where were you?
 - Who else was there?
 - What had you forgotten?
 - What were the consequences?

- 3 Think about someone who cheated.
 - Was it someone that you know?
 - What did they do?
 - How did people find out about their cheating?
 - What punishment did they get?

- 4 Think about a time when you found something surprising or unusual.
 - What was it?
 - How did you find it?
 - How had it got there?
 - What did you do with it?

Vocabulary bank Sport: compound nouns page 141

8C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary The greatest



1 SPEAKING Work in groups. Discuss the questions. Look at photos a–f or use your own ideas.

- 1 What are the greatest achievements in human history? Why?
- 2 In your opinion, what is the single greatest achievement of all time?

2 **2.13** Listen to part of a radio programme about the greatest achievements in human history. Match speakers 1–5 to photos a–f. There is one photo that you do not need.

3 **2.13** Listen again. According to the speakers, are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 The hardest challenge for NASA was getting their astronauts back home.
- 2 When Archimedes was alive, everyone knew about his mathematical ideas.
- 3 In the past, half of all the children born in England died as babies.
- 4 The first important human achievement was inventing the pizza.
- 5 We can live comfortable lives today without harming the planet because of solar power.

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Which speaker's idea was the best? Which one was the worst? Give reasons for your answers.

V insight Collocations: achievement

5 **2.14** Complete the sentences with the verbs below. Then listen and check your answers.

- solve ■ achieve ■ take ■ change ■ find ■ make ■ put ■ rise

¹..... advantage of all the opportunities that come your way.

If you have to do something difficult, ²..... to the challenge.

You can't ³..... progress without hard work.

Be determined and you'll ⁷..... your goal.

Keep trying, and you will ⁴..... a way to ⁵..... the problem.

You can do it if you ⁶..... your mind to it.

Remember, the best way to ⁸..... the world is one step at a time.

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Read the instructions.

<p>Student A Tell Student B about a time when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ you rose to a challenge. ■ you made progress with hard work. ■ you solved a problem. 	<p>Student B Tell Student A about a time when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ you achieved a goal. ■ you took advantage of an opportunity. ■ you put your mind to something.
--	--

Expressing and justifying opinions

- 7 **SPEAKING** Study the pairs of famous people. Who has achieved more, in your opinion? Choose one person in each pair.

Shakespeare – J.K. Rowling

Mozart – Adele

Pelé – Lionel Messi

Picasso – Michelangelo

Walt Disney – Peter Jackson

- 8  2.15 Listen to the dialogue. Who does Daisy choose as the greatest writer? Does Jack agree with her?
- 9  2.15 Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.

Expressing opinions

For me, ...

In ¹..... view, ...

It seems ²..... me that ...

Justifying opinions

The ³..... I say that is ...

You ⁴..... deny that ...

Conversation fillers

Basically, ...

Well, ...

⁵..... know, ...

- 10  2.16 Complete the dialogue with the correct words. Then listen and check.

Jack What about footballers? Who's the greatest footballer of all time?

Daisy Hmm, ¹you can't deny that / for me, Lionel Messi, probably.

Jack ²It seems to me that / Well, Pelé was the greatest.

³In my view, / The reason I say that is, he's scored more goals than any other footballer in history, and he won the World Cup for Brazil three times.

Daisy Pelé was brilliant, but in my opinion, if a young Pelé was in a match today, he wouldn't be so amazing. I mean,

⁴you can't deny that / for me, people break new records in sport every year. I say that because the level in all sports is higher now than it was in the 1960s.

Jack ⁵In my view / The reason I say that is, that's not important. It's your achievements that are important, and there's no doubt that Pelé has achieved a lot more than Messi.

- 11 Read the dialogue again. Underline one more way of expressing opinions and one more way of justifying opinions.

- 12 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Read the questions from a survey and make notes on your opinions. Use the phrases in exercise 9. Then compare your ideas with your partner and explain your opinions.

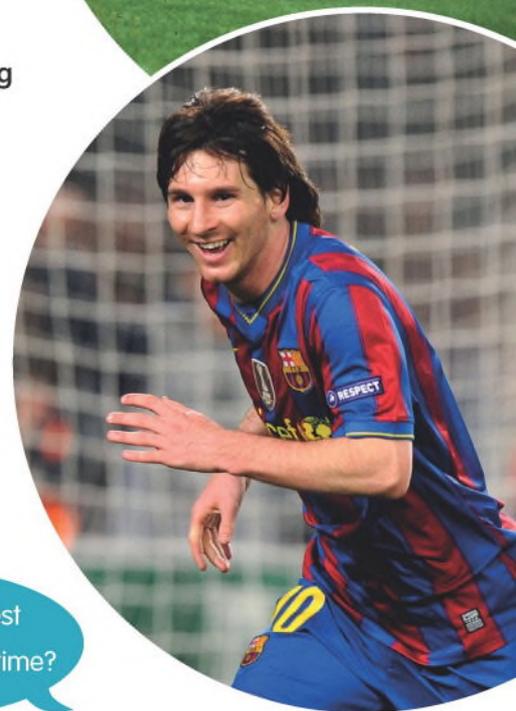
What's the greatest
gadget of all time?

Who's the greatest
actor of all time?

What's the greatest
sport of all time?

Who's the greatest
artist of all time?

What's the greatest
TV show of all time?



DVD extra Great British writers: Shakespeare, Austen, Fleming

8D ■ Culture, vocabulary and grammar The British honours system

1 SPEAKING Look at the photos. Who do you think the people are? What are they doing? Then read the text quickly and check your answers.

STRATEGY

Identifying facts and opinions

When you read a text, it is important to understand which statements are facts and which are opinions.

A fact is something that we can prove to be true.
An opinion is something that we believe to be true.
Look for these clues that something is an opinion:

- certain verbs and modals, e.g. *think, believe, seem, feel, suggest, should, may, might*
- adjectives, e.g. *amazing, great, terrible, beautiful, boring, best, worst*
- words and phrases such as *in my view, in my opinion, probably, perhaps, possibly*

2 Read the strategy. Then read the text again and underline the opinions in it.

3 Complete the facts with information from the text.

- 1 The full name of the OBE award is
- 2 About people get a CBE every year.
- 3 Eleanor Simmonds has a health problem called
- 4 Chris Preddie was a teenager when died.
- 5 Awards ceremonies take place in different cities.
- 6 didn't accept an award for his work in the area of science.
- 7 In the early years of the twentieth century, some parts of were in the British Empire.
- 8 If he ever wins a KBE, Mr Bill Crispin will become

V State and society

4 Study the highlighted words in the text. Then match them to definitions 1–9.

- 1 a political system in which a king or queen rules a country
- 2 people who work in politics
- 3 the most important city of a country
- 4 a group of countries that one person or country rules
- 5 the activity of ruling a country, or the group of people who do it
- 6 people who help to manage the country, but don't make political decisions
- 7 an event when people vote to choose someone for an important position
- 8 the earning, spending and managing of money in a country or area
- 9 the leader of a country which is a republic



The British honours system: two points of view

If you won an MBE, would you accept it? We asked two British people what they think about the honours system. Here is what they said.

Every year, about two thousand amazing people receive a special honour from the Queen. And it seems to me that they deserve it.

Take Eleanor Simmonds, for example. She was born with dwarfism, and at the age of thirteen, she was only 123 cm tall. But that didn't stop her from reaching the top in her sport. She's won four swimming gold medals in the Paralympic Games.

As a teenager, Chris Preddie used to be in a gang. His friends used to steal and sell drugs. Chris didn't use to believe that he could make a positive difference to his community. However, when he was sixteen, someone shot and killed his brother. Chris decided to change his life, and now he helps young criminals to stay out of trouble.

Bill Crispin is eighty-two. Every morning, he helps young children to cross the road safely on their way to school. It is sometimes very cold in winter, but does Bill complain? Certainly not. He is always smiling, and always ready to help other people.

Eleanor and Bill won MBEs for their achievements, and Chris won an OBE. I feel the British honours system is a great way to thank people for their hard work. The Queen gives each winner a medal, either in Buckingham Palace in London, or in Edinburgh or Cardiff, the capitals of Scotland and Wales.

For these British heroes, it's the proudest moment of their life.



Award	Full name	How many a year?
MBE	Member of the British Empire	about 1250
OBE	Officer of the British Empire	about 500
CBE	Commander of the British Empire	about 200
KBE / DBE	Knight / Dame of the British Empire	about 50

6 In the British honours system, people win awards for their work in one of eight areas: education; science and technology; health; media and the arts; community; the **economy**; **government**; and sport. I believe it's a good idea to give awards to volunteers who help their community. However, a lot of other high achievers are very rich. They don't need any other rewards.

Although **politicians**, **civil servants** and industry experts choose the people who get awards, there is still a strong association with the **monarchy**, and many people don't like this. In their view, it's better to have a **president** instead of a queen, and to choose him or her in an **election**. Even back in 1953, biologist Francis Crick refused an award because he thought the monarchy was 'out-of-date'.

Other people don't like the word '**empire**' in the name of the awards. A hundred years ago, the British controlled many parts of India, Africa and the Caribbean. Poet Benjamin Zephaniah's family is from the Caribbean, and in his opinion the Empire didn't use to treat its population fairly. He refused an offer of an OBE.

The titles seem out-of-date, too. If you win the highest honour, a KBE or DBE, your title changes from Mr to Sir, or from Miss or Mrs to Dame. Some examples include writer Dame Agatha Christie and ex-Beatle Sir Paul McCartney. Although these people have achieved a lot in their lives, their old-fashioned titles shouldn't have a place in the modern world.

5 Complete the text below with the correct form of words in exercise 4. Which European country is it about?

This country has a population of only 832 people, and no one is ever born there. Its system of ¹..... is one of the strangest in the world. The country has no king or queen, but its ruler isn't a ²..... either. There is an ³..... to vote for him, but after he takes power, he keeps his position until he dies, like in a ⁴..... He is in complete control of the country for the rest of his life, but he gets some help from the ⁵..... who work in the law courts, police, fire and post service. The country's ⁶..... depends on the tourists who spend a lot of money there every year. And strangest of all, this little country is inside a big city that is one of the most famous ⁷..... in Europe, and was once the centre of an ⁸..... that reached from Portugal to Iran.

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- If you won an MBE, would you accept it? Why / why not?
- Does your country have a national honours system to reward people for their work? Who wins awards? Who chooses them? Where do award ceremonies take place? Is the system popular?

used to

7 Study the sentence below. Find three more examples of *used to* in the article. Then complete rules a–c.

As a teenager, Chris Preddie used to be in a gang.

- used to* refers to the present / the past.
- It is used for habits and states / single actions.
- We use the auxiliary verb *did* / *had* to form negative sentences and questions.

Reference and practice 8.2 Workbook page 119

8 Read sentences 1–6. Rewrite four of them with *used to*.

- Eleanor trained in the pool for eighteen hours a week.
- She won her first Paralympic gold medal in Beijing, in 2008.
- She didn't listen to people's rude comments about her height.
- Chris's friends were young criminals.
- When he was young, Bill didn't work with children.
- He received his MBE in 2011.

9 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think about when you were younger. How have you changed? Use the verbs below and your own ideas.

- collect ■ listen to ■ watch ■ live ■ wear ■ eat ■ have
■ play ■ do exercise ■ be afraid of

- What did you use to do when you were younger, but don't do now?
- What do you do now that you didn't use to do?

8E ■ Writing An opinion essay

- 1 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Look at the photos and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's happening in the photos?
 - 2 How do you feel when you win something?
 - 3 How do you feel when you lose?
 - 4 Are competitions a good thing? Why / why not?



STRATEGY

Selecting ideas

Before you start writing, brainstorm some ideas and write them down. Then decide on your best ideas. Use these questions to help you.

- Are they relevant to the task?
- Are they the most interesting ideas?
- Are there convincing arguments and examples to support these ideas?
- Are they the easiest ideas to explain clearly?

- 2 Read the strategy. Then study the task and the notes below. Which four ideas do you think are the best? Why?

'The most important thing isn't winning a competition. It's taking part.' Do you agree?

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * running a marathon = great achievement (not everyone tries to win) * winners inspire other people * if we praise losers, they won't try harder next time * someone needs to lose so that someone else can win * winning = lots of hard work 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * winning is what makes a competition exciting * be realistic – you can't win every time * it's expensive to prepare for a competition * losing is not always bad – you can learn from your mistakes * used to enjoy chess but stopped after losing competition
---	---

- 3 Read Aisha's essay. Does she agree with the statement in the essay title? Has she included only arguments that support her opinion? Are there any arguments against it?

Introducing examples and conclusions

- 4 Read paragraphs 1–4 of Aisha's essay again. Then read conclusions A–E. Which conclusion best summarizes Aisha's argument?
- 5 Study the highlighted phrases in the essay and the conclusions. Which phrases introduce an example? Which ones introduce a conclusion?
- 6 Read essay extracts 1–6. Are they giving an example or stating a conclusion? Choose the correct words. Then match extracts 1–6 to essay topics a–c.
 - 1 To sum up, / Such as I believe that a good king or queen can be a better head of state than a president.
 - 2 To summarize, / For instance, there are many examples of rich people who are very generous, but it is definitely harder to achieve success if you are not ambitious and competitive.
 - 3 A famous actress in conclusion, / such as Gwyneth Paltrow gets lots of scary letters from crazy people, and some of them even try to break into her home.
 - 4 All things considered, / For example, billionaire Bill Gates established a charity foundation which supports educational and health projects around the world.
 - 5 In conclusion, / For instance, Queen Elizabeth II of England has always worked very hard and never interferes in politics.
 - 6 All things considered, / Such as I don't think that famous people are lucky. They pay a high price for their success.
 - a 'Monarchies should have no place in the modern world.' Do you agree?
 - b 'All successful people are selfish.' Do you agree?
 - c 'Celebrities are the world's luckiest people.' Do you agree?

'The most important thing isn't winning a competition. It's taking part.' Do you agree?
by Aisha Donald

1 In every competition, there are winners and losers. Some people think that anything except first place is a failure. Others believe that we should celebrate everyone's achievements equally. What is more important, winning or taking part?

2 In my view, winning isn't the only way to be successful. Of course, you should always try to do your best, but you must be realistic. **For instance**, if you aren't very fit and have never taken part in a race before, then you probably won't win this time. You can't win every race, but you can always aim to be better than last time. If you arrived in twentieth place last year, then finishing in fifth place this year is a great result.

3 In addition, not everyone wants to be the winner. People have different reasons for entering a competition. **For example**, in a big marathon race there are often professional athletes at the front and ordinary people at the back. The professional athletes' goal is to win, but for many ordinary people just finishing a marathon is a huge achievement.

4 On the other hand, it would be wrong if we didn't praise the winner's achievement more than everyone else's. Winning an important competition **such as** the Olympic Games often takes years of determination and hard work. The winners inspire us by going further, running faster and jumping higher than we thought was possible. However, there can only be one winner and the other people who take part in the competition are just as important to its success.

A

To conclude, it is clear that taking part and winning are equally important. If you don't take part in a competition, you can never win.

B

To summarize, the purpose of a competition is to find a winner. For this reason, I believe that winning is much more important than taking part.

C

In conclusion, I think that winning is not important. Having fun in a competition is the only thing that matters.

D

To sum up, I believe that people deserve praise for winning a competition, but taking part and doing your best are more important.

E

All things considered, life is a competition. There are winners and there are losers. If you never take part, you are always going to be a loser.

WRITING GUIDE

Task Write an opinion essay on this topic.

'Students should have compulsory sport classes at school every day.' Do you agree?

Ideas Follow the instructions.

- 1 Read the comments below and think about your own experience of sports at school.
- 2 Brainstorm ideas. Think of reasons why having sport classes every day is a good or a bad idea.
- 3 Decide if you agree or disagree.
- 4 Choose the two strongest arguments in support of your opinion and think of suitable examples.
- 5 Choose one argument against your opinion and think of a counter-argument (a reason why the first argument isn't very strong).

'I get really bored because no one throws me the ball. I'm not good enough.'

'Sport is not as important as other subjects, such as maths or science.'

'I do sport every day because I want to be fit and healthy.'

'I'm not great at maths or science, but I'm really good at sport. I'd love to have the opportunity to show people my skills.'

'Playing basketball with friends is fun.'

'I don't have time to do sport.'

Plan Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Introduce the topic and say what other people think about it.

Paragraph 2: Say what your opinion is. Give your main argument in support of it. Add examples.

Paragraph 3: Give a second argument in support of your opinion. Add examples.

Paragraph 4: Give an argument against your opinion, with details, and a counter-argument.

Paragraph 5: Summarize the main points.

Write Write your opinion essay. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

Check Check the following points.

- Are all your arguments clear and relevant to the statement in the essay title? Have you included examples?
- Have you divided your essay into five paragraphs?
- Have you used appropriate phrases to introduce the examples and the conclusion?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 8 Using a dictionary: dependent prepositions

1 Work in pairs. Match 1–5 to a–e to make sentences. Then find and underline one preposition in each sentence. What other prepositions do you know?

- 1 I was so proud
 - 2 Something strange happened
 - 3 The runners were very excited
 - 4 Everyone congratulated her
 - 5 There is no hope
- a for success.
 - b on winning the race.
 - c to me yesterday.
 - d of my achievement.
 - e about the race.

STRATEGY

Dependent prepositions

Verbs, nouns and adjectives are often used in combination with certain prepositions, such as *about*, *for*, *of*, *on*, etc. The prepositions do not change the basic meaning of the word they follow. Their role is to link that word to other parts of the sentence.

It is not always easy to know which preposition to use after a particular verb, noun or adjective. If you are not sure, look up the word in a dictionary.

dream² /dri:m/ verb (pt, pp **dreamt** /dremt/ or **dreamed**) **1** [I,T] **dream (about sb/sth)** to see or experience pictures and events in your mind while you are asleep: *I dreamt about the house that I lived in as a child.* ♦ *I dreamed that I was running but I couldn't get away.* ➔ look at **daydream** **2** [I] **dream (about/of sth/doing sth)** to imagine sth that you would like to happen: *I've always dreamt about winning lots of money.* **3** [I] **dream (of doing sth/that ...)** to imagine that sth might happen: *I wouldn't dream of telling Stuart that I don't like his music.* ♦ *When I watched the Olympics on TV, I never dreamt that one day I'd be here competing!*

The dictionary entry tells you that the verb *dream* can be followed by the prepositions *about* and *of*.

Last night I **dreamed** **about / of** **you.**
(verb) (preposition) (object)

When you record new vocabulary, always try to include a note about the preposition(s) that follow it, e.g.

to dream **about / of somebody or something**

2 Read the strategy above. Then study the groups of words 1–4. Which preposition can follow all three words in each group? Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 anxious, excited, warn
- 2 afraid, dream, example
- 3 succeed, interested, believe
- 4 praise, prepare, wait

STRATEGY

Verbs and prepositions

Some verbs can be followed by more than one preposition. The preposition you need can depend on:

- the meaning of the sentence
I campaigned for less homework. (= I wanted less homework.)
I campaigned against less homework. (= I didn't want less homework.)
- whether the object which follows the verb is a person or a thing
I talked to my teacher. (person)
I talked about my exams. (thing)
I talked to my teacher about my exams.

In a dictionary, this is usually written as *talk to sb about sth* (*sb* = somebody, *sth* = something).

3 Read the strategy above. Then study the dictionary entry for *compete* and complete the text.

compete /kəm'pi:t/ verb [I] **compete (in sth) (against/with sb) (for sth)** to try to win or achieve sth, or to try to be better than sb else: *The world's best athletes compete in the Olympic Games.* ♦ *We'll be competing against seven other teams for the trophy.* ♦ *As children, they always used to compete*

Usain Bolt competed ¹..... the 2012 Olympics. He competed ²..... the best athletes in the world. They were competing ³..... a gold medal.

4 Choose the correct prepositions. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 I wrote an email **to / about** my grandfather **to / about** my trip to Canada.
- 2 She's always fighting **for / with** her brother **from / about** the computer.
- 3 I learned a lot **to / about** history **for / from** my uncle.
- 4 Sue agreed **in / with** Sally **about / of** the decision.
- 5 I apologized **for / to** my teacher **for / to** the mistake.

5 Complete the vocabulary records for some of the verbs and prepositions on this page. Then write your own example sentences.

Verb	Preposition	Object	Example
wait	for	sb	Wait for me!
		sth	
apologize	to		
		sth	
agree		sb	
	about		
compete	in		
		sb	
learn	for		
		sth	

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.

■ compete ■ dream ■ fight ■ praise ■ prepare ■ succeed

As a child, Bob Love ¹ of becoming a famous basketball player. He ² for his future by practising the sport every day. His dream came true and he ³ in professional basketball for the Chicago Bulls for eight years. He ⁴ in becoming one of the most important players in his team. But Bob also had another dream. He found it impossible to speak in front of other people because he had a speech problem and he wanted to change that. He ⁵ for this dream as hard as he worked on his basketball. Now he gives motivational talks in schools and colleges. In his talks, he ⁶ his speech therapist for helping him to change his life.

Marks / 6

- 2 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the adjectives in italics.

- Clara is a *brilliant* student. Her will earn her a place at a good university.
- Some people want the country to be *independent*. They're fighting for
- There aren't any *violent* students at our school. isn't allowed.
- Our teachers are very *patient*, but sometimes their runs out.
- My family is very *important* to me. I didn't realize their until I left home.

Marks / 5

- 3 Rewrite the sentences with phrases containing the words in brackets.

- Volunteers want to help to make a difference. (world)
- Make the most of the situation. (advantage)
- Athletes have to work hard to make their dreams come true. (goals)
- You won't get better if you don't try harder. (progress)
- They need to find the answer by tomorrow. (problem)
- If you want to succeed, you'll have to make a big effort. (challenge)

Marks / 6

- 4 Complete the sentences with words related to state and society.

- The of the UK is London.
- A is a country that is governed by a king or queen.
- A successful may become a member of the government.
- In the UK, an is usually held every four years.
- Some parts of Britain were controlled by the Roman from 43 AD to 410 AD.

Marks / 5

Grammar

- 5 Complete the text with the past perfect form of the verbs below.

■ cheat ■ come ■ hit ■ not kick ■ save ■ not score
■ not see ■ touch

English football fans will never forget the 1986 World Cup. Argentina ¹ top of their group and they had to play England in the quarter final. At half-time, the teams still ² , so the scoreboard said 0–0. Then, Diego Maradona scored a goal for Argentina. But the goal was illegal because he ³ the ball into the goal with his foot. Instead, he ⁴ it with his hand. The goalkeeper ⁵ already a number of goals, but not this time. The referee allowed the goal because he ⁶ the incident. In the end, Argentina won the match 2–1. The players were furious because Maradona ⁷ After the match, Maradona admitted that he ⁸ the ball with his hand, but he didn't apologize.

Marks / 8

- 6 Write sentences with the past simple and the past perfect. Join the sentences with *because*.

- The player / go to hospital. He / break his leg.
- The accident / happen. The driver / not see the cyclist.
- We / not play tennis. We / not book a court.
- The athlete / not win the race. He / not train enough.
- The referee / cancel the match. Rain / flood the pitch.
- They / be upset. They / not score any points.
- The fans / start cheering. Their team / win the match.
- I / not do PE. I / forget my trainers.

Marks / 8

- 7 Read the sentences about sport today. Then write true sentences about sport in the past. Use *used to*, a verb and the words in brackets.

- Today, footballers earn a lot of money. (as much)
In the past, they
- Today, football referees wear coloured shirts. (black)
In the past, they
- Today, women's basketball teams have five players. (six)
In the past, they
- Today, football stadiums are enormous. (as big)
In the past, they
- Today, people do extreme sports. (them)
In the past, people
- Today, sports fans buy tickets online. (at the stadium)
In the past, they
- Today, cyclists ride lightweight bicycles. (heavy)
In the past, they

Marks / 7

Total / 45

Listening

- 1  2.17 Read questions 1–5. Think about the type of numbers you will hear in each situation. Then listen again and choose the correct answers.
- Listen to someone giving information about a new product. How much does the product cost?
 - \$199
 - \$250
 - \$400
 - Listen to someone describing a race. What is the new Olympic record?
 - 9.58 seconds
 - 9.63 seconds
 - 9.69 seconds
 - Listen to a woman phoning the doctor. What time is her appointment?
 - 8.30 a.m.
 - 9.15 a.m.
 - 10.15 a.m.
 - Listen to an advert for an art exhibition. How old is the artist?
 - 6 years old
 - 10 years old
 - 16 years old
 - Listen to a conversation between two students. How far does Sam live from the station?
 - 1.5 km
 - 2.5 km
 - 3.5 km

Speaking

- 2 Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below. Ask your partner for advice. Give your partner three pieces of advice. Prepare two dialogues.

Student A

You aren't very good at tennis. You have a match next week. You'd like to play better.

Student B

You aren't very good at French. You have an exam next month. You'd like to get a good mark.

- Explain the situation and ask for advice.
- Listen to the advice your partner gives you.
- Respond to the advice.

Reading

- 3 Read the article. Match headings A–F to paragraphs 1–5. There is one extra heading that you do not need.
- It's never too late
 - A question of height
 - Getting it right from the start
 - Second time lucky
 - A late developer with a curious mind
 - He never knew success

A false start

Many people who have found success started out by failing. Below are five of the most famous.

1

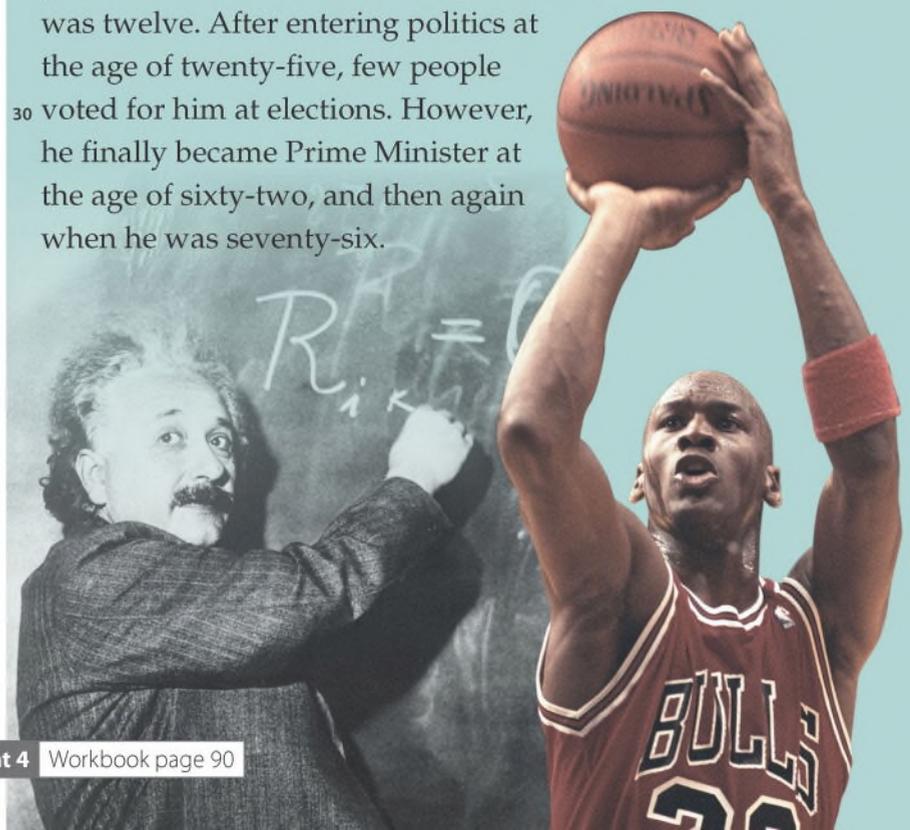
Everyone says that Albert Einstein is one of the most intelligent men that have ever lived. However, people thought differently in the past. Einstein didn't start speaking until he was four years old and he couldn't read until he was seven. His teachers said he had learning difficulties and eventually he was expelled from school. Einstein went on to become one of the most important physicists of the twentieth century and won a Nobel Prize in 1921.

2

Everyone has heard of the hugely successful Japanese electronics company Sony, but few people know the story of the company's first product. This was a rice cooker, but unfortunately it didn't work properly. Instead of cooking the rice, the rice cooker burned it, which did not make it popular with consumers. Sony sold less than a hundred rice cookers, but had much more success with their next product, which was a radio.

3

Ask anyone to tell you the name of the greatest British Prime Minister of all time and many will say it was Winston Churchill. But people haven't always admired Mr Churchill. At school, he was a poor student and he failed the year when he was twelve. After entering politics at the age of twenty-five, few people voted for him at elections. However, he finally became Prime Minister at the age of sixty-two, and then again when he was seventy-six.





$$E = mc^2$$

4

One of the unluckiest artists in the world is the Dutch painter Vincent van Gogh. Only one person bought a painting from him during his life, and that person was a friend who paid very little money for it. However, the painter continued with his work and completed over eight hundred pictures before he died. Today, you can see his paintings in the most important art galleries in the world and they sell for millions of euros.

5

It's hard to believe that the school basketball coach didn't choose Michael Jordan to play in the team, but that's exactly what happened. At the time, Jordan was only one metre and eighty centimetres tall, and the coach thought he was too short for the team. Luckily for Jordan, he grew eighteen centimetres over the next few years and by the time he was twenty-one, he was playing for the Chicago Bulls. During his basketball career, he was NBA champion six times. Today, many people think of Michael Jordan as the best basketball player ever.

Grammar and vocabulary

- 4 Complete the sentences so the meaning is the same. Use two to five words including the word in brackets.
- My mum wasn't very good at sport when she was at school. (USE)
My mum very good at sport when she was at school.
 - I saw the film for the first time yesterday. (NEVER)
Before yesterday, the film.
 - I don't speak Portuguese, but I'd like to learn it. (WISH)
I Portuguese.
 - She feels tired because she doesn't sleep enough. (FEEL)
If she slept more, so tired.
 - Entrance to the museum is free. (PAY)
You to go into the museum.
 - Ball games are not allowed in the park. (MUST)
You ball games in the park.
 - You need to study to pass the exam. (FAIL)
If you don't study, the exam.
 - We met a year ago. (KNOWN)
We each other for a year.
 - He doesn't have a good relationship with his sister. (GET)
He with his sister.
 - Russian is more difficult than German. (EASY)
Russian German.

Writing

- 5 Study the advert. Imagine you want to work as a helper at a summer camp in the USA. Write a formal email to the camp director asking for more information. In your email:
- say why you are writing
 - ask a question about accommodation
 - ask a question about flights
 - ask a question about free time
 - thank the reader for their help

SUMMER CAMP ASSISTANT

What are your plans for this summer? If you like to travel, make new friends and learn about different cultures, this programme is perfect for you. We are looking for assistants to help with the organization of sports activities at our summer camps in the USA.

- No experience needed
- Must be fourteen or older

9

The media

Reading and vocabulary In the news

1 **Selena
in love**2 Battle for
election votes
enters final week3 Chestnut the
squirrel adopted
by Sugar the cat4 Tsunami leaves
thousands
without homes5 Protests against
nuclear power
plant continue

- 1 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Match photos A–E to headlines 1–5. Which stories would you be most interested to read?
- 2 Read the article. What is it mainly about?
- the news of the day
 - reasons for including stories in the news
 - different types of news organization
- 3 Read the article again. According to the text, are the statements true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)? Correct the false ones.
- Napoleon Bonaparte thought that newspapers were very powerful.
 - Thomas Jefferson thought that newspapers gave people lots of useful information.
 - People can learn more from news organizations today than in the past.
 - Two countries that speak the same language are more likely to appear in each other's news stories than countries that speak different languages.
 - Celebrities don't want their love lives to be in the news.
 - There are often less important stories in the news in the summer.
 - Someone always checks that a story is true before it goes in the news.
 - Some stories stay out of the news because they cost too much money to include.
 - The British usually prefer serious news about other countries than stories about famous people.
- 4 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Imagine you are the editors of a news website and want to give clear instructions to your journalists. Study criteria a–h in the article and put them in order from 1–8 (1 = most important, 8 = least important). Are there any other criteria that you would like to include?

V The press

- 5 Study the highlighted words in the article. Then match the words to definitions 1–10.
- someone who writes news reports
 - the title of a newspaper report; the letters are bigger than in the rest of the report
 - a type of newspaper with large pages and serious news
 - a type of newspaper with small pages and not much serious news
 - a piece of writing that gives an opinion about a film, book, TV programme, etc.
 - the person who decides what stories a newspaper or magazine should include
 - a place in a newspaper or magazine where you can read about the private lives of famous people
 - announcements in the media that businesses and other organizations pay for
 - a piece of writing about a particular subject in a newspaper or magazine, or on a website
 - the section of a newspaper which contains the most important news

V insight Collocations: the media

- 6 Choose the correct words. Then find the verbs in the article and check your answers. Can you add more nouns to each group?
- investigate / broadcast on the radio, on TV, on the internet
 - report / publish a newspaper, a magazine, a novel
 - report / publish an event, a crash, a murder
 - gather / confirm the facts, the details, a rumour
 - gather / interview information, news, evidence
 - investigate / confirm a story, a crime, a problem
 - broadcast / interview a person, a celebrity, a politician

Vocabulary: the press; collocations: the media; films, types of TV programme
Grammar: reported speech; *say* and *tell*; question tags

Speaking: discussing news stories; talking about the media; doing a survey; talking about films; giving and reacting to news
Writing: a film review



What's in the news?

French ruler Napoleon Bonaparte (1769–1821) once said that four newspapers against you were more dangerous than a thousand guns. The power of newspapers was clear almost as soon as they became available in the seventeenth century. The quality of their stories was more doubtful, however. US politician Thomas Jefferson (1743–1826) said that a man who had read nothing at all knew more than a man who had only read newspapers.

5 Is the same true today? As well as publishing more serious **broadsheet** newspapers and less serious **tabloids**, news organizations broadcast on the radio and on TV twenty-four hours a day and provide websites and mobile phone apps. But how do **editors** decide which stories to include?

These are the main criteria that they use.

a How many people does the story affect?

10 A tsunami that kills 10,000 is more likely to be on the **front page** than a plane crash that kills twenty.

b Where is the event?

An event in or near your own country usually has more importance than one on the other side of the world.

15 A faraway country with strong links to your own – for example, a shared language – might be an exception to the rule.

c How famous are the people in the story?

20 If you fall off your bike or fall in love, **journalists** won't be very interested. But if it's a Hollywood star who does this, it might be big news.

d Does it appeal to the emotions?

25 Sometimes stories about unimportant people or animals are so sad or so funny that they can become news. This happens most often in summer, when politicians are on holiday and there isn't much serious news.

e Does it fit with the news organization's political ideas?

Some newspapers and websites have a political bias.

30 A socialist newspaper might not want to publish an **article** about corrupt socialist politicians.

f Is it true?

Before journalists report an event, they should always confirm the facts. Some of them forget this, however, especially if the facts ruin a good story!

g Will it be expensive to report?

40 News organizations can't afford as many journalists as they did in the past, so no one has much time to gather information. It's sometimes impossible to investigate more complicated stories. And because TV news crews usually work in the capital, it's often too expensive to interview people in other parts of the country.

h Will it make money?

45 If people aren't interested, they will find their news somewhere else, and the news organization will make less money from sales and **advertising**. In the UK and USA, people often seem so interested in celebrity **gossip columns** and **reviews** of the latest TV shows that important international stories sometimes disappear from the **headlines**.

What types of news stories do you prefer? Do you think your favourite news sources choose their stories for the right reasons? Send your comments to: views@mediasavvy.uk.com

7 SPEAKING Work in groups. Think about the media in your country and discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the most popular newspapers? Are they broadsheet or tabloid?
- 2 Do any of the news organizations have a political bias? How do you know?
- 3 Are there any faraway countries that are often in the news? Why?
- 4 Can you think of news stories in the media that weren't true? Give details.
- 5 Do you ever watch or listen to programmes broadcast in English?

Vocabulary bank Parts of a newspaper page 142

9B ■ Grammar and listening Multitasking

- 1 SPEAKING** Look at the photo and answer the questions.
- 1 What is the girl doing? What do you think multitasking is?
 - 2 Do you ever multitask? What things do you do at the same time?
 - 3 What are the advantages and disadvantages of multitasking?



Reported speech

- 2 Read the newspaper report. Who said the following?**
- 1 'I multitask every second that I'm online.'
 - 2 'I am completing your survey at the same time as watching a TV show.'
 - 3 'I have watched two hours of TV in the three hours since the end of school.'
 - 4 'Teenagers will have difficulties because of their multitasking habits.'
 - 5 'Worries about multitasking became pointless a long time ago.'
- 3 Compare the direct speech in exercise 2 with the reported speech in the newspaper report. How does the tense change? Complete the table and the rules.**

Direct speech	→	Reported speech
present simple	→	1
present continuous	→	2
present perfect	→	3
past simple	→	4
will	→	5

say or tell?

We often introduce reported speech with:

6 + *that* or

7 + personal object + *that*

Reference and practice 9.1 Workbook page 120

- 4** **2.18 Listen to the interview with Marisa Sanchez. Then complete the report with the correct form of the verbs.**
- be (x2) ■ have ■ listen ■ not have ■ save
 ■ send ■ watch ■ win

During the interview, Marisa said that her smartphone ¹..... her most important possession, and that she ²..... four hundred texts the week before. She said that she usually ³..... to music on her MP3 player. She ⁴..... it in an online competition. She told me sadly that she ⁵..... her own computer. She had to use her mother's. She said that she ⁶..... money to buy a new laptop, and she ⁷..... enough money in a few months. She told me that she ⁸..... too many TV shows on her tiny smartphone screen, and that it ⁹..... nicer to watch TV on a laptop.

Teens: more media use than hours in the day

A survey into the media habits of teenagers in the USA reveals some surprising statistics. The average teenager spends an incredible eleven hours each day on their mobile phone, computer, games console or TV. That's more hours than they are awake outside school time! How are they able to do this? The answer, of course, is multitasking.

The results of the survey came as no surprise to fifteen-year-old participant Jake Kendall. He told researchers that he multitasked every second that he was online. He said that he was completing their survey at the same time as watching a TV show, chatting to friends online and reading reviews of the latest film releases. For sixteen-year-old Marisa Sanchez, the survey simply confirmed the facts. She said that she had watched two hours of TV in the three hours since the end of school, and also researched her homework about volcanoes, played an online game for two hours, and arranged her weekend plans by texting friends.

Some experts are worried about the survey results. Sylvia de Lupis of the Family Action Institute told our reporter that teenagers would have difficulties because of their multitasking habits. She added that, as adults, they would struggle to focus their attention. However, Dr Michael Rich from the Center on Media and Child Health said that worries about multitasking had become pointless a long time ago, and that high levels of media use were now a part of young people's environment, 'like the air that they breathe, the water that they drink and the food that they eat'.

5 Rewrite the statements as reported speech.

- 1 'Video game addicts often get bad results at school,' said Sylvia de Lupis.
- 2 'Their media habits haven't caused their bad results,' said other experts.
- 3 'My parents gave me a laptop,' Jake told researchers.
- 4 'I won't switch off my computer until bedtime,' he said.
- 5 'I'll probably spend six hours online after dinner,' he told researchers.
- 6 'I'm playing an online game with my friends,' Marisa told her mum.
- 7 'We never buy magazines,' she said.
- 8 'I haven't read a newspaper for years,' she told everyone.
- 9 'Some teenagers didn't want to do the survey,' said researchers.

6 2.19 Listen to the dialogue. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 Jake's mum said that it was time for breakfast.
- 2 Jake told her that he was finishing his homework.
- 3 His mum was happy that he was watching a DVD.
- 4 She said that Jake would never get A grades that way.
- 5 Jake said that his mum multitasked more than he did.
- 6 His mum said that multitasking could save time when you were tidying your room.
- 7 Jake said that he had never studied the Second World War before.
- 8 His mum said that he'd finish his homework more quickly without the DVD.
- 9 Jake said that he didn't want to work all evening.

7 SPEAKING Work in groups. Read the instructions and do the class survey.

- 1 Read the survey questions and make notes of everyone's answers.
- 2 Compare your group's answers with the answers in the box from young people in the USA.
- 3 Choose three interesting facts to report to the class.

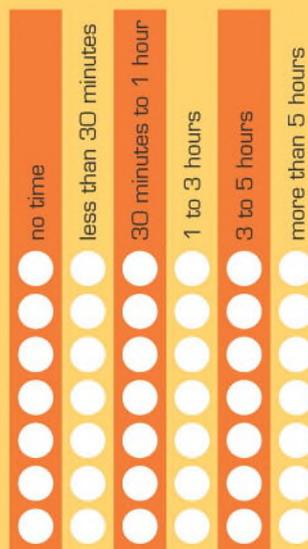
Three out of five people said that they sometimes watched TV while they were doing their homework.

1 Which of these things have you got in your bedroom?

- a a CD player
- b an MP3 player
- c a DVD player
- d a TV
- e a computer
- f a mobile phone
- g a games console
- h a radio

2 How long did you spend on these activities yesterday?

- a talking on a mobile phone
- b texting or instant messaging
- c watching TV, DVDs or internet videos
- d playing video or internet games
- e using social networking websites
- f reading a newspaper, magazine or book
- g listening to music



3 Which of the activities in question 2 do you sometimes do while you are doing your homework?

4 How many films have you seen at the cinema in the past twelve months?

- a none
- b 1 to 3
- c 4 to 10
- d 11 to 20
- e 21 to 40
- f more than 40

Survey results, USA

- 1 a CD player: 68%
- b MP3 player: 76%
- c DVD player: 57%
- d TV: 71%
- e computer: 36%
- f mobile phone: 66%
- g games console: 59%
- h radio: 75%
- 2 a talking on a mobile phone: 51 minutes
- b texting or instant messaging: 1 hour 46 minutes
- c watching TV, DVDs or internet videos: 4 hours 44 minutes
- d playing video or internet games: 1 hour 13 minutes
- e using social networking websites: 22 minutes
- f reading a newspaper, magazine or book: 38 minutes
- g listening to music: 2 hours 31 minutes
- 3 78% said that they did at least one of these things while they were doing their homework.
- 4 Average: 11–20 films

9C ■ Listening, speaking and vocabulary Behind the scenes



1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the photos. Discuss the tricks that film-makers use to make something look real. Use the words below to help you.

■ green screen ■ computer-generated images (CGI) ■ inflatable dummies ■ miniatures

2 **2.20** Listen to the start of a radio programme, *Dominic's Download*. Which things does the programme mention?

■ an interview ■ a song ■ a video game ■ a music concert ■ celebrity gossip ■ a new film

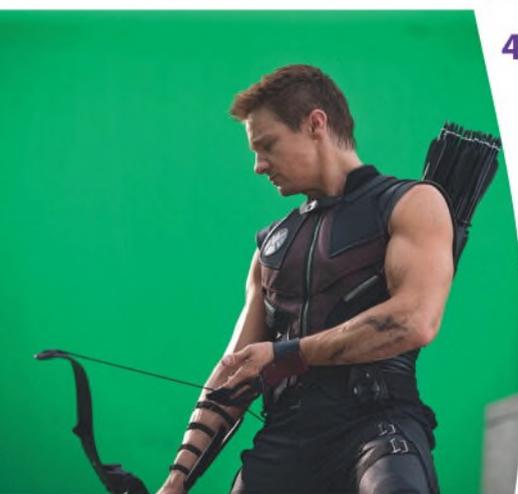
STRATEGY

Listening for main ideas

When you listen to people speaking in English, do not try to understand every word. Think about:

- the context: where is it? How many people are there? Why are they speaking?
- the key words: what key words can you hear?
- repetition: does anyone repeat any words or phrases several times? This is probably important information.

3 **2.21** Read the strategy. Then listen to a later part of the same radio programme. Use the strategy to identify the main idea.



4 **2.21** Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Catherine is ...</p> <p>2 With CGI, you can ...</p> <p>3 The crew members she spoke to have ...</p> <p>4 Using inflatable dummies ...</p> <p>5 The dummies look real in films because ...</p> | <p>a working as an extra in a film.</p> <p>b watching a match in a football stadium.</p> <p>c finding out about crowd scenes in films.</p> <p>a give each dummy an individual face.</p> <p>b make films very cheaply.</p> <p>c create good special effects.</p> <p>a spent a long time preparing the crowd.</p> <p>b worked on the set for seven days.</p> <p>c made the clothes for 10,000 dummies.</p> <p>a takes more time than using CGI.</p> <p>b is not as expensive as CGI.</p> <p>c is easier than using real people.</p> <p>a you can make them move their arms.</p> <p>b people stand among them and move.</p> <p>c you can bring them to life with CGI.</p> |
|---|--|

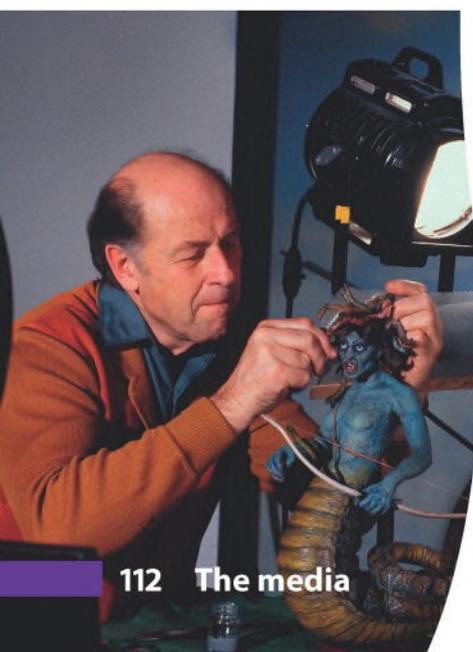


V Films

5 Complete the text with the words below.

■ special effects ■ soundtrack ■ scene ■ script ■ cast ■ film set ■ blockbuster ■ plot ■ crew

Although it usually costs millions of dollars to make a Hollywood ¹....., Gareth Edwards made his film *Monsters* for only £15,000. There was a ²..... of only two actors and five people behind the camera. The film's ³..... involves a journalist and his boss's daughter travelling through an area full of alien monsters. No one wrote a ⁴..... for the film. Instead, the actors just said the words that came into their heads in each ⁵..... The filming didn't take place on a ⁶..... The actors and ⁷..... drove around Central America in a bus for six weeks. When they saw somewhere suitable, they started filming, and invited local people to be in the film as extras. Later, Gareth created the ⁸..... for the monsters with CGI software on an ordinary laptop. Gareth believes that the sound is more important in a horror film than the visuals, so he made sure that his film had the best possible ⁹..... And the result? Many critics said that *Monsters* was the best horror film of the year.



6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think of a memorable scene in a film that you have seen recently. Answer the questions.

- 1 What happened in the scene?
- 2 Which cast members were in it?
- 3 Why was it memorable? Think about the special effects, the soundtrack, the set and the script.

Giving and reacting to news

7 SPEAKING Look at photos A and B. What do you think the people are talking about? Have they received good or bad news? How are they feeling?



8 **2.22** Listen to two dialogues. What are the two pieces of news in each dialogue?

9 **2.22** Complete the phrases from the dialogues. Then listen again and check.

Giving news

Have you ¹..... about ... ?
 I was just ²..... to Stanley, and he said that
³..... some exciting / bad news about
 It ⁴..... on TV / the radio / the internet that

Reacting to good news

Cool!
 Lucky ... !
⁵..... wonderful!

Reacting to bad news

Poor ... !
 What a ⁶..... thing to happen!
 Oh no!

10 **2.23** Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- **Jo** Really? That's fantastic news! When does it start?
 **Oliver** She made a short film last term and entered it in a competition. And she won!
 **Jo** No. What film?
 **Oliver** That's the bad news. Mr Simpson is going to be in charge of the club, but he's really busy this term. It isn't going to start until January.
 **Oliver** I was talking to her this morning, and she said that she'd won twenty new video cameras for the school, so now we can have a film-making club.
 **Jo** What a brilliant thing to happen. Well done to Bella!
 **Oliver** Hey, Jo, have you heard about Bella's film?
 **Jo** What a shame! But it'll be great when it finally starts.

11 Read the dialogue again. Underline three more ways of reacting to news.

12 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Take turns to give some news. Use the ideas below and your own ideas. Use the dialogue in exercise 10 to help you.

- your friend is moving to another country
- you've lost your school bag with all your books in it
- a famous actor is going to visit your town
- your best friend has failed an exam
- there's going to be a new cinema in your town

1 SPEAKING What do you know about the BBC? Are the sentences below true (T) or false (F)? Read the article and check your answers.

- 1 The BBC is a British broadcaster.
- 2 Its first broadcast was on the radio in the 1890s.
- 3 Its first TV broadcast was the Queen's coronation in 1953.
- 4 *Strictly Come Dancing* is a BBC show.
- 5 There's a lot of advertising on the BBC.

2 Read the article again. In which paragraph A–F can you find the following information?

- 1 the number of people who worked for the BBC at the start
- 2 the number of TV channels that the BBC has today
- 3 why some people are unhappy about the BBC
- 4 the names of some BBC programmes that are popular internationally
- 5 an event that people watched on TV in big groups
- 6 how the BBC pays for its broadcasting services
- 7 what the BBC achieved in the Second World War
- 8 what people could enjoy on the radio in the 1930s

V Types of TV programme

3 Study the highlighted words in the article. Match them to the programmes in the TV listings below.

- 2.30 Littlebrook Abbey**
Mr Darlton finds out about John's love for Mary, and sends him away to fight in the war against Napoleon.
- 3.30 Sunnyvale**
In today's episode, Cathy argues with Jake, while Steve plans to leave Sunnyvale forever.
- 4.00 The Big Match**
Chelsea plays Arsenal. Kick-off at 4.20 p.m.
- 6.00 Dicky and Ducky**
Everyone's favourite ducks solve another mystery on the farm.
- 6.15 Search for a Star**
It's been a hard week for youngest contestant Lily. Can she perform well enough to survive another week on the show?
- 8.15 Freddie's Friday Night**
Freddie talks to Johnny Depp and Lady Gaga.
- 9.00 The World at Nine**
The latest stories from around the world.
- 9.25 Met Check**
Find out if there'll be sun or rain tomorrow.
- 9.30 Animal Instinct**
The Arctic wolves are hungry. Will they succeed in finding their next meal?
- 10.00 Not for Nothing**
In this funny episode, Lenny and Mel buy a pet pig.

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 What examples are there in your country of these types of TV programme?
- 2 Which types of programme do you like / dislike? Why?
- 3 Have you ever watched or listened to a BBC programme, or seen the BBC website? What was it like?
- 4 What big media organizations are there in your country? Are they similar to the BBC?

A short history of the BBC

A Birth of the BBC

At 6 p.m. on 14 November 1922, Arthur Burrows read a **news bulletin**. It included a report of a train robbery and an important political meeting, some sports results, and a **weather forecast**. This was the first ever broadcast by the British Broadcasting Corporation, or BBC. It had a staff of just four, and its mission was to 'educate, inform and entertain'.

B Entertainment for the ears

By 1930, half the homes in Britain had a radio. They could listen not only to the news, but also to dramas, classical music concerts, **chat shows**, children's programmes and live **sports coverage**. When the Second World War started in 1939, BBC radio was a very important source of news, and of entertainment to cheer people up in difficult times.

C Going global

The BBC World Service began in 1932, mostly for the British people who lived in Africa and Asia. During the Second World War, it broadcast in many different languages and had large numbers of European listeners. Today it broadcasts by radio, internet and satellite in twenty-seven languages. 188 million people listen every week.

D From radio to TV

Television broadcasting had begun in 1936, but stopped during the Second World War. When it returned in 1946, viewers could enjoy anything from Disney's Mickey Mouse **cartoons** to coverage of the Olympic Games. In 1953, 20 million people crowded round the country's 3 million TV screens to watch Queen Elizabeth II's coronation. After that, the popularity of TV grew fast. *Hancock's Half Hour*, a funny 1950s **sitcom**, reflected Britain's changing entertainment preferences. It began as a radio show in 1954, then two years later became a show for both radio and television. Finally, in 1959, the BBC decided to broadcast it only on TV.





Alvar Liddell,
one of the first
BBC presenters,
1922

E The BBC today

The BBC is now the largest broadcaster in the world, with a staff of more than 23,000 people, ten UK TV channels, fifty-nine radio stations (local, national and international) and a strong presence on the internet. In Britain, more than 30% of all TV viewing is on the BBC. People can watch BBC channels all around the world, and its popular TV programmes, like reality show *Strictly Come Dancing* and car programme *Top Gear* have versions in many different countries. Other popular BBC shows include costume drama series *Cranford*, the wildlife documentary *Frozen Planet*, and *EastEnders*, Britain's favourite soap opera.

F What next?

The BBC is popular partly because it has no advertising. Instead, it gets its money from the licence fees that everyone with a television in Britain has to pay. However, some families now have hundreds of cable channels and rarely watch BBC programmes. Other viewers watch shows on iPlayer, the BBC's internet-based TV service for which no TV licence is required. There are people who feel that the system is unfair and needs to change. However, even its strongest critics agree that the BBC will continue to play a central role in the British media in the future.



Question tags

- 5 **2.24** Question tags are short questions at the end of statements. Match statements 1–8 to question tags a–h. Then listen and check.
- Top Gear* is on TV now,
 - Soap operas have become very silly,
 - The programme won't last long,
 - You love *EastEnders*,
 - There are more than a hundred channels in Britain,
 - We can't watch cable channels,
 - Scarlett Johansson stars in lots of great films,
 - Daniel Radcliffe started his career in a BBC costume drama,
- doesn't she?
 - will it?
 - didn't he?
 - don't you?
 - isn't it?
 - haven't they?
 - aren't there?
 - can we?
- 6 Study the questions in exercise 5 and choose the correct words to complete the rules.

- In question tags, we repeat the auxiliary / main verb from the statement and add a pronoun, e.g. *I, he, we*. If there is no auxiliary, we use *do, does* (present simple) or *did* (past simple).
- A positive statement has a positive / negative question tag.
- A negative statement has a positive / negative question tag.

- 7 **2.25** Read the information about intonation in question tags. Then listen and repeat.

We use **rising intonation** when we are unsure about what we are saying and we want the other person to confirm if we are right or not.

You'll watch the programme, won't you?

We use **falling intonation** when we are sure about what we are saying and want the other person to agree.

This show's fantastic, isn't it?

Reference and practice 9.2

Workbook page 121

- 8 **2.24** Listen to the sentences in exercise 5 again and repeat. Which sentences have rising intonation ↗? Which ones have falling intonation ↘?
- 9 Complete the question tags.
- He's really good-looking,?
 - She hasn't got a boyfriend,?
 - The film starts at six,?
 - You aren't going to film club,?
 - You can watch it on iPlayer tomorrow,?
 - They were on a reality show,?
 - They did very well in the competition,?

- 10 **SPEAKING** Choose five sentences in exercise 9 and replace the pronouns with the names of people you know. Choose rising or falling intonation for the question tags. Then work in pairs and practise saying the sentences.

9E ■ Writing A film review

- 1 SPEAKING** What do you think are the most important elements of a great film? Study the list. Put the elements in order from 1 to 10 (1 = the most important, 10 = the least important).
- the action scenes ■ the plot ■ the costumes ■ the soundtrack ■ the script ■ the cast
 - the characters ■ the locations ■ the special effects ■ a happy ending
- 2** Read the film review on page 117 and answer the questions.
- 1 What is the title and genre of the film?
 - 2 Who is the director?
 - 3 Who are the main characters?
 - 4 Which of the things in exercise 1 does the review mention? Which does it praise and which does it criticize?
 - 5 What are the reviewer's main reasons for liking or disliking the film?
 - 6 What details and examples does the reviewer include to justify their opinions?
 - 7 On balance, is it a positive or a negative review?

STRATEGY**Writing endings**

Many writers finish their reviews by just stating an opinion of the film or giving a recommendation. If you want to make your review more memorable, try to finish it in an interesting way. For example, use:

- 1 a quote (you can find quotes online).
- 2 a memory of the film that will stay with you for a long time.
- 3 a rhetorical question (a question that doesn't expect an answer).
- 4 a prediction.

- 3** Read the strategy. Then read endings A–D and match them to points 1–4 in the strategy. Which endings are very positive? Which ones are not so positive? Which ones are negative?

- A There's only one thing to worry about: will every other superhero film be disappointing after you've seen *The Avengers*?
- B Most people in the cinema seemed to love this film, but I found myself agreeing with Thor: 'I thought humans were more evolved than this.'
- C If the rest of the summer's action films are as bad as this one, cinemas will have a lot of empty seats.
- D I forgot the plot of *The Avengers* as soon as I left the cinema, but the excitement that I felt in the action scenes will stay with me for a long time.

- 4** Read the film review again. In your opinion, which ending A–D would be the best replacement for the ending in the film review?

V Describing films

- 5** Study the highlighted adjectives in the film review. Which adjectives are positive? Which ones are negative?
- 6** Read the sentences and choose the best answers.
- 1 His acting was very **convincing** / **humorous**. I could really believe that he was in pain.
 - 2 It was a very **dull** / **impressive** film. I almost fell asleep.
 - 3 The music on the soundtrack was very **predictable** / **memorable**. I can't stop singing it.
 - 4 Nothing like that could ever happen in real life, but I enjoyed the film. It was very **convincing** / **entertaining**.
 - 5 There was a **spectacular** / **dull** car chase at the end. It was really exciting.
 - 6 Her achievement is especially **entertaining** / **impressive** because this is her first film.
 - 7 The plot is so **predictable** / **spectacular**. You can always guess what's going to happen next.
 - 8 The film has some very **memorable** / **humorous** moments. I laughed all the time.

DVD extra Pinewood Studios



Culture > Film > The Avengers



The Avengers is an action film by director Joss Whedon. It brings together several famous characters from the Marvel comic books, played by some well-known actors. Robert Downey Jr. stars as Iron Man, Chris Hemsworth as Thor, Chris Evans as Captain America and Scarlett Johansson as the Black Widow.

The plot is very **predictable**. There is a villain, of course: Thor's half-brother Loki. He wants to take control of Earth and has an army of aliens to help him. The Avengers must stop Loki's evil plans and save the planet. Each of the superheroes usually works alone, and they find that learning to work as a team isn't easy.

The characters and the relationships between them are **convincing** and more developed than in other action films. Their arguments and misunderstandings as they try to work together are very **entertaining**. The script is **humorous** and the dialogues are rarely **dull** – I have never laughed so much while watching an action film. The millionaire scientist Iron Man gets the funniest lines when he argues with old-fashioned Captain America, a World War II veteran. Of course, the special effects are very **impressive** and the action scenes are **spectacular**, especially the final battle when Loki and his aliens try to take over New York. But for me, the most **memorable** scenes are the funny ones.

To sum up, director Joss Whedon has created one of the best action films of the twenty-first century. *The Avengers* is a film that really does have something for everyone. Don't miss it!



WRITING GUIDE

- **Task** Write a review of a film that you have seen recently.

- **Ideas** Think about the film and answer the questions.

General information about the film

- What is the title and genre?
- Who is the director?
- Who are the main actors?

Plot

- Is it convincing?
- Is it easy to follow?
- Does it have any surprises?
- Does it have a good ending?
- Is the film too long or short?

Main characters

- Who are they?
- Are they interesting?
- Do the actors bring them to life well?

Script

- Is the dialogue funny or dull?
- Does it suit the film?

Other details

- Is there anything remarkable to say about the soundtrack, special effects, costumes, locations, stunts, etc.?

- **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Include general information about the film, such as its title, genre and director. Very briefly give your opinion of the film.

Paragraph 2: Summary of the film. Remember, don't reveal any plot twists. Just say, for example, that the plot has a lot of surprises.

Paragraph 3: Your opinion of the film, in detail. Give examples from the film to justify your opinion.

Paragraph 4: Summarize your opinion of the film. Try to finish the review in an interesting way.

- **Write** Write your review. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

- **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Have you used a variety of interesting adjectives?
- Have you included examples from the film to justify your opinion?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 9 Using a dictionary: easily-confused words

1 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- How many languages do you speak? What are they?
- Are you good at telling jokes? What is the funniest joke you have ever told someone?
- What is your favourite quote? Who said it?

STRATEGY

Understanding easily-confused words

Some English words have very similar meanings and are easy to confuse, such as *say*, *speak*, *talk* and *tell*. All four words mean that a person is using their voice to produce speech. However, there are differences in grammar and collocation.

If you are not sure which word to use, look it up in a dictionary. Example sentences, **HELP** and information boxes show you how to use the word correctly.

say¹ /seɪ/ verb [T] (says /sez/; pt, pp said /sed/)
 > **SPEAK** **1** say sth (to sb); say that ...; say sth (about sb) to speak or tell sb sth, using words: 'Please come back,' she said. ♦ I said goodbye to her at the station. ♦ We can ask him, but I'm sure he'll say no. ♦ The teacher said we should hand in our essays on Friday. ♦ He said to his mother that he would phone back later. ♦ They just sat there without saying anything.

speak /spi:k/ verb (pt spoke /spəʊk/; pp spoken /spəʊkən/) **1** [I] speak (to sb) (about sb/sth); speak (of sth) to talk or say things: I'd like to speak to the manager, please. ♦ Could you speak more slowly? ♦ I was so angry I could hardly speak.

HELP Speak or talk? Speak and talk have almost the same meaning but we use talk more informally, to show that two or more people are having a conversation, and speak to show that only one person is saying something, especially in a formal situation: I'd like to speak to the manager, please. ♦ We talked all night. ♦ The head teacher spoke to the class about university courses.

2 [I,T] [not used in the continuous tenses] to know and be able to use a language: Does anyone here speak German? ♦ She speaks (in) Greek to her parents. ♦ a French-speaking guide **3** [I] speak (on/about sth) to make a speech to a group of people: Professor Hurst has been invited to speak on American foreign policy.

tell /tel/ verb (pt, pp told /təʊld/)
 > **GIVE INFORMATION** **1** [T] tell sb (sth/that ...); tell sb (about sth); tell sth to sb to give information to sb by speaking or writing: She told me her address but I've forgotten it. ♦ He wrote to tell me that his mother had died. ♦ Tell us about your holiday. ♦ to tell the truth/a lie ♦ to tell a story ♦ Excuse me, could you tell me where the station is? ♦ He tells that story to everyone he sees. ⚡ note at say **2** [T] (used about a thing) to give information to sb: This book will tell you all you need to know.
 > **SECRET** **3** [I] to not keep a secret: Promise you won't tell!
 > **ORDER** **4** [T] tell sb to do sth to order or advise sb to do sth: The policewoman told us to get out of the car.

HELP Say or tell? Say is often used with the actual words that were spoken or before that in reported speech: 'I'll catch the 9 o'clock train,' he said. ♦ He said that he would catch the 9 o'clock train. Notice that you say something to somebody: He said to me that he would catch the 9 o'clock train. Tell is always followed by a noun or pronoun, showing who you were speaking to: He told me that he would catch the 9 o'clock train. Tell, not say, can also be used when you are talking about giving orders or advice: I told them to hurry up. ♦ She's always telling me what I ought to do.

2 Read the strategy. Then study the dictionary entries and choose the correct verb to complete the pairs of sentences below.

- is saying or is telling?
 - The teacher something.
 - The teacher John something.
- is speaking or is talking?
 - The teacher to John about the football match.
 - The teacher to the students' parents at a meeting.
- speaks or is telling?
 - The teacher John to close the door.
 - The teacher four languages.
- said or told?
 - The teacher that this was important.
 - The teacher John that this was important.
- said or spoke?
 - The teacher quietly.
 - The teacher goodbye.

3 Study the dictionary entries and read the sentences in exercise 2 again. Then answer the questions.

- Which two verbs can be used to report someone else's words?
- Which verb is always followed by a noun or a pronoun?
- Which verb can be used to give orders and instructions?
- Which verb shows that two or more people are having an informal conversation?
- Which verb shows that one person is communicating with a group of people in a formal situation?
- Which verb collocates with the following nouns: truth, lie, story and joke?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of say, speak, talk or tell.

- He's lived in Japan for six years but he still can't Japanese.
- When I was a child, my grandmother used to me stories at bedtime.
- He that he was leaving. Then he walked out of the house.
- We invited Mr Jones to at the conference next week.
- Please John that I'll be back at five o'clock.
- I was to my mum on the phone when they came.

5 Find the groups of words below in a dictionary and compare the way they are used. Think about meaning, grammar and collocation.

- look, watch and see
- hear and listen
- study and learn

Vocabulary

1 Complete the text with nouns related to the press.

The most popular newspaper in the UK is *The Sun*. It is a ¹..... newspaper which publishes less serious news stories. You cannot fail to notice *The Sun* because there's always a huge photograph on the ²..... . The picture is always accompanied by dramatic ³..... in big letters which attract attention to the story.

Another popular newspaper is *The Daily Telegraph*. This newspaper is a ⁴..... and its format is much bigger than *The Sun*. The ⁵..... in *The Daily Telegraph* are usually longer and the ⁶....., who decides which stories to include in the newspaper, always selects more serious topics.

Marks / 6

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs below.

■ confirm ■ gather ■ interview ■ investigate ■ report

- Journalists information from different sources.
- Journalists are contacting the police to a story about a robbery in the high street.
- They often make appointments to people.
- Some journalists came to our town yesterday to an event. There had been a storm and many trees had fallen onto the main road.
- They have to facts they find on the internet.

Marks / 5

3 Match the words below to definitions 1–6.

■ blockbuster ■ cast ■ crew ■ script ■ soundtrack

- the music from a film:
- all the actors in a film:
- the written form of a film:
- the technical people who make a film:
- a very popular and successful film:

Marks / 5

4 Match the words in A to the words in B to make TV programmes. Then complete the sentences.

A ■ chat ■ sit ■ soap ■ weather ■ wildlife

B ■ com ■ documentary ■ forecast ■ opera ■ show

- Did you see the about pandas?
- There were some great guests on that
- That is about the relationship between the residents of a neighbourhood in London.
- They said on the that it wouldn't rain.
- I love that because it always makes me laugh.

Marks / 5

Grammar

5 Rewrite the sentences as reported speech.

- 'I'm reading an online survey about multitasking.'
Sam said
- 'I send twenty text messages every day.'
Molly told me
- 'I went to the cinema with a friend.'
Ann said
- 'I've had my computer for two years.'
Julie said
- 'I'll phone you later.'
Mark told me
- 'I haven't made any mistakes.'
Sonya told them
- 'I'm chatting to a friend.'
Terry said
- 'I find it hard to concentrate.'
Lydia told us

Marks / 8

6 Complete the sentences with *said* or *told*.

- Maria that she didn't want to watch a DVD.
- Hans me that he'd bought a new computer.
- You the teacher that you weren't feeling well.
- I that I'd text you later.
- We that we hadn't gone out.
- Heidi us that she was getting a laptop.

Marks / 6

7 Complete the question tags in the dialogue.

- Mia** There's a film on later, ¹.....?
- Jon** Yes, it's *The Tree of Life*. You don't want to watch it, ².....?
- Mia** I'd like to, if that's OK with you. The match you're watching will be over soon, ³.....?
- Jon** Yes, there are only ten minutes left. The film starts at 6.30, ⁴.....?
- Mia** Yes. Do you know anything about *The Tree of Life*? Terrence Malick is the director, ⁵.....?
- Jon** That's right. We haven't seen anything by him before, ⁶.....?
- Mia** I think we have. He directed *The Thin Red Line*, ⁷.....?
- Jon** Really? That wasn't the film we saw last week, ⁸.....?
- Mia** Yes, it was. I didn't really like it. His films are usually a bit strange, ⁹.....?
- Jon** *The Thin Red Line* certainly was! Oh well, if we don't like this film, we can watch something else, ¹⁰.....?

Marks / 10

Total / 45

10

Made in ...

Reading and vocabulary Make a difference

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 How many T-shirts have you got? Which is your favourite?
- 2 Did you buy it new or second-hand?
- 3 Do you know where it was made?

STRATEGY

Understanding the purpose of a text

The title, layout and photos can help you predict the content of a text. To understand its purpose, you need to read the introduction and the conclusion. Is the main purpose to entertain, persuade, give information or give advice?

2 Read the strategy. Then read the introduction and conclusion of the text and choose the correct answers.

- 1 What type of text is it?
 - a a magazine article b a report c a leaflet
- 2 Who is it written for?
 - a young men b teenagers c shop owners
- 3 What is its main purpose?
 - a To explain why people buy second-hand clothes.
 - b To give information about environmental problems.
 - c To encourage readers to change their habits.

3 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Why are the clothes called 'mitumba'?
 - a Because they make people's dreams come true.
 - b Because Africans think they come from dead people.
 - c Because they are cheap second-hand clothes.
- 2 Why do Africans like Western clothes?
 - a Because they are not expensive.
 - b Because only rich people wear them.
 - c Because everyone looks the same in them.
- 3 Why does Roshan work long hours?
 - a Because he's paid very well.
 - b Because he has to help his family.
 - c Because he only works one day a week.
- 4 Which sentence best describes people in the discount clothes shop?
 - a They buy a lot of expensive new clothes.
 - b They often know where clothes are made.
 - c They don't pay much for the clothes.
- 5 Why doesn't the young man buy the T-shirt from Yaba market?
 - a Because it's the wrong size.
 - b Because he hasn't got enough money.
 - c Because the charity shop is cheaper.
- 6 According to the writer, shoppers ...
 - a don't care how T-shirts are made.
 - b can't stop sweatshops.
 - c could change the T-shirt's story.

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Is it important to know where the clothes you buy come from? Why / why not?

The story of your T-shirt

Lagos, Nigeria – Yaba market is busy, hot and dusty. People are **looking around** the second-hand shops, picking through piles of old clothes, and they're all hoping for bargains. The clothes for sale are from America and Europe and they usually **sell out** fairly quickly. They are called 'mitumba' or 'dead white men's clothes' – people in Africa can't believe that a living person has thrown these clothes away. 'These clothes make people's dreams come true,' says Abeke, a shop owner. 'Everyone wears them, from poor people to politicians. When they **put them on**, you can't tell the difference between rich and poor.' At the front of Abeke's store is a plain cotton T-shirt with the slogan 'Get Real'. It's **picked up** by a young man who examines it carefully. He **tries it on** and smiles – it fits him and it looks good. It's a simple T-shirt, but it has a complex story.

A few years ago, the T-shirt started life in a cotton field in Uzbekistan. The cotton was watered every day and harmful pesticides were used in the field. As the cotton grew, a young woman called Feruza picked it. She worked in the field for ten to twelve hours every day in temperatures of over 30°C, but she was paid very little. Sometimes the pesticides hurt her eyes.

Next, the cotton was flown to India. The T-shirt was made in a tiny sweatshop in Mumbai.

There were twenty adults in the shop, five children and no air conditioning. The adults made the T-shirts and the children checked them. Ten-year-old Roshan checked our T-shirt that day. Although he worked long hours (from 6 a.m. to 4 p.m.), he was only paid a few rupees, but it helped to buy food for his family.



Vocabulary: phrasal verbs: buying and selling clothes; compound nouns; environment; adjective suffixes: -ful and -less
Grammar: the passive: present, past and future simple, present perfect

Speaking: discussing social and environmental issues, and the origin of everyday objects; persuading; agreeing and disagreeing
Writing: describing a process

The finished T-shirt was sent to a huge discount shop in the UK. The people who shopped there didn't know where the clothes came from. They didn't want to spend a lot of money, but they wanted to be fashionable and to look good. The T-shirt was cheap and it was bought by fifteen-year-old Ryan who liked the slogan. It was washed, worn and ironed and, after a few months, Ryan threw it away. His mum took it to a charity shop with some other old clothes, which were sold to an export company. A few weeks later, the T-shirt made its way to Yaba market in Nigeria.

Back at the market, the young man takes off the T-shirt and looks at the \$3 price tag. He offers Abeke \$1.50 because that's all the money he's got. Abeke shakes her head. As she hangs up the T-shirt at the front of the shop, the charity shop's price tag is still on the back: 25p.

The journey of a T-shirt tells many stories. Stories about people, countries and cultures. Stories about farmers and factory workers. Stories about sweatshops and shopping centres. But most of all, it's a story about choices, and our choices can make a difference. Do you really need another T-shirt? Do you care where it's from? What's the cost to the environment? What's the human cost? Think about it, because our choices could start a new story.



Did you know?

- Ten thousand litres of water are used to make one T-shirt.
- A 200-gram T-shirt can use up to 5 tonnes of resources.
- 3.4 billion T-shirts are sold in the USA every year.
- Children as young as seven work in cotton fields and sweatshops.



V insight Phrasal verbs: buying and selling clothes

5 Match the highlighted phrasal verbs in the text to definitions 1-7.

- 1 to dress yourself in something
- 2 to put on clothes to see if they fit
- 3 to hold and lift something
- 4 to put something on a hook
- 5 to sell everything and have nothing left
- 6 to explore different choices or possibilities
- 7 to remove clothes

6 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in exercise 5.

Ryan Can I have a new T-shirt, Mum?
Mum You threw away some T-shirts last week, Ryan.
Ryan But they were too small for me. I need a new one.
Mum OK, let's ¹ and see what they have, but I'm not spending a lot of money.
Ryan I like this one.
Mum Why don't you ² it to see if it fits? That's back-to-front, Ryan. ³ it the right way.
Ryan It's too small, anyway.
Mum OK, ⁴ it and I'll ⁵ it for you.
Ryan Hey, this one's cool, but they've ⁶ of my size.
Mum Isn't that a medium size over there? Come on, ⁷ it and put it in the basket. Let's go ...

V insight Compound nouns

7 Complete the compound nouns. Then check your answers in the text. How is each of these things related to the T-shirt in Abeke's shop?

- 1 shop: a place that sells things which aren't new
- 2 cotton: a place outdoors where people grow cotton
- 3 shop: a place where people work in poor conditions and for very little money
- 4 air: a system for making rooms cooler
- 5 company: it takes things from one country and sells them in another country
- 6 price: a label on clothes that tells you how much they cost
- 7 worker: someone who makes things, usually with a machine
- 8 shop: a place that sells new things at reduced prices

8 SPEAKING Work in groups. How can you change the T-shirt's story? Study the suggested actions below. Put them in order from 1-7 (1 = will make a big difference, 7 = won't make much difference). Compare your ideas as a class.

- Don't buy cotton T-shirts.
- Buy T-shirts that don't use sweatshop labour.
- Send an email to big clothing companies.
- Sign a petition.
- Recycle your old T-shirts.
- Join a peaceful protest.
- Design an information leaflet.

10B ■ Grammar and listening Where does it come from?



1 SPEAKING Look at photos A–F. Which of these things do you use? Where do you think they originally came from? Match the items to the countries.

- the USA ■ Denmark ■ China ■ Italy ■ Germany ■ Taiwan

2 Read the text and compare your ideas in exercise 1.

Simon's Day, Part 1

The alarm clock goes off at 7 a.m. and Simon wakes up and kicks off his duvet. Duvets **were first sold** in the UK in the 1960s. They came from Scandinavian countries like Denmark. The alarm clock **was invented** by an American called Levi Hutchins in 1787. But Simon's clock **isn't made** in America – it's made in Taiwan.

Simon quickly gets dressed, then he puts his football kit and trainers into his sports bag. When **were** trainers first **used**? In 1907, by American basketball players. Today, 100 million pairs of trainers **are sold** in the UK every year.

Next, Simon goes to the bathroom and cleans his teeth with a toothbrush. The first toothbrushes **were made** by the Chinese in 1498. They used horsehair back then!

Simon listens to the radio while he is having breakfast. The radio **was invented** by an Italian called Guglielmo Marconi. The first broadcast took place in 1906.

While Simon is listening to his favourite programme, his dad is reading the newspaper. The first newspaper **was printed** in Germany in 1605. Today, many newspapers are on the internet and some **aren't printed** at all.



The passive: present simple and past simple

3 Study the two sentences below and answer the questions.

Active: *Levi Hutchins invented the alarm clock.*

Passive: *The alarm clock was invented by Levi Hutchins.*

- 1 Do the sentences have the same meaning?
- 2 Which sentence is about the person who did the action?
- 3 Which sentence is about the result of the action?
- 4 Which sentence is used in the text? Why?

4 Study the highlighted verbs in the text. Which sentences are in the present tense and which are in the past tense? Complete the rules about the passive.

- a To form the passive, we use the verb in the correct form and the past participle of the main verb.
- b For the simple passive, we use *am / is / are* and the past participle.
- c For the simple passive, we use *was / were* and the past participle.
- d When we want to say who does or did the action, we use the preposition *by*.

Reference and practice 10.1 Workbook page 122

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the present or past simple passive.

- When the safety pin (invent)?
The safety pin (invent) by an American called Walter Hunt in 1849.
- When ballpoint pens first (use)?
Ballpoint pens first (use) in 1938. They (invent) by László Bíró.
- Computers (develop) by John Atanasoff in the USA. But where they (make) today?
Most computers (made) in factories in China.

6 Complete the text. Use the active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

Simon's Day, Part 2

By now it's 8.30 a.m., so Simon checks his mobile phone for text messages. The first mobile phones ¹ (invent) by Martin Cooper in 1973, in the USA. They were big and heavy and people ² (pay) \$10,000 for one. Imagine that!

Simon grabs his school bag, puts some chewing gum in his mouth and runs out of the door. Chewing gum ³ (enjoy) by the Aztecs in South America thousands of years ago. They ⁴ (use) it to freshen their breath. It ⁵ (still use) for the same thing today. Simon shouts goodbye to his mum, then he ⁶ (take) his BMX mountain bike out of the garage. Most mountain bikes ⁷ (make) in China now, but they ⁸ (not invent) there. The first mountain bike ⁹ (build) by an American cyclist called Joe Breeze in the 1970s. Simon ¹⁰ (ride) his bike fast, so he gets to school on time!

The passive: present perfect

- 7**  **2.26** Look at these facts about an everyday item. What do you think it is? Complete the title, then listen to the dialogue and check your answer.

**How much
do you
know about**



- It has been used by people for thousands of years.
- It is made from trees.
- Last year, 5.6 million km of it was sold in the USA.
- It hasn't been sold in Singapore since the 1990s.
- It has been banned in some schools.

Has it been banned in your school?

- 8 Study the sentences in exercise 7. Are they active or passive? What tense are they? Find examples of the following tenses:**

- present perfect affirmative
- present perfect negative
- present perfect question

Reference and practice 10.2 Workbook page 123

- 9 Write sentences using the present perfect passive.**

- 'chocolate / eat / for hundreds of years?' 'No, it hasn't. It / eat / for thousands of years.'
- 'How long / fizzy drinks / be / enjoy / by people?' 'They / be / enjoy / by people / since 1767!'
- 'Which / sweet / sell / in shops since 1908?' 'Lollipops / sell / in shops / since then.'

- 10 SPEAKING** Complete the questions about the everyday item in exercise 7. Then answer with a partner.

- it (use) by the Aztecs?
- it (recommend) by dentists today?
- How many flavours (develop) since 1848?
- When it first (sell) in a vending machine?
- an eco-friendly version (develop) recently?

1 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- 1 Do you own a mobile phone? How long have you had it?
- 2 Where was it made? What is it made of?
- 3 Read the leaflet. What is it about?

2 2.27 Listen to the radio programme and complete the leaflet.

V Environment

3 Match 1-8 to A-H to make sentences. Then study the highlighted verbs. Which of them are phrasal verbs?

- 1 Why do people **cut down**
- 2 What other activities might
- 3 In what ways can we **protect**
- 4 How will people in the mines **survive**
- 5 In what ways can we **reduce**
- 6 What will happen when we **use up**
- 7 Do you **support** any
- 8 Have you ever recycled

- A all the coltan?
- B trees in the Congo?
- C our damage to the environment?
- D environmental charities?
- E and **conserve** the rainforest?
- F if we close them and **ban** coltan?
- G an old phone for cash?
- H **destroy** the rainforest?

4 SPEAKING Work in groups. Answer the questions in exercise 3. Then discuss the question about mobile phones below.

If mobile phones are banned, the world will be a better place. Do you agree?

- 1 Brainstorm ideas.
 - What are the pros of mobile phones? Think about: what you use them for, the people who make and sell them.
 - What are the cons? Think about: the impact on the environment, the negative impact on people.
- 2 Decide if there are more pros or cons, then try to reach a conclusion.

It'll be good if they are banned because ...

It'll be awful if they are banned because ...



BLOOD PHONES

THE PROBLEM

Mobile phones are made from many different materials. One important material is a ¹ called coltan.

Coltan is used to store energy in mobile phones and other electronic devices, like computers and ²

³ of the world's coltan comes from mines in the Congo.

⁴ sometimes work in the mines, in terrible conditions.

The mines are destroying the ⁵ and the wildlife, too.

The gorilla population in the rainforest has been reduced by ⁶

The mines also pay for a ⁷ in the Congo.

WHAT YOU CAN DO

Send ⁸ to electronics companies, sign online petitions, post comments on social media sites and support charities.

Buy a ⁹ phone, not a new one.

¹⁰ your old phone.



Persuading, agreeing and disagreeing

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Read the review of a TV programme and complete the sentences.

- 1 *Blood, Sweat and T-shirts* is a
- 2 It explores
- 3 The students in the programme
- 4 I think it sounds

Blood, Sweat and T-shirts

New documentary series about how our clothes are made. A group of British students travel to India and see what it's like to live and work in an Indian clothes factory. After a month, they realize that workers in India pay a high price for cheap clothes in the UK. For the first time, we get to see how our clothes are really made.



6 2.28 Listen to the dialogue. What is the boy watching? What does the girl want to watch? What do they decide in the end?

7 2.28 Complete the phrases from the dialogue. Then listen again and check.

Persuading

I think you'll ¹..... it.
You ²..... be disappointed.

Agreeing

I suppose so.
I know what you ³.....
I really ⁴..... mind.

Disagreeing

I don't ⁵..... so.
I'm not ⁶..... about that.

8 2.29 Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- **Jack** Come on, Evie! You've got nothing to lose – I'll help you with your homework.
- **Evie** Perhaps you're right. I use the park, too. I'll miss the skatepark there!
- **Jack** Hey, have you heard the news about the park? It's been closed because the council are building a shopping centre. There's a protest about it on Saturday.
- **Evie** OK, good idea.
- **Jack** You know, we really should support the protest and go along.
- **Evie** I can't, Jack. I've got homework to do on Saturday.
- **Jack** Yes, no problem. Let's sign the online petition, too. You'll be glad you did.
- **Evie** Will you? Are you sure?
- **Jack** Sorry, Evie, I don't agree. I think it will make a difference. People feel strongly about it.
- **Evie** That's awful, but I don't think a protest will change anything.

9 Read the dialogue again. Underline more ways of persuading, agreeing and disagreeing.

10 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Read the instructions and prepare dialogues. Use the dialogue in exercise 8 to help you.

Student A

There is a talk after school about recycling. You're really interested, but you don't want to go on your own. Your friend has to work on a school project that evening, but you really want them to join you. Persuade them.

Student B

There is a sci-fi movie on at the cinema about the future of our planet. You want to see it, but your friend isn't interested. The tickets are expensive and your friend doesn't like sci-fi movies. Persuade them to go.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. How much do you know about the internet search engine Google? Do the quiz with your partner. Then read the text and check your answers.

1 Google is a British invention.
a true
b false

2 It was invented by two students.
a true
b false

3 Google Earth was first used in 1995.
a true
b false

4 Only forty-two people have travelled into space.
a true
b false

5 Google Earth Outreach wants to map the world.
a true
b false

- 2 Read the introduction and the conclusion of the text again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What type of text is it?
- 2 Who do you think it is written for?
- 3 What is its main purpose?

- 3 Match summaries 1–5 to paragraphs A–D. There is one summary that you do not need.

- 1 People have been helped to understand the global problems that our planet faces.
- 2 Nowadays we can go on virtual tours of places we would normally never visit.
- 3 Stories and global dialogues can help us protect our planet.
- 4 People in different countries have been given the power to help themselves.
- 5 Satellites have been exploring space and Earth for a long time.

- 4 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 Did you learn anything new about Google from the text? What did you find most interesting?
- 2 What do you use Google Earth for in your country? Do you use Google Earth Outreach?

V insight Adjective suffixes: *-ful* and *-less*

- 5 Study the highlighted words in the text and add suffixes to the words below. What do the suffixes mean? Which words do you think can be used with both suffixes?

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 thought..... | 5 hope..... |
| 2 use..... | 6 harm..... |
| 3 end..... | 7 help..... |
| 4 power..... | 8 success..... |

- 6 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Google is one of the most **powerful** / **powerless** search engines in the world.
- 2 Modern technology creates **successful** / **endless** opportunities for exploration.
- 3 People's **thoughtful** / **thoughtless** behaviour often damages the environment.
- 4 The factory created **harmful** / **harmless** pollution. It killed the fish in the river.
- 5 They should ban logging before the situation becomes **hopeful** / **hopeless**.
- 6 My mobile phone isn't working at the moment. It's **useful** / **useless**!
- 7 My brother fixed my computer, which was very **helpful** / **helpless**.

The big picture

We often talk about inventions that change the world. What we need now is an invention to save the world.

A

The Earth looks beautiful from space.

- 5 Twenty-four people have been lucky enough to see it from a space shuttle.

The rest of us have seen it on Google Earth. When Google Earth **'was released**

- 10 our planet. Suddenly, you could fly over mountains, trek through **endless** deserts and explore the depths of the oceans from the comfort of your home. Google's satellites or 'eyes in the sky' sent all these
15 images to our laptops. The whole world was at our fingertips.

B

Then, in 2007, Google Earth Outreach **'was born**. While Google Earth mapped the world, Outreach used the same
20 technology to try and change the world.

This technology has been a **powerful** tool for international environmental agencies, like UNEP, who use it to show deforestation, pollution and drought.

- 25 **Harmful** changes to our planet **'have been tracked** by UNEP on an interactive atlas. Global issues **'are presented** in a visual way, so it's easy for people to understand, and easier for them to
30 protest and ask for change.

C

Google Earth Outreach has been **useful** for local movements, too. The Surui are a tribe that live in a remote part of the Amazon. For years, they fought against

- 35 loggers there, trying to save the forest and their way of life. But the Surui had no support from the Brazilian government. Why? Because they couldn't provide proof



of the logging. It seemed a **hopeless** fight ... until their chief, Amir Narayamoga, heard about Google Earth Outreach. He contacted Google and the company was very **helpful**. The tribe **was provided** with GPS technology to track changes to the forest. It was very **successful**. When the destruction **was recorded** and posted on the internet, the government finally did something about it. Today, the Surui call Google *ragogmakan* or 'the messenger' because it helped them to tell their story and save their tribe from extinction.

D In the future, Google Earth Outreach **will be used** more and more to track global changes to our planet. It won't be difficult to see the effect our lifestyles and **thoughtless** habits have on the environment. And, as more people use it, more local stories **will be told** to hundreds of millions of people. 'Technology is a dialogue,' says chief Amir, 'a dialogue between different people to create a better future.' He's right, of course, and he also knows that the Earth looks beautiful from space. Let's try and keep it that way.

Google facts

- Google is a popular search engine. It's used by over a billion people.
- It was created in the USA by two university students, Larry Page and Sergey Brin.
- The first version of Google Earth, called Earth Viewer, was developed in 2001. Today, the program is used for directions, to check holiday destinations and geotag important places. It's been downloaded more than 500 million times.
- The homepage of Google Earth Outreach says: 'You want to change the world. We want to help.'

The passive: future

7 Match verbs 1–8 in the article to tenses a–d. Are the sentences active or passive? Then complete the rule.

- a present simple
- b past simple
- c present perfect
- d future

To form the future passive, we use
..... and the past participle.

Reference and practice 10.3 Workbook page 123

8 Complete the text. Use the future active or passive, affirmative or negative.

Today, Google is the most popular search engine in the world, but in the future traditional search engines ¹..... (become) less and less popular. Why? Because typed words ²..... (not use) by people any more. Instead, pictures ³..... (take) and used to find out information. Imagine these scenarios:

- Museums. You want to find out about an exhibit. Take a picture with your phone and the information ⁴..... (appear) on the screen.
- Eating out. You're in a restaurant on holiday. Take a picture and the menu ⁵..... (translate). A review of the restaurant will also appear!
- Travel. You are lost. Take a picture of the street and a map with your location ⁶..... (show). A list of nearby shops with discounts ⁷..... (download) onto your phone, too.
- Social. You meet a new person at a party. Take a picture and their Facebook page ⁸..... (open up) on screen.

Some of these applications have already been developed, others ⁹..... (develop) soon. One thing is for sure: if you lose your phone now, it's a pain. If you lose it in the future when it does everything for you, it ¹⁰..... (be) a disaster!

9 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Which of the inventions in exercise 8 will be the most useful for people? Which do you think will be used the most? Give reasons.

Vocabulary bank Protest: verb phrases page 143

10E ■ Writing Describing a process



- 1 SPEAKING** Work in pairs. How much do you know about the life cycle of chocolate? Put the photos in the correct order. Then read description A and check your ideas.

STRATEGY**Checking your writing: spelling and punctuation**

When you have finished a writing task, always read it again and check the spelling and punctuation. Make sure you have used:

- a capital letters in proper nouns (names of people, places, etc.) and at the beginning of sentences.
- b full stops at the end of sentences and in abbreviations (e.g., *6 p.m.*); question marks at the end of questions.
- c commas to separate parts of sentences and items in a list.
- d apostrophes in contracted forms (*don't*, *aren't*) and in possessive forms (*my friend's house*).
- e hyphens in compound nouns and adjectives.
- f correct spelling. Use a dictionary and make a note of any words you misspell.

- 2** Read the strategy. Match errors 1–10 in description A to rules a–f in the strategy. Then correct the errors.

A

Chocolate was first created by ¹mayan Indians in Mexico about 2,000 years ago, but today it is eaten by people all over the world. The word 'chocolate' comes from the Aztec word *xocolatl*, which means 'bitter water'. ²dark chocolate can be ³bitter which is probably why 70% of people prefer milk chocolate. This description will look at how milk chocolate is produced.

First of all, the cocoa trees are grown in countries like Brazil, Ghana and ⁴Nigeria 450 grams of cocoa is made from one tree every year. The cocoa beans are cut down from the trees. Next, they are put on banana tree leaves and covered. This is when the chocolate ⁵flavor develops.

After a while, the beans are ⁶sundried, **then** they are packed into sacks. **Later** they are transported to chocolate ⁷factorys all over the world. Before they are made into chocolate, they're ⁸cleaned roasted and broken into small pieces. These pieces are made into a liquid and mixed with sugar and milk. **Last of all**, the chocolate is made into a chocolate bar and ⁹its ready to sell in shops. What happens ¹⁰next I think we all know!

3 Read sentences a–c. Find and correct one mistake in each sentence. Then match the sentences to gaps 1–3 in description B.

- a Recycling is very ecofriendly – one ton of paper saves seventeen trees.
 b Paper products make up 40% of our rubbish.
 c Most of these trees are grown in sustainable forests in places like Canada.

B Paper was first created in China in AD 105 using bark from a tree. Today, it's one of the world's most used inventions. In fact, the amount we use every five minutes could cover a country like the Netherlands. ¹..... Luckily, we recycle about 160 million tons every year. So let's look at the life cycle of this useful invention.

In the beginning, trees are cut down and combined with recycled paper. ²..... Next, the trees are made into logs and transported to a paper mill. There, they are made into wood pulp. **After that**, the pulp is turned into large rolls of paper, which are sent to factories in different countries. There, paper is used to make many products, including the daily newspapers and magazines that we all read.

The newspapers are sold in newsagents and other shops. Then, after they are read, they are put into recycling bins. ³..... Unfortunately, a lot of paper is thrown into rubbish bins, too, and ends up in a dump. But the recycled newspapers are made into wood pulp again. **In the end**, this pulp is mixed with new pulp from trees and made into large rolls of paper.

DVD extra How a paper mill works

Expressing sequence

4 Complete the table with the highlighted words in descriptions A and B.

First	Next	Finally
In the beginning, ...		

5 Write passive sentences about the life cycle of cotton. Then use the words in exercise 4 to link the sentences.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 the cotton plant / grow / farmers | 5 clothes / design / designer |
| 2 pick / workers / cotton field | 6 sell / department store |
| 3 deliver / trucks / cotton mill | 7 take / second-hand shop |
| 4 cotton fabric / make / factory workers | 8 recycle / recycling centre |

WRITING GUIDE

■ **Task** Read the task and check you understand it.

Choose an everyday product or invention and describe its life cycle.

■ **Ideas** Work in pairs. Follow the instructions.

- Decide which product or invention you are going to describe.
- Research your product or invention and make notes about it. Think about:
 - where it is made.
 - how it is made. Make notes on the different stages in the process.
 - who uses it and why.
- Find out some unusual or surprising facts about the product or invention to include in your description.

■ **Plan** Decide which ideas you are going to use and match them to these paragraphs.

Paragraph 1: Introduce the product, what people use it for today and when people started to use it in the past. Include some interesting facts.

Paragraphs 2 and 3: Describe how it is made, using linking words to show the different stages of the process.

■ **Write** Write your description. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

■ **Check** Check the following points.

- Are your ideas divided into paragraphs?
- Are the stages of the process in the correct order? Do the linking words make this clear?
- Have you checked spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Vocabulary insight 10 Word families

1 Work in pairs. Study the words below. What part of speech are they? Which five of the words can be more than one part of speech?

- hope ■ decide ■ harm ■ use ■ succeed ■ help
- compete ■ end

STRATEGY

Word families

A word family is a group of words that are related because they share the same base word (also called the 'root' word). Recording words in word families can help you to see the relationship between words and make it easier to learn them. For example:

succeed	verb
success	noun
successful	adjective
unsuccessful	adjective
successfully	adverb

2 Read the strategy above. Then study word families 1–3 below and match them to base words a–c. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- a use
- b excite
- c depend

1

.....	verb
.....ence	noun
.....ent	adjective
in.....ent	adjective
in.....ently	adverb

2

.....	verb
.....r	noun
.....ful	adjective
.....less	adjective

3

.....	verb
.....ment	noun
.....ed	adjective
.....ing	adjective
un.....ing	adjective
.....edly	adverb

3 Work in pairs. Write your own example sentences for the words in exercise 2.

Paper money was first used in China in the seventh century.
 Nothing excites me more than listening to rock music.
 I might not play football tomorrow – it depends on the weather.

STRATEGY

Prefixes and suffixes

The base word in a word family is usually a verb or a noun, and we can often create new words by adding prefixes and suffixes to it.

A suffix is a letter or a group of letters that we add at the end of a word. A prefix is a letter or a group of letters that we add at the beginning of a word.

Adding a suffix changes the meaning and the part of speech of the word, while the prefix only changes its meaning. For example:

- decide (verb) + *-ion* → decision (noun)
- decide (verb) + *-ive* → decisive (adjective)
- *in-* + decisive (adjective) → indecisive (adjective)
- decisive (adjective) + *-ly* → decisively (adverb)

Understanding base words, prefixes and suffixes will also help you with spelling because word families often share spelling patterns.

4 Read the strategy above. Think about the prefixes and suffixes you have learned in the Student's Book. Answer the questions. Then look at pages 42, 56, 57, 69, 95 and 126 to check your answers.

- 1 Is *im-* a prefix or a suffix?
- 2 How does *un-* change the meaning of a word?
- 3 What is the difference between *ir-* and *il-*?
- 4 What part of speech are many words ending in *-ment*, *-ion* and *-ence*?
- 5 What part of speech are many words ending in *-ful* and *-less*?
- 6 What is the difference between adjectives ending in *-ed* and adjectives ending in *-ing*?
- 7 What part of speech are many words ending in *-ly*?

5 Read the sentences and decide what part of speech the missing word is. Then complete the sentences with the words in brackets and prefixes or suffixes in exercise 4.

- 1 The film I saw last night was (amaze). You must see it!
- 2 It's (possible) to learn all the words in a language.
- 3 I've worked very hard so I'm (hope) that I'll do well in the exam.
- 4 I continued doing athletics because I got a lot of (encourage) from my family.
- 5 I was really (surprise) when they did that. I didn't expect it.
- 6 I don't understand the (differ) between 'on time' and 'in time'.
- 7 Do you know who won the dancing (compete) last night?
- 8 He's (happy) because his team lost the match.
- 9 (fortunate), it started to rain and we didn't have an umbrella.

Vocabulary

1 Complete the phrasal verbs in the sentences.

- It's better to on clothes before you buy them.
- You can up your jacket in the wardrobe.
- They off their shoes before they went in.
- We had some free time, so we around the shops.
- on a jumper if you're cold.
- I couldn't up my shopping bags because they were too heavy.

Marks / 6

2 Match the words in A to the words in B to make compound nouns. Then complete the sentences.

- A ■ air ■ cotton ■ export ■ factory ■ price
 B ■ companies ■ conditioning ■ fields ■ tag ■ workers

- This shirt hasn't got a
I don't know how much it is.
- In the past, slaves worked in the
of the USA.
- If you set the at 18°C instead of 24°C,
you'll cause less harm to the environment.
- often do quite repetitive jobs.
- have to spend a lot of
money on transport.

Marks / 5

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.

- cut down ■ destroy ■ protect ■ reduce ■ support
 ■ survive

It's becoming increasingly difficult for the Awá tribe to ¹..... in the Amazon rainforest. This is because men from the city ²..... trees illegally. British actor Colin Firth wants to help to ³..... the Awá people. That's why he ⁴..... a campaign to stop the men from ⁵..... the rainforest. He has made a short video which he hopes will ⁶..... the damage these men are doing to the environment. Let's hope he isn't too late.

Marks / 6

4 Complete the sentences with the adjective forms of the nouns in brackets.

- People who drop litter are (thought).
- This website is (use). It has some good advice.
- There are a lot of cars. The queue is (end).
- I'm (hope) that we can slow global warming.
- Rivers are often polluted by (harm) chemicals.
- Baby animals are (help) when they're born.

Marks / 6

Grammar

5 Complete the sentences with the present or past simple passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- Kimonos (wear) in Japan.
- Nylon (not make) from natural products.
- The clothes shop Zara (establish) in 1975 by a Spanish businessman.
- In the past, machines (not use) to make clothes.
- Expensive clothes (not sell) in discount shops.
- Kate Moss (not choose) as Model of the Year in 2012.
- A lot of cotton (grow) in Uzbekistan.
- Today, many clothes (buy) on the internet.

Marks / 8

6 Complete the text with the present perfect passive form of the verbs in brackets.

The bread used in pizza bases ¹..... (bake) in Italy for over 3,000 years. However, pizzas themselves ²..... (not make) in their current form for so long. It was the arrival of the tomato in Europe that made the difference. Tomatoes ³..... (use) to make pizzas since the late eighteenth century and the tomato ⁴..... (consider) one of the pizza's basic ingredients since then.

During the late nineteenth century, Italian immigrants took the pizza abroad. Pizzas ⁵..... (eat) in the USA since the Italians settled there. Soon pizza restaurants opened, and later the pizza delivery service was born. Pizzas ⁶..... (deliver) to customers in the USA for about fifty years now. Recently, a serving of pizza ⁷..... (declare) by US Congress to contain an adequate amount of vegetables. However, this declaration ⁸..... (not confirm) by nutrition experts yet.

Marks / 8

7 Rewrite the active sentences in the passive.

- People won't use maps in the future.
Maps
- Manufacturers will build cars with a GPS system.
Cars
- People won't need travel agencies.
Travel agencies
- Parents will plan family holidays online.
Family holidays
- Factories won't manufacture televisions any more.
Televisions
- Manufacturers will develop bigger computer screens.
Bigger computer screens

Marks / 6

Total / 45

Cumulative review Units 1–10

Listening

1  2.30 Read sentences 1–8 and underline the key words. Then listen to the radio programme about plastic bags. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Oil is used to make plastic bags.
- 2 Three billion plastic bags are produced each year.
- 3 Most of the plastic bags used in the UK are made in Asia.
- 4 The logos are printed on the bags in the UK.
- 5 About 30% of people use the bags again the next time they go shopping.
- 6 Plastic bags can't be recycled.
- 7 About 100,000 sea birds and animals die each year because of plastic bags.
- 8 Holly Winters thinks that plastic bags should be banned.

Speaking

2 Work in pairs. Choose one of the options below and role play a dialogue about plastic bags. Think about:

- the advantages and disadvantages of each option
- possible alternative solutions if your partner doesn't agree with you
- phrases that you can use to express and justify your opinions

Student A

You think that plastic bags should be banned completely.

Student B

You think that supermarkets should charge customers for plastic bags.

Reading

3 Scan the text quickly and answer the questions.

- 1 What type of text is it?
- 2 Who is it written for?
- 3 What is its main purpose?

4 Read the text again. Match sentences A–F to gaps 1–5 in the text. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- A However, there are also products which are not foods.
- B Fairtrade is a truly global movement.
- C The movement also makes sure that workers and their families are treated well by their employers.
- D There are other types of environmental movements, too.
- E Then they focus on the product itself.
- F They can be found on the shelf with other foods and drinks of the same type.

Changing lives the Fairtrade way



What is Fairtrade?

“ Fairtrade is an international movement which aims to help farmers and workers in developing countries. It does this by making sure that companies pay a fair price for the goods that the farmers produce. 1 It wants them to get the money they deserve for their work, so that their children can go to school. The farmers who join the Fairtrade movement also receive some extra money to use in their community. 10 Many of them use this money to pay for school books or health care for the workers' families. ”

How does Fairtrade work?

“ Fairtrade inspectors visit the farms and businesses to check that the working conditions are suitable. 2 They follow its route from the farm to the customer to make sure that fair prices are paid at each stage. When the inspectors are satisfied, the product is given a special label with the Fairtrade logo to show customers that it is 20 a Fairtrade product. In the UK, there are over 3,000 products that have the Fairtrade logo. ”



What kinds of Fairtrade products are available?

“ All Fairtrade products come from poor or developing countries. Many of the products are different kinds of food and drink, like tea and coffee, fruit, rice, nuts and spices. Some of the products contain Fairtrade ingredients, for example chocolate made with Fairtrade cocoa or cakes and biscuits made with Fairtrade sugar. These include clothing such as T-shirts made from Fairtrade cotton, and other items like footballs. ”

Where can I buy Fairtrade products?

“ In the UK, Fairtrade products are available in normal supermarkets and in some smaller stores, too. For example, the Fairtrade tea is in the same place as the other types of tea and the Fairtrade bananas are with the other types of fruit. There are also special Fairtrade stores in most big cities that have a wider selection of products. Some restaurants, cafés and bars sell Fairtrade products, too. They are also available online or by mail order. ”

Who is part of Fairtrade?

“ Today, seven million people in Africa, Asia and South America have a better life because of Fairtrade. You can buy Fairtrade products in more than twenty countries all over the world, including France, Germany, Spain, the UK, the USA, Japan and Australia. There are millions of people making Fairtrade products and millions of others enjoying them. What is more important, however, is that the movement is growing all the time. ”



Grammar and vocabulary

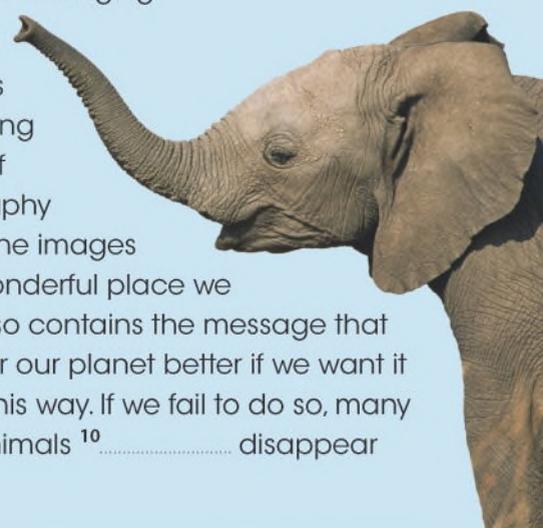
5 Complete the review. Write one word in each space.

Earth: a celebration of our planet

The film *Earth* is a wildlife documentary by directors Alastair Fothergill and Mark Linfield. In the film, we ¹ taken on an impressive tour of our planet from North to South. The stars are the animals and the action is set in the different regions ² they live.

Unlike other documentaries, *Earth* has a plot. But in this film, the plot has ³ designed by nature. We set ⁴ on our journey in spring. In the Arctic, a mother polar bear and her two cubs have ⁵ find enough food before the ice on which they live melts. Halfway around the world, an elephant mother and her calf are looking for water after crossing the Kalahari Desert together. And further south, a humpback whale mother ⁶ trying to keep her calf safe during their 6,000 km migration from the equator to Antarctica. Each of these families is fighting ⁷ survival in a world where the seasons are changing.

The most advanced film-making methods ⁸ used during the twenty months of filming. The photography is spectacular, and the images remind us what a wonderful place we live in. But the film also contains the message that we need to look after our planet better if we want it to carry ⁹ this way. If we fail to do so, many of these beautiful animals ¹⁰ disappear forever.



Writing

6 Write a review of a documentary you have seen recently. Include this information:

- the title of the documentary and when you saw it
- what your general opinion of the documentary is
- a general summary of the documentary
- examples to explain your opinion of the documentary
- a summary of your opinion and an interesting ending

Vocabulary bank 1

Routines

1 Match the verbs in A to the words in B to make daily routines.

A	B	A	B
go	ready	take	your phone
make	your teeth	comb	home
have	out	check	a sandwich
brush	breakfast	have	your hair
get	a drink	get	the bus

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in exercise 1.

Every morning, Hannah ¹ breakfast for herself and for her little sister. Then, she ² ready for school. Before she leaves, she ³ her teeth and ⁴ her hair. She always ⁵ her phone before she ⁶ out. She ⁷ the bus to school with a friend every day. At break time, she sometimes ⁸ a drink with her friend in the school café. She always ⁹ a sandwich for lunch. When she ¹⁰ home, she does her homework and watches TV with her sister.

3 Complete the questions with daily routines in exercise 1.

- 1 Do you after every meal?
- 2 Do you to school or do you walk?
- 3 How often do you for messages?
- 4 How often do you for lunch?
- 5 Do you usually do your homework as soon as you from school?
- 6 Do you ever in a café with your friends?
- 7 How long does it take you to for school?
- 8 Do you when it's wet or when it's dry?
- 9 Do you with your friends on Friday evenings?
- 10 Do you for all of your family in the morning?

4 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Answer the questions in exercise 3.

Free-time activities

1 Match photos 1–12 to the activities below.

- bake cakes ■ check out new bands ■ make jewellery
- do water sports ■ learn a language ■ read a novel
- organize a party ■ hang out with friends
- play adventure video games ■ watch DVDs
- support a team ■ use social networking sites



2 Answer the questions with activities in exercise 1.

- Which free-time activity do people usually do
- 1 at the beach?
 - 2 at a football stadium?
 - 3 on a console?
 - 4 in a classroom?
 - 5 on a laptop?
 - 6 in the kitchen?
 - 7 for a friend's birthday?
 - 8 at a music festival?
 - 9 in bed or in an armchair?
 - 10 on a plasma screen?
 - 11 on a table in your room?
 - 12 at the shops or in the café?

3 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Cover the words in exercise 1 and look at the photos. Ask and answer questions about the free-time activities.

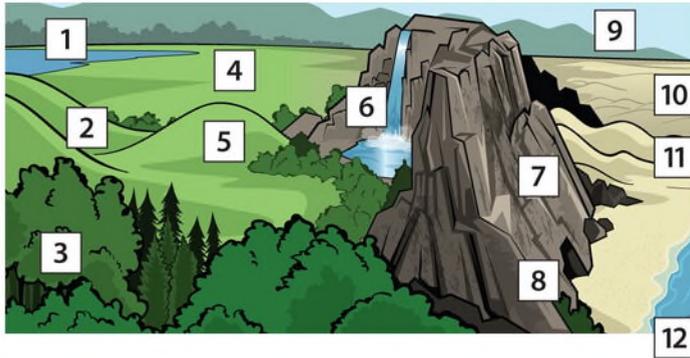
How often do you hang out with friends?

I hang out with friends every weekend.

Geographical features

1 Label the picture with the words below.

- cave ■ cliff ■ desert ■ forest ■ hill ■ lake ■ mountain
- plain ■ sand dune ■ sea ■ valley ■ waterfall



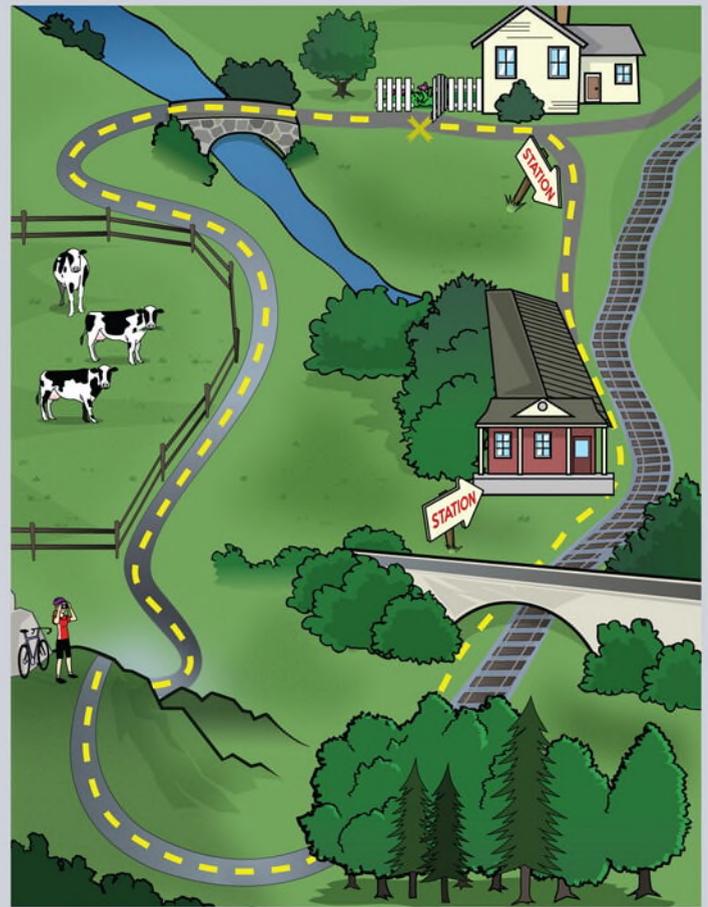
2 Match definitions 1-12 to the words in exercise 1.

- 1 an inland area of water
- 2 an area of land that is quite high
- 3 a high area of rock next to the sea
- 4 the low land between two mountains or hills which often has a river running through it
- 5 a river that falls from a high place
- 6 a large area of flat land with very few trees
- 7 a large area of land covered with trees
- 8 a hill of sand by the sea or in the desert
- 9 a large area of land with very little water and very few plants
- 10 a hole in the side of a hill or under the ground
- 11 an area of land that is very high
- 12 a very large area of water

3 Work in pairs. Think of a famous place for each of the geographical features in exercise 1. Then write a sentence explaining what it is and where it is.

The Sahara is a desert in the north of Africa.

2 Look at the map showing the route Heidi cycled yesterday to take some photos. Then complete the text with prepositions in exercise 1.

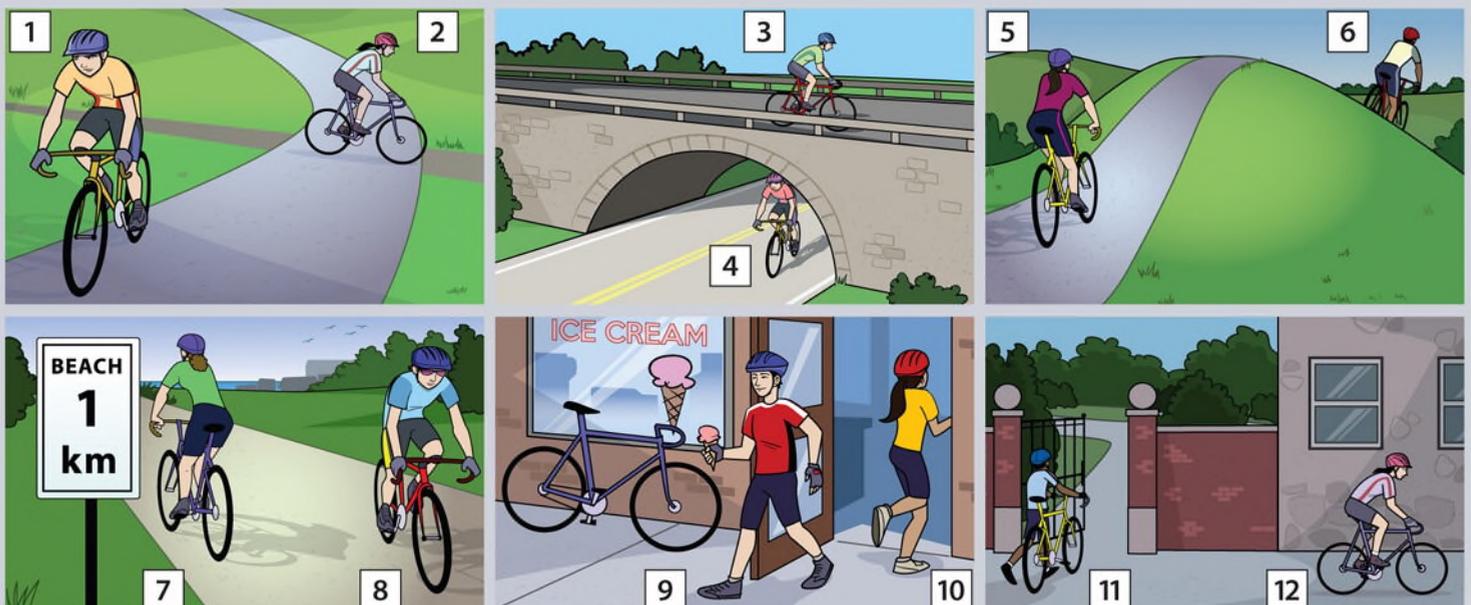


Heidi went ¹..... her garden and cycled ²..... the station. After she passed the station, she cycled ³..... the railway line and ⁴..... the station. Then, she went ⁵..... the bridge and ⁶..... the forest. After that, she cycled ⁷..... the mountain to take some photos. After she had a rest, Heidi cycled ⁸..... the mountain and ⁹..... a field, ¹⁰..... some cows. Then she went ¹¹..... the river and ¹²..... her garden again. When she got home, she posted her photos online for her friends to see.

Prepositions of movement

1 Match cyclists 1-12 to the prepositions below.

- across ■ along ■ away from ■ down ■ into ■ out of ■ over ■ past ■ through ■ towards ■ under ■ up



Vocabulary bank 3

Food and nutrition

1 Match definitions 1–10 to the words below.

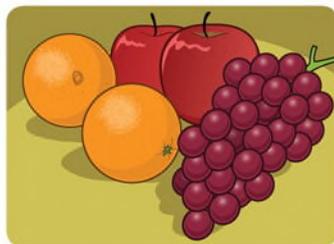
- additive ■ calorie ■ carbohydrates ■ fat ■ minerals
- nutrient ■ protein ■ salt ■ sugar ■ vitamins

- 1 a unit of energy contained in food
- 2 any substance that the body takes out of food to use
- 3 a substance that adds colour or flavour to food
- 4 a substance that is very sweet
- 5 substances like calcium, iron and magnesium
- 6 substances found in pasta and bread that give the body energy
- 7 a substance found in meat, fish and eggs that is important for helping people to grow and be healthy
- 8 a substance found in oil and butter
- 9 substances found in fruit and vegetables that help the body fight infection
- 10 a mineral used to make food taste better

2 Look at the pictures. What is the most important nutrient in these foods? Label the pictures with four of the words in exercise 1.



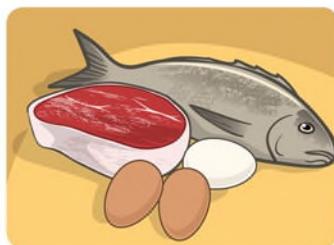
1



2



3



4

3 Complete the nutritional information about eggs with the words in exercise 1.

A medium egg contains about eighty ¹calories / salt, which means that it isn't very fattening. Eggs help our bodies grow and be healthy because they contain 13 grams of ²fat / protein. This ³nutrient / additive is also found in meat and fish. Eggs have a lot of important ⁴sugar / vitamins, including B₁₂ and D, and they also contain a lot of ⁵protein / calories, like calcium, iron and magnesium. We don't get much energy from eggs because they contain very few ⁶salt / carbohydrates. Although eggs contain 9.5 grams of ⁷fat / nutrient, doctors often recommend them to people who want to lose weight. Eggs aren't sweet because they have no ⁸minerals / sugar. Although they contain ⁹vitamins / salt, people often add more to make them taste better. The best thing about eggs is that they don't usually contain ¹⁰carbohydrates / additives that modify their colour or flavour.

Food adjectives

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Healthy food is **good** / bad for you.
- 2 **Everyone** / No one enjoys a delicious meal.
- 3 Raw vegetables are usually **hard** / soft.
- 4 You can keep frozen meat for a **long** / short time.
- 5 Spicy food has **little** / a lot of flavour.
- 6 Organic food is very **natural** / artificial.
- 7 The **best** / worst apples are sweet.
- 8 It's **easy** / difficult to eat a tough steak.

2 Rewrite the sentences in exercise 1 with the words below so that they have the opposite meaning.

- cooked ■ disgusting ■ fresh ■ plain ■ processed ■ sour
- tender ■ unhealthy

- 1 food is for you.
- 2 enjoys a meal.
- 3 vegetables are usually
- 4 You can keep meat for a time.
- 5 food has flavour.
- 6 food is very
- 7 The apples are
- 8 It's to eat a steak.

3 Complete the sentences with adjectives in exercises 1 and 2.

- 1 Most salads contain r..... vegetables.
- 2 Indian food is very s.....
- 3 Add some sugar if the fruit isn't s..... enough.
- 4 That fish is f..... – it was caught this morning.
- 5 Pizzas are u..... if you eat too many of them.
- 6 My steak was so t..... that I couldn't eat it.
- 7 We buy o..... food because it contains no additives.
- 8 Our meal was d..... We won't go back to that restaurant.
- 9 If you put too much vinegar in the salad, it will taste s.....
- 10 My favourite food is pasta. I think it's d.....

Houses and homes

1 Label photos 1–10 with the words below.

- block of flats ■ bungalow ■ caravan ■ castle ■ cottage
- detached house ■ mansion ■ semi-detached house
- tent ■ terraced house



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10

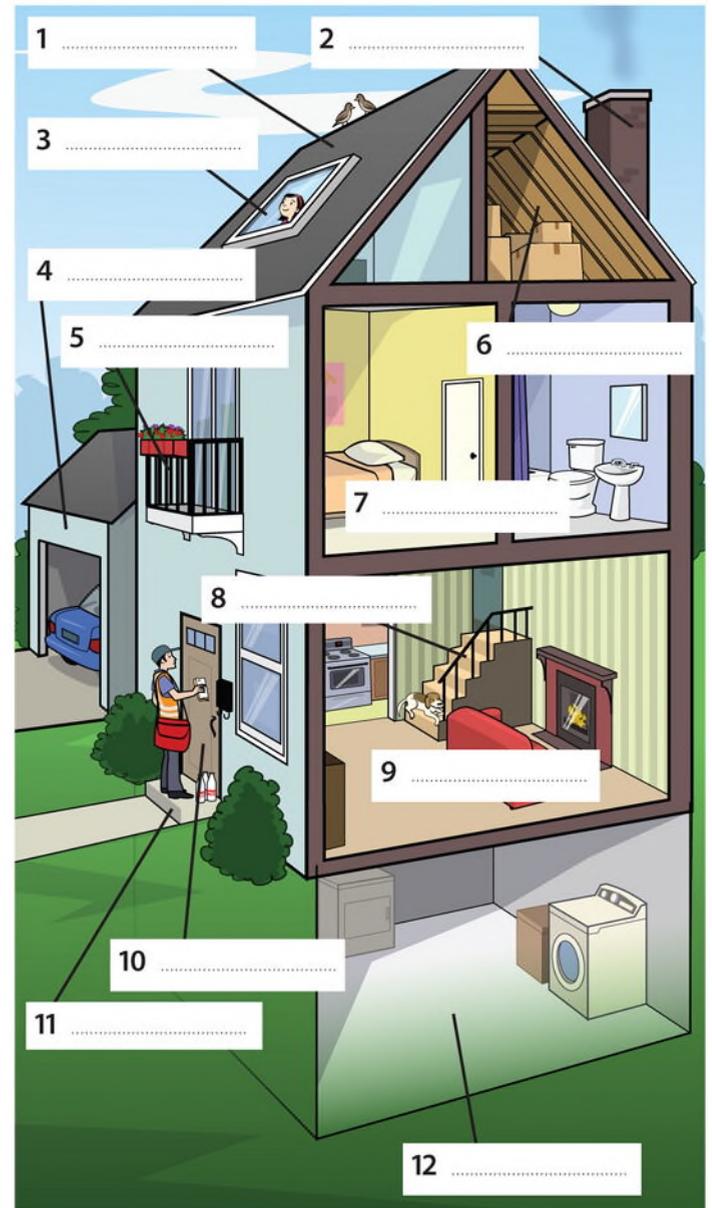
2 Complete the sentences with the words in exercise 1.

- 1 The was built to protect the city.
- 2 Our is in a line of similar houses that are all joined together.
- 3 We parked our and went to explore the area.
- 4 It didn't take long to put up our at the campsite.
- 5 The artist lives in a beautiful old in the country.
- 6 A lot of rich celebrities have bought luxurious in Beverly Hills.
- 7 The manager owns a with a big garden around it in a suburb of London.
- 8 A hasn't got stairs, so it's perfect for old people.
- 9 I live in a which has eighteen floors.
- 10 We live in a which shares a wall with the house next door.

Parts of a house

1 Label the picture with the words below.

- attic ■ balcony ■ cellar ■ chimney ■ downstairs
- front door ■ garage ■ roof ■ skylight ■ stairs ■ step
- upstairs



2 Answer the questions with words in exercise 1.

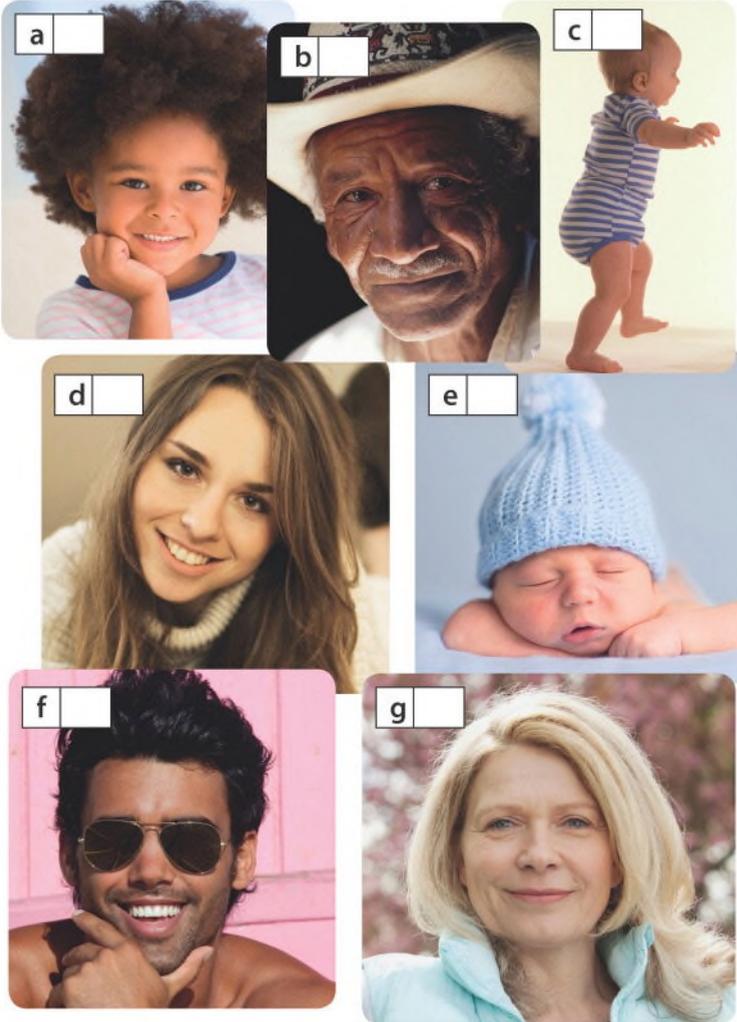
Where:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1 is the car? | In the |
| 2 are the flowers? | On the |
| 3 are the milk bottles? | On the |
| 4 is the smoke? | Coming out of the |
| 5 is the postman? | At the |
| 6 are the kitchen and the living room? | |
| 7 are the boxes? | In the |
| 8 are the birds? | On the |
| 9 is the girl? | Looking out of the |
| 10 is the dog? | On the |
| 11 is the washing machine? | In the |
| 12 are the bathroom and the bedroom? | |

Vocabulary bank 5

Generations

1 Put photos a–g in order from 1–7 (1 = youngest, 7 = oldest).



2 Label photos a–g in exercise 1 with the words and phrases below.

- a man in his twenties ■ a teenager ■ a child
- a baby ■ a toddler ■ a middle-aged woman
- an elderly man

3 Check the meaning of the words and phrases in bold in a dictionary. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 An **adult** is a person who is eighteen years old or older.
- 2 A middle-aged person is the same age as a **senior citizen**.
- 3 **Young person** and **adolescent** mean the same as teenager.
- 4 A person is middle aged when they're in their **forties**.
- 5 If you're in your **teens**, you're a child.

4 **SPEAKING** When do the following usually happen in a person's life? Use the words and phrases in exercises 2 and 3.

- go to university
- become a grandparent
- retire
- get married
- leave school
- have children
- be born
- start work
- learn to walk
- learn how to drive

Personality adjectives

1 Complete the definitions with the adjectives below.

- brave ■ funny ■ generous ■ honest ■ kind ■ lazy
- quiet ■ shy

- 1 A person who doesn't talk much is
- 2 A person who never does any work is
- 3 A person who does dangerous things without showing fear is
- 4 A person who feels nervous with new people is
- 5 A person who makes people laugh is
- 6 A person who likes giving presents is
- 7 A person who cares about other people and wants to help them is
- 8 A person who always tells the truth is

2 Match adjectives 1–8 to their antonyms in exercise 1.

- 1 dishonest
- 2 extroverted
- 3 hard-working
- 4 unkind
- 5 mean
- 6 serious
- 7 talkative
- 8 cowardly

3 Complete the sentences with adjectives in exercises 1 and 2.

- 1 Oliver is very He never does his homework.
- 2 My brother's a bit He never gives me anything for my birthday.
- 3 You're the most person I know. I've never seen you cheat.
- 4 I think people who go bungee jumping are really I'd be terrified!
- 5 Michelle's very She doesn't say a lot.
- 6 Our teacher's quite I've never seen him smile.
- 7 Jess is really She loves being with other people.
- 8 Thank you very much for your help. You've been very

4 **SPEAKING** Work in pairs. Use the adjectives in exercises 1 and 2 to describe a person in your class. Your partner must guess who you are describing.

She's very extroverted and she's quite funny.

Margarita?

School: bad behaviour

1 Match definitions 1–10 to the words below.

- bully ■ cheat ■ expel ■ fight ■ give a detention
- give a warning ■ play truant ■ suspend ■ swear
- vandalize

- 1 to act in a dishonest way to pass a test
- 2 to send a student away from school for some time
- 3 to miss school without permission
- 4 to use rude or bad language
- 5 to keep a student at school when the others have gone home
- 6 to use physical strength against another person
- 7 to tell a student to be careful about their behaviour
- 8 to make a student leave a school permanently
- 9 to use your power to hurt or frighten another person
- 10 to damage things on purpose and for no reason

2 Complete the table with the words in exercise 1.

Bad behaviour	Punishment
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in exercise 1.

- 1 Last week, my school a student for stealing. Now, he'll have to find a new school.
- 2 In my school, some of the older students occasionally the younger ones.
- 3 My school a girl for three days because she was rude to a teacher.
- 4 In my school, the head teacher in writing to students who behave badly.
- 5 The police knew that we We were wearing our uniforms, but we weren't at school.
- 6 Our teachers don't tolerate bad language, so we mustn't in school.
- 7 Last night, some boys broke into our school. They the gym, so now we can't use it.
- 8 In my school, if a student in an exam, they fail the exam.
- 9 If a teacher us , we have to stay in school for an extra hour on Friday afternoon.
- 10 A teacher had to separate the boys because they

School: compound nouns

1 Label photos 1–12 with the words below.

- classroom ■ head teacher ■ noticeboard ■ playground
- playing field ■ school canteen ■ school uniform
- science laboratory ■ sports hall ■ staffroom ■ textbook
- timetable



1 2 3



4 5 6



7 8 9



	Monday	Tuesday
8.05 a.m.	Mathematics	History
9.00 a.m.	Physics	Art
9.55 a.m.	Biology	PE
10.55 a.m.	IT	Chemistry
11.55 a.m.	English	Mathematics
1.00 p.m.	German	Music
1.55 p.m.	German	Music

10 11 12

2 Complete the sentences with the words in exercise 1.

- 1 The food in our isn't too bad.
- 2 We have to stand up every time a teacher comes into our
- 3 We did an experiment in the yesterday.
- 4 When it rains, we have our PE lessons inside in the
- 5 Our is grey trousers and a white shirt.
- 6 Our new is awful! The first class on Monday morning is maths.
- 7 We don't use a in our PE lessons.
- 8 There's a coffee machine for the teachers in the
- 9 A bell rings so that the students in the know that they have to go back to class.
- 10 The called the boy's parents to discuss his behaviour.
- 11 The dates of the school holidays are on the in the entrance.
- 12 In PE, the boys play rugby and the girls play hockey outside on the

Vocabulary bank 7

Country facts

1 Match definitions 1–12 to the words below.

- architecture ■ area ■ climate ■ culture ■ currency
- ethnic groups ■ geography ■ history ■ location
- population ■ religion ■ time zone

- 1 the number of people who live in a country
- 2 the place or position of a country
- 3 the ideas, beliefs and customs shared by people in a country
- 4 the type of money that a country uses
- 5 the typical weather conditions of a country
- 6 the region where a country lies which determines what time it is there
- 7 the styles of buildings in a country
- 8 the different races of people living in a country
- 9 the physical features of a country
- 10 the events in a country's past
- 11 the amount of land that a country covers
- 12 the system of spiritual beliefs and moral values shared by people in a country

2 Match words 1–12 to facts about the UK a–l.

- 1 architecture
- 2 area
- 3 culture
- 4 currency
- 5 climate
- 6 religion
- 7 ethnic groups
- 8 geography
- 9 history
- 10 location
- 11 population
- 12 time zone

- a Henry VIII was king of England from 1509 to 1547. His daughter Elizabeth became queen of England and Ireland in 1558 and ruled for forty-five years.
- b Most believers in the UK are Christians.
- c The highest mountain is Ben Nevis, in Scotland.
- d There are 62,260,000 people. More than eight million of them live in London.
- e The tallest building in London is the Shard. It's 308 metres tall.
- f It's an hour earlier than the rest of Europe.
- g It's in Western Europe.
- h People in the UK drink a lot of tea. In their free time, they go to the cinema or play sports such as cricket and football.
- i It rains a lot in the UK, but it doesn't snow very often.
- j Many of the immigrants are Indian or Pakistani.
- k They use the pound sterling.
- l It's 243,610 km².

Electronic devices: compound nouns

1 Label photos 1–8 with the words below.

- digital camera ■ e-book reader ■ games console
- HD TV ■ MP3 player ■ satnav ■ smartphone
- tablet computer



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8

2 Complete the sentences with the electronic devices in exercise 1.

- 1 My dad is always getting lost when he drives, so we got him a for his birthday.
- 2 My laptop was too big and heavy to carry around, so I bought a I love the flat touchscreen.
- 3 I bought a small that I can put in my pocket so I can listen to music on the way to school.
- 4 I've got a, so I can connect to the internet as well as make calls and send text messages.
- 5 I'm really pleased with my new Now I can download any book I want, whenever I want.
- 6 The thing I like most about my is that I can view the photos immediately after I take them.
- 7 My old wasn't working properly, so my parents gave me a PS3 for my birthday.
- 8 The best thing about our is that you can see more detail on the screen when you watch wildlife documentaries.

Sport: places

1 Label photos 1–12 with the words below.

- boxing ring ■ climbing wall ■ football pitch
 ■ golf course ■ gym ■ ice rink ■ racecourse ■ racing track
 ■ running track ■ stadium ■ swimming pool
 ■ tennis court



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10



11



12

2 Read the sentences. Which places are the people talking about? Match sentences 1–12 to the places in exercise 1.

- 1 'There have been some bad crashes at this corner.'
- 2 'It's difficult to hit the ball into the hole from here.'
- 3 'Game, set and match to Rafael Nadal!'
- 4 'I'll wait for you to put on your skates.'
- 5 'Come in! The water isn't cold at all!'
- 6 'The Kenyan athlete crossed the finish line first.'
- 7 'It's a long way down if you fall!'
- 8 'The boxer went back to his corner after the round.'
- 9 'It's used for concerts as well as for important matches.'
- 10 'One of the horses has fallen at the final jump.'
- 11 'I usually spend about twenty minutes on each machine.'
- 12 'I didn't see the goal from where I was sitting on the grass.'

Sport: compound nouns

1 Complete the compound nouns with the words below. Use a dictionary to check the spelling of the words.

- board ■ keeper ■ line ■ match ■ medal ■ record
 ■ rooms ■ score ■ shoes ■ skates ■ sports ■ time

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 half- | 7 gold |
| 2 changing | 8 score |
| 3 running | 9 final |
| 4 finish | 10 ice |
| 5 winter | 11 goal |
| 6 football | 12 world |

2 Match definitions 1–12 to the compound nouns in exercise 1.

- 1 the player who tries to stop the other team from scoring during a game like football
- 2 for example: skiing, skating and snowboarding
- 3 the place that marks the end of a race
- 4 the best performance ever recorded in a sport
- 5 the place where players put their sports kit on
- 6 the prize an athlete gets for winning an event
- 7 people wear these on their feet at the ice rink
- 8 the place where you can see the points during a match
- 9 a sports event where two teams compete against each other
- 10 the result at the end of a match
- 11 athletes wear these on their feet
- 12 the period between two parts of a match

3 Complete the sentences with the compound nouns in exercise 1.

- 1 If you don't have your own, you can hire a pair at the rink.
- 2 We don't know how many points they've got because the isn't working.
- 3 The ball went past the and into the net.
- 4 We always use the showers in the before we go home.
- 5 Usain Bolt has set another this year.
- 6 in football is fifteen minutes long.
- 7 There's an important on TV tonight – Real Madrid versus Manchester United!
- 8 Fernando Alonso crossed the one second before Sebastian Vettel.
- 9, like skiing and ice skating, are very popular in Canada.
- 10 I can't believe that some athletes don't wear socks with their
- 11 The was 2–1, which meant that we had lost.
- 12 The US basketball team won the at the London Olympics in 2012.

Vocabulary bank 9

Parts of a newspaper

1 Match definitions 1–12 to the words below.

- arts and entertainment ■ business and finance
- classified ads ■ crosswords and games
- domestic news ■ editorial ■ health and beauty
- horoscopes ■ international news
- letters from the readers ■ sports section
- television guide

- 1 a list of the programmes on each channel for the day
- 2 pages with reviews about new films, plays and exhibitions
- 3 pages with reports about recent matches
- 4 pages with puzzles, like sudoku
- 5 pages with articles about healthy lifestyle or advice about how to look better
- 6 pages with articles about the economy
- 7 pages for people or companies who want to sell things
- 8 pages containing articles about events that have happened in the country
- 9 a list of predictions about what may happen to a person in the future
- 10 pages with comments about articles that have been published in previous issues
- 11 an article that gives an opinion on an important subject written by the person in charge of a newspaper
- 12 pages containing articles about events that have happened abroad

2 Match headlines 1–12 to the parts of a newspaper in exercise 1.

- 1 Another earthquake hits Japan
- 2 Twenty puzzles for the long weekend
- 3 Tonight's viewing
- 4 The managing editor on youth representation in media
- 5 Lack of sleep can harm teenagers' health
- 6 World No. 1 loses tennis tournament
- 7 Your zodiac forecast
- 8 Fantastic offers on garden furniture
- 9 What to see: Lyn Gardner's theatre tips
- 10 The best of your comments
- 11 Volunteers to help clean local parks
- 12 Euro panic causes fall in world share prices



Film genres

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 A **romantic comedy** / **documentary film** is an amusing love story.
- 2 A **thriller** / **western** is about life in the past in the USA.
- 3 An **animated film** / **action film** is made with drawings or computer-generated images.
- 4 A **horror film** / **war film** tells the story of soldiers fighting a battle.
- 5 A **fantasy film** / **documentary film** gives facts or information about a particular subject.
- 6 A **western** / An **action film** contains exciting events like car chases and explosions.
- 7 A **science-fiction film** / **historical drama** tells the story of a real person from the past.
- 8 A **war film** / **musical** has singing and dancing in it.
- 9 A **fantasy film** / **historical drama** is set in an imaginary world.
- 10 An **animated film** / A **science-fiction film** is often about events that take place in the future.
- 11 A **horror film** / **musical** tells a very frightening story.
- 12 A **thriller** / **romantic comedy** is designed to keep the viewer in suspense.

2 Read the sentences. Which film genres in exercise 1 are the people talking about?

- 1 'I was so scared that I covered my eyes!'

.....
- 2 'I enjoyed *Toy Story 3* much more than *Toy Story 2*!'

.....
- 3 'I'm so glad that I won't be around in 2112 to see our planet destroyed by a natural disaster.'

.....
- 4 'I enjoyed singing along when I knew the words.'

.....
- 5 'I've never laughed so much in my life!'

.....
- 6 'I learned a lot and I googled the subject as soon as I got home.'

.....
- 7 'The life of a cowboy seems so romantic to me.'

.....
- 8 'It made me so nervous that I was biting my nails!'

.....
- 9 'I'm really interested in that period and I love the Tudor kings and queens.'

.....
- 10 'I find films with soldiers fighting battles very boring.'

.....
- 11 'It was really exciting, and the stunts were amazing!'

.....
- 12 'I'd love to be a witch and have magical powers like the characters in the film.'

.....

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think of examples of all the film genres in exercise 1.

Horror films: *Scary Movie 5*, ...

Materials

1 Match photos 1–10 to the words below.

- a cotton T-shirt ■ denim jeans ■ a fur coat
- a lace blouse ■ a leather jacket ■ linen trousers
- nylon tights ■ a silk scarf ■ a velvet dress ■ a wool jumper

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10



2 Match definitions 1–10 to the materials in exercise 1.

- 1 It's a thin material with a smooth and shiny surface. It's used to make expensive shirts, blouses and scarves.
- 2 It's a thick material that comes from sheep.
- 3 It's the skin and hair of an animal and it's usually worn in very cold countries.
- 4 It comes from a plant. It's used to make casual clothes, like T-shirts.
- 5 It's the skin of an animal and it's used to make shoes, bags and jackets.
- 6 It comes from a plant. It's used mainly for summer clothes and it creases very easily.
- 7 It's a white material with a lot of holes and it's often made by hand.
- 8 It's a strong artificial material and it's quite elastic.
- 9 It's a thick material which is soft on one side.
- 10 It's a blue material and it's used to make jeans.

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think of examples of clothes you have got that are made from the materials in exercise 1. Tell your partner.

I've got a black leather jacket.

Protest: verb phrases

1 Match definitions 1–10 to the verb phrases below.

- carry a banner ■ donate money ■ post a comment
- go on a demonstration ■ go on strike ■ shout a slogan
- join a campaign ■ make a complaint ■ sign a petition
- protest against a decision

- 1 to say that you are not satisfied about something
- 2 to refuse to work as a protest
- 3 to add your name to a written document that asks someone in a position of power to do something
- 4 to take part in a march to protest against something
- 5 to give financial help to an organization
- 6 to hold a long piece of board with a message on it
- 7 to say that you do not agree with something, especially publicly
- 8 to say in a loud voice a phrase that is easy to remember
- 9 to put a message on a website
- 10 to take part in a planned series of activities in order to make something happen

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in exercise 1.

- 1 Thousands of people on a demonstration yesterday to protest against the new labour reform.
- 2 The demonstration was very loud because the protesters slogans.
- 3 Our hotel room was filthy, so we
- 4 After the tsunami in Japan, many people money to help the people in the country.
- 5 The residents' organization is going door-to-door asking people to a petition against the new road.
- 6 They're marching through the streets to against a decision made by the Defence Minister. He's going to send more troops to the war zone.
- 7 One of the protesters a banner which says 'Defend our forests!'
- 8 I didn't agree with that article on their website, so I a comment.
- 9 My friends and I have decided to run by Greenpeace to stop whale hunting.
- 10 When the manager refused to give the workers a pay rise, they decided to on strike.

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.

It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2014

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2014

2018 2017 2016 2015 2014

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 401565 3

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and the publisher would like to thank Jane Hudson and Sarah Philpot for the material they contributed to this book.

The authors and the publisher would also like to thank the many teachers who contributed to the development of the course by commenting on the manuscript, taking part in lesson observations, focus groups and online questionnaires.

The authors and the publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.36 Extract from *Notes from a Big Country* by Bill Bryson. Published by Transworld. Reproduced by permission of Bill Bryson, and The Random House Group Limited.

p.56 Adapted extracts from *Blame My Brain* by Nicola Morgan. Copyright © 2005 Nicola Morgan. Reproduced by permission of Walker Books Ltd, London SE11 5HJ. This passage is heavily adapted from a section of *Blame My Brain – The Amazing Teenage Brain Revealed* by Nicola Morgan. Nicola Morgan is not responsible for the wording of this passage. For a clear understanding of the science, readers should refer to the original book.

p.74 Extract from *Juggling with Gerbils* by Brian Patten. Copyright © Brian Patten 2000. Reproduced by permission of the author c/o Rogers, Coleridge & White Ltd., 20 Powis Mews, London W11 1JN.

pp.14, 26, 30, 40, 52, 78, 92, 104, 118 Entries taken from *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary 4th Edition*. © Oxford University Press 2012. Reproduced by permission.

p.52 Entries taken from *Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary for learners of English*. © Oxford University Press 2006. Reproduced by permission.

Sources: p.42 www.telegraph.co.uk; p.42 The Daily Telegraph; p.120 www.rebel-with-a-cause.de/movie

Illustrations by: James Elston pp.135, 136, 137; Jane Smith p.21.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy Images pp5 (Boys playing football/Christopher Pillitz), 5 (Couple surfing/Cultura Creative), 5 (Woman with newborn baby/Alamy Creativity), 6 (Map of Africa/Stock Illustrations Ltd), 6 (Volunteers in Zimbabwe/Jacky Chapman), 24 (Coffee shop/Nigel Watts), 24 (Festival crowd/Image Source), 24 (Traditional Maori carving/David Hancock), 28 (Hotel Punta Secca, Canary Islands/MARKA), 30 (Refrigerator/Tips Images), 34 (Trainers/Aleksandr Ugorenkov), 34 (Lobster/dieKleinert), 36 (Coca-Cola can/Finnbarr Webster), 36 (Orange juice carton/pumpkinpie), 36 (Kellogg's Cornflakes/studiomode), 36 (Primula cream cheese/whiteboxmedia limited), 37 (Biscuits/Pablo Paul), 37 (Peanut butter/Coyote-Photography.co.uk), 37 (Tomato ketchup/Steve Stock), 37 (Groceries in bag/Gino's Premium Images), 43 (1940's kitchen/Jack Sullivan), 45 (Teen girl portrait/Radius Images), 50 (Spider-Man comic/Les Breault), 50 (iPod Nano/D. Hurst), 50 (Electric guitar/Jon Helgason), 50 (Wardrobe/FORGET Patrick/SAGAPHOTO.COM), 54 (Narrowboat/John Morrison), 54 (Narrowboat interior/Adrian Sherratt), 58 (Jordan Romero scaling Mt Everest/epa european pressphoto agency b.v.), 60 (Spiral staircase/fStop), 61 (Indonesian man/Thomas Cockrem), 61 (St Patrick's Day/Irish Press Photos), 68 (Policeman at high school/Bob Daemrich), 72 (Girls skipping/Corbis Super RF), 72 (Giant chess game/Humberto Olarte Cupas), 74 (Glove/artpartner-images.com), 74 (Foggy morning/Keith Morris), 75 (Jasmine/Karolina Maliszewska), 80 (Teenager with homework/Oredia), 82 (Indonesian man/Thomas Cockrem), 84 (Woman doing bead work/Claudia Wiens), 84 (Blog key on keyboard/kmt_rf), 86 (North America map/Alfonso de Tomas), 87 (Girl with photo frame/Chris Rout), 89 (Flag of Wales/R Heyes Design), 96 (Olympic flag/AKP Photos), 101 (2008 Olympics Heroes parade/Georgella), 102 (Three competition judges/Image Source), 107 (Boy writing formula/chiung-hung huang), 115 (Using tablet computer/incamerastock), 121 (Street market in Nigeria/Ivan Kuzmin), 122 (Alarm clock/LAMB), 122 (Radio/Gunter Kirsch), 122 (The New York Times/Martin Shields), 124 (Apple iPhone/Oleksiy Maksymenko), 128 (Cocoa beans drying/Olivier Asselin), 132 (Fair trade cotton farmer/Joerg Boethling), 132 (Fairtrade tea farmers/Simon Rawles), 132 (Fairtrade tea bags/Ian Francis), 134 (Family with balloons/Blend Images), 134 (Pirated DVDs/Michael Willis), 134 (Swimming goggles/Andrew Paterson), 134 (Video console controller/imagestopshop), 134 (iPad showing Twitter screen/Pixelover RM 3), 137 (Terraced houses/Kevin Britland), 137 (Block of flats/Peter Alvey), 137 (Semi detached houses/geophoto), 137 (Tent/Braden Gunem), 137 (Bungalow/Construction Photography), 137 (Detached house/photoWORKS), 137 (Camping trailer/Westend61 GmbH), 138 (Young girl/MBI), 138 (Baby learning to walk/Bubbles Photolibrary), 139 (School/Peter Jordan_NE), 139 (Chemistry class/moodboard), 139 (Sports/David White), 139 (Empty classroom/apply pictures), 140 (Mobile phone/Laurent Davoust), 140 (iPod nano/Art Directors & TRIP), 140 (Xbox 360/JoeFox), 140 (Camera/Helen Sessions), 140 (Amazon Kindle e-reader/Krys Bailey), 140 (Satellite navigation/David J. Green - technology), 140 (HD TV/Erik Reis), 141 (Penalty spot/Howard Harrison), 141 (Race course/Caro), 141 (Tennis court/PCN Photography), 142 (Newspapers/incamerastock), 143 (Fur coat/Marc Tielemans), 143 (White trousers/i love images), 143 (Leather coat/Vitaliy Pakhnyushchyy), 143 (Head scarf/Mouse in the House), 143 (Lace blouse/Palabra), 143 (Tights/

studiomode), 143 (Woollen jumper/Art Directors & TRIP); Bridgeman Art Library Ltd p88 (Duke William and his fleet cross the Channel to Pevensey, detail from the Bayeux Tapestry, before 1082 (wool embroidery on linen)/Musée de la Tapisserie, Bayeux, France); Corbis pp7 (Sea turtle conservation efforts/Erich Schlegal/INTERNATIONAL_NI), 16 (Walled City/Derek M. Allan; Travel Ink), 19 (Train station, Japan/Jon Hicks), 24 (Snowboarding/Kyle Sparks/Aurora Open), 28 (Pompeii/Ocean), 32 (Woman with fast food and vegetables/MSW/cultura), 45 (college dorm room/Kelly-Mooney Photography), 60 (Hand holding spider/Eleonora Ghioldi/Blend Images), 61 (Friends on beach/Image Source), 65 (Basketball player in wheelchair/Ocean), 74 (Snowy view/Richard Nebesky/Robert Harding World Imagery), 75 (Boat moored near beach/John Miller/Robert Harding World Imagery), 80 (Students studying in library/Ocean), 83 (Masai man with soda bottle/Louise Gubb/CORBIS SABA), 86 (Facebook's headquarters in Menlo Park/Splash News), 96 (Ben Johnson running 100 metres/Bettmann), 98 (Couple and modern house/Rainer Holz), 98 (Pizza/De Vicq de Cumplich, Ricardo/the food passionates), 99 (Lionel Messi/Matthew Ashton/AMA), 106 (Street scene with a mural of Van Gogh's self portrait/Barry Lewis/In Pictures), 107 (Michael Jordan/Duomo), 107 (Einstein/Bettmann), 109 (Selena Gomez/Mark Savage), 109 (Mitt Romney campaigning/Rick Friedman), 109 (President Obama/Brooks Kraft), 110 (Young woman reading text message on smart phone/Jim Craigmyle/Ivy) 114 (BBC Radio Announcer Alvar Liddell/Hulton-Deutsch Collection), 125 (Textile factory/Hugh Sittton), 128 (Melted chocolate/Brachat, Oliver/the food passionates), 128 (Chocolate factory/Michael Rosenfeld/Science Faction), 128 (Man with cocoa beans/Thierry Gouegnon/X01735/Reuters), 137 (Bodiam Castle/Peter Adams), 138 (Mexican Black Seminole Man/Louie Psihoyos/Science Faction), 138 (Teen girl smiling/Daniel Attia), 138 (Mature woman portrait/Hero), 138 (Man laughing/Camilo Morales/Glowimages), 139 (School sports hall/Jaak Nilson/Spaces Images), 139 (Businesswoman/Steve Hix/Somos Images), 141 (Exercise equipment/Ben Welsh/Design Pics), 141 (Fedex Field/Cameron Davidson), 141 (Boxing gloves in ring/Randy Faris), 141 (Hockey player's skates and stick/Radius Images), 141 (Track/Radius Images), 141 (Formula One race/HOCH ZWEI/dpa); Getty Images pp5 (Brushing teeth/ERproductions/Blend Images), 5 (Man in hospital/SelectStock), 5 (Outdoor school/Brent Stirton), 6 (Boys with football/commerceandculturestock), 7 (Volunteers cleaning/Yuri Cortez/AFP), 8 (Man on couch/Valentin Casarsa), 10 (Commuters on New York train/Melanie Stetson Freeman/The Christian Science Monitor via Getty Images), 12 (Group of teenagers/Kristian Sekulic), 18 (Teen girl on bus/Hans Neleman), 20 (Spice market/Travelpix Ltd), 22 (Road sign to Nowhere Else/John White Photos), 28 (Mosaic floor, Pompeii/Danita Delimont), 34 (Vending machine/Larsen & Talbert), 35 (Vending machine/Larsen & Talbert), 36 (Supermarket/Patrick Strattnr), 44 (The Great Hall at Allington Castle/Time & Life Pictures), 45 (Teenage boy/Derek Latta), 46 (Doing the laundry/Gl/Jamie Grill), 49 (Music room in Highclere Castle/Matthew Lloyd), 50 (1907 teddy bear/Roland Kemp), 50 (Bean bag chair/Dorling Kindersley), 58 (Jordan Romero/Prakash Mathema/AFP), 62 (Antarctic expedition 1910-1912/Popperfoto), 62 (Captain Scott's hut/Antarctic Heritage Trust/Barcroft Media), 63 (Scott's expedition members/Popperfoto), 63 (Scott's expedition clothing/European), 65 (World's Oldest Marathon Runner/Jeff J Mitchell), 70 (School girls in India/LEROY Francis), 80 (Titlepage of 'Mr. William Shakespeare's Comedies, Histories and Tragedies', engraved by Martin Droeshout/Bridgeman Art Library), 80 (Jersey cows/Echo), 84 (Mowing the lawn/Ron Levine), 85 (Dreamcatchers/Glow Images, Inc), 89 (English lesson at a mission school/Images of Empire/Universal Images Group via Getty Images), 90 (Students/Jack Hollingsworth/Photodisc), 94 (Singer Emmanuel Jai/Dave Hogan), 98 (Hand holding pills/Nisian Hughes), 99 (Soccer star Pele/Art Rickerby/Time & Life Pictures), 101 (Eleanor Simmonds receives MBE), 102 (Unhappy tennis player/Fuse), 109 (Environmental group/Yoshikazu Tsuno/AFP), 109 (Disaster zone/Kazuhiro Nogi/AFP), 113 (Students with exam results/Echo), 124 (Silverback mountain gorilla/Thomas Marent/Visuals Unlimited, Inc.), 124 (Congo mine workers/Per-Anders Pettersson), 133 (Polar bear family/Wayne R. Bilenduke), 133 (African elephant/James Warwick), 134 (Group walking in field/Cultura/Stefano Gilera), 134 (Making bead necklace/Gary Omblor), 139 (School items on coat rack/Peter Dazeley), 139 (Group by notice boards/Nick White), 139 (Students at lunch/altrendo images), 141 (Climbing wall/Marvin E. Newman); iStockphoto pp30 (CO2 carbon footprint/Christopher Steer), 34 (Soda drink cans/Oleksiy Mark), 45 (Bedroom/ondatra-m), 46 (Teenager cooking/Kim Gunkel), 82 (Children holding hands/Kristian Sekulic), 98 (Writing letter/Ekaterina Minaeva), 122 (Duvet/Luc Meaille), 139 (Team meeting/Chris Schmidt), 140 (Samsung Galaxy tablet/mozcann), 143 (Red dress/gülden özenli); Kobal Collection pp50 (*The Hunger Games*/Lionsgate), 112 (*Snow White and the Huntsman*/Universal Pictures), 112 (*The Avengers*/Marvel Enterprises), 112 (Set of *Clash of the Titans*/MGM), 117 (*The Avengers*/Marvel Enterprises), 117 (*The Avengers*/Marvel Enterprises); Marijke Bruinsma p55 (EATHOUSE/by DeStuurli in cooperation with Atelier Gras); OUP pp9 (Friends at party/Digital Vision), 57 (Skateboarder/Photodisc), 60 (Gloved hand with needle/Corbis), 70 (Woman with arms crossed/RubberBall), 98 (Computer keyboard/Stockbyte), 98 (Moon/Photodisc), 122 (Toothbrush/Ingram), 134 (Chocolate cake/Ingram), 134 (MP3 player/Paul Fleet), 137 (Thatched cottage/Peter Evans), 137 (Mansion/Alan Marsh/Design Pics), 138 (Newborn baby/the Agency Collection), 141 (Golf ball/Glowimages), 141 (Swimming race/Photodisc), 143 (Jeans/D. Hurst), 143 (T-shirt/Gareth Boden); Press Association Images pp10 (New York train/Frank Franklin II/AP), 59 (Crew of the An-Tiki/Judy Fitzpatrick/AP), 59 (The An-Tiki sail-powered raft/Judy Fitzpatrick/AP), 95 (Woman boxer Sadaf Rahimi/Musadeq Sadeq/AP), 100 (William Crispin receiving MBE/Dominic Lipinski/PA Archive); Rex Features pp42 (*The 1940's House*/Richard Crampton), 47 (Teenager doing the dishes/Burger/Phanie), 48 (Highclere Castle/ITV), 71 (Students in Gulu Village, Sichuan/Sipa Press), 86 (Intel Corporation headquarters/KPA/Zuma), 86 (eBay headquarters/KPA/Zuma), 86 (Yahoo Inc/Tripplaar Kristoffer/SIPA), 86 (Oracle headquarters/Tripplaar Kristoffer/SIPA), 86 (Hewlett-Packard headquarters/Tripplaar Kristoffer/SIPA), 86 (Apple Computer, Inc headquarters/Tripplaar Kristoffer/SIPA), 88 (Dubai International Airport/Gavin Hellier/Robert Harding), 97 (Milli Vanilli/Eugene Adebari), 100 (Chris Preddie with OBE/Steve Meddle), 109 (Squirrel adopted by cat/Nils Jorgensen), 112 (Prop dummy extras on film set/Bernard Weil/TS), 113 (School interview/Burger/Phanie), 114 (Coronation of Queen Elizabeth II/Robert Hunt Library), 128 (Roasting cocoa beans/Action Press), 134 (Football supporter/Sipa Press); Robert Harding World Imagery p17 (Craco, Basilicata, Italy/age fotostock); Science Photo Library p127 (Earth and the Moon from space/Detlev Van Ravenswaay); SuperStock pp16 (Kolmanskop/imagebroker.net), 20 (The Spice Bazaar/Travelshots), 49 (Tutankhamun's funeral mask/Robert Harding Picture Library), 56 (Rollercoaster/Angelo Cavalli), 72 (Children playing hide and seek/Flirt), 102 (Student with trophy/Corbis), 122 (Running shoes/Stock Connection), 122 (Boy waking up/Flirt), 128 (Woman harvesting cocoa beans/imagebroker.net); The Art Archive p29 (Kitchen with pots on hearth, House of the Vettii, Roman, Pompeii, Italy/Gianni Digli Orti); Tony Fitzpatrick/Peplematter.tv p94 (Paul Connolly).

Cover: Nikali Larin/Image Zoo/Alamy.

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.

Grammar reference and practice 1

1.1 Present simple and present continuous

Present simple

Affirmative and negative			
I			
We	live		
You	don't (= do not) live		
They			in a city.
He	lives		
She	doesn't (= does not) live		
It			
Questions and short answers			
Do	I we you they	live in a city?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.
Does	he she it		Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Spelling rules: third person singular

- Most verbs: add -s
- Verbs ending in -s, -sh, -ch, -o, -x: add -es
- Verbs ending in consonant + -y: change -y to -ies

Use

We use the present simple to talk about:

- habits and everyday routines, normally with adverbs of frequency such as *always, usually, often, sometimes, rarely* and *never*. We can also use time expressions such as *every evening / Monday / winter* or *in the morning / evening, etc.*
I sometimes get up late on Sunday.
Diana travels to Latin America every summer.
 Note that adverbs of frequency go immediately before the main verb, but after the verb *be*. Longer time expressions usually go at the end of the sentence.
Do you always do your homework before dinner?
The school is never open on Sunday.
The school usually closes in the afternoon.
- facts and general truths.
AnniKa and Elly come from the Netherlands.
December isn't a warm month in Europe.
- states. Some verbs that describe states are *believe, hate, know, like, love, need, prefer, understand, want*.
Erdem knows the names of all countries in Africa.
Do you want to work on one of our projects?

1 Choose the correct words.

- Carol **go** / **goes** to school by train.
- My father often **flies** / **fly** to Italy for his work.
- Helen **washes** / **wash** her hair every day.
- Our friends don't **lives** / **live** very far from here.
- Does** / **Do** Paul have a big family?
- My sister **don't** / **doesn't** finish school at 4 p.m.

2 Put the words in order to make sentences.

- don't / I / have breakfast / usually / .
.....
- your brother / a new car / every year / buy / does / ?
.....
- never / before eleven o'clock / we / go to bed / .
.....
- is / often / Paula / late for class / .
.....
- we / at home / sometimes / have our lunch / .
.....
- always / Simon's parents / in the evening / watch TV / .
.....
- have / in the afternoon / rarely / lessons / they / .
.....
- cinema / you / go / do / the / to / often / ?
.....

Present continuous

Affirmative and negative			
I	'm (= am)		
	'm not (= am not)		
He	's (= is)		
She	isn't (= is not)		playing tennis.
It			
We	're (= are)		
You	aren't (= are not)		
They			
Questions and short answers			
Am	I		Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is	he she it	playing tennis?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
Are	we you they		Yes, we are. No, we aren't.

Spelling rules: -ing form

- Most verbs: add -ing
- Verbs ending in -e: remove -e and add -ing
- Verbs ending -ie: change -ie to -ying
- Short verbs ending consonant + vowel + consonant: double the final consonant and add -ing

Use

We use the present continuous to talk about:

- actions that are happening at the time of speaking, often with expressions such as *at the moment* and *now*.
Where is Peter? – He's having lunch at the moment. I can't talk right now. I'm eating dinner.
- actions that are happening around now, but perhaps not at the moment of speaking.
Paul is teaching English in Africa. (He isn't necessarily teaching English right now.)
Freya is studying Japanese at university. (She isn't necessarily having lessons right now.)
- planned future arrangements, usually with time expressions such as *tomorrow*, *tonight* and *this afternoon / week / Friday*.
I'm flying out to Africa tomorrow.
What are you doing tonight?
Sandra isn't going on holiday this summer.

3 Complete the sentences. Use the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 It (snow) at the moment.
- 2 I (not do) anything right now.
- 3 Gina and Paul (try) to make a meal over a fire.
- 4 you (write) your essay?
- 5 They (not open) the new school this month.
- 6 What time we (leave) on Friday?

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present continuous form of the verbs below.

■ brush ■ not organize ■ get ■ make ■ play ■ do

- 1 It's nearly seven o'clock.
you ready?
- 2 Leo a mess with those paints.
- 3 I'm nearly ready. I my teeth.
- 4 We the party. Kim is doing it.
- 5 She isn't very good at cooking, but she her best.
- 6 Chris and Phil tennis this afternoon.

5 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Can you help me? I (look) for a good hostel.
- 2 The children's English isn't very good, but it (get) better.
- 3 My friend and I (chat) online about twice a week.
- 4 (Sally and Naomi / come) to watch the match later?
- 5 I (not have) the same thing for breakfast every day.
- 6 This project is hard work. You (need) to be very fit and healthy.
- 7 We (meet) Samuel at eight o'clock tonight.
- 8 (you / prefer) hot or cold weather?

1.2 ■ Articles

a / an

We use *a / an* before singular countable nouns when:

- we mention something for the first time.
When they first arrived, they lived above a bakery.
- we describe a person or thing.
It's a lovely day.
He's from a poor family.
- we say what someone's job is.
Her mother is a cleaner.

the

We use *the* before singular and plural countable nouns, and uncountable nouns when:

- we refer to something that was mentioned before.
Tomas bought a food stall. The stall did very well.
- there is only one of something, or when it is clear which one we mean because of the context.
Wait for me at the station. (There is only one station.)

no article

We use no article with:

- plural or uncountable nouns when we talk about something in general.
Bakers make bread and cakes.
- names of people, streets, cities, mountains, countries, languages and continents (*Uncle Peter, Caracas, Everest, Africa*). Note that there are exceptions to this rule: we use *the* before some countries, regions and mountains such as *the USA, the UK, the Middle East, the Rocky Mountains*. We always use *the* with rivers, seas and oceans such as *the Hudson river, the North Sea, the Pacific Ocean*.

1 Complete the sentences with *a / an* or *the*.

- 1 We had a great meal in Indian restaurant called Mumtaz.
- 2 Let's eat in restaurant across the road tonight.
- 3 bank that my father works in is opposite my school.
- 4 Gina works in bank. I don't know which one.
- 5 I talked to interesting woman at the bus stop this morning.
- 6 woman who lives next door used to be an actress.

2 Add *the* once or twice to each sentence.

- 1 It rains a lot in UK.
- 2 When was last time you saw Aunt Carla?
- 3 It's been very wet recently. Rain is damaging flowers in our garden.
- 4 We're spending some time in France. We're staying in an apartment near river Seine.
- 5 We got to airport very early, and had to wait a long time for flight.
- 6 You can't eat in here. Look at signs on walls.
- 7 Dog looked very thirsty, so we went to look for water.
- 8 Don't ever look directly at sun.

Grammar reference and practice 2

2.1 Past simple

Affirmative and negative			
I You He / She / It We They	lived didn't (= did not) live	here.	
Questions and short answers			
Did	I you he / she / it we they	live here?	Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

Spelling rules

- Most regular verbs: add *-ed*
- Regular verbs ending in *-e*: add *-d*
- Short regular verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double final consonant and add *-ed*
- Regular verbs ending consonant + *-y*: change *-y* to *-ied*

Many verbs have irregular past simple forms, for example, *have* → *had*, *know* → *knew*, *teach* → *taught*. They form questions and negatives in the same way as regular verbs. The verb *be*, however, is different. The past simple affirmative forms of *be* are *was* and *were*. The negative forms are formed by adding *n't* (= *not*).

You / We / They were excited about the trip.

I / He / She / It wasn't very old then.

The past simple question form of *be* is formed by changing the order of the subject and the verb.

Were you / we / they excited about the trip?

Use

We use the past simple for:

- a completed past action or a past state. We often use it with expressions that show when things happened, such as *yesterday*, *ago*, *when I was a child*, *in April / 2008*, *last night / week / month / year*, etc.
The train left the station two minutes ago. You missed it. We helped the lady with her bags. She was very old.
- a past habit, often with adverbs of frequency and time expressions such as *every week / Monday / summer / year*.
They visited their grandparents every Sunday.
- a sequence of actions in the past.
The man crossed the road and went into a café.

1 Choose the correct words.

- What did you **buy / bought** at the shops?
- It **stopped / stop** raining.
- I didn't **liked / like** the hotel.
- George **didn't be / wasn't** in class yesterday.
- Did you **caught / catch** the train on time?
- She **study / studied** French at university.

2 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- We're hungry because we (not have) breakfast this morning.
- (your mum and dad / buy) a new car recently?
- When Jack was younger, he (spend) every summer by the sea.
- Ella (go) into town, had coffee with her friends and then came back home.
- The shops in town (not be) very busy yesterday.
- When (you / learn) to speak French?
- I (run) all the way home to see my favourite TV programme.
- (they / travel) by train or by bus?
- Alina (not come) to see us last weekend.
- (she / forget) the name of the hotel where they stayed?

2.2 Past continuous

Affirmative and negative			
I He She It	was wasn't (= was not)		travelling very fast.
We You They	were weren't (= were not)		
Questions and short answers			
Was	I he she it	looking at a map?	Yes, I was. No, I wasn't.
Were	we you they		Yes, we were. No, we weren't.

Use

We use the past continuous for:

- background descriptions, especially in stories.
The sun was shining and the birds were singing.
- actions in progress at a specific time in the past.
What were you doing at 3 p.m. on Wednesday?
I was watching TV and my brother was listening to music.

We often use the past continuous and the past simple together for a longer action interrupted by a shorter action.

It was raining when we left the house.

We do not use the past continuous with state verbs such as *believe*, *need*, *understand*, etc. but we often use it with verbs which show that the action or event has duration such as *wait*, *live*, *work*, *rain*, etc.

1 Complete the sentences. Use the past continuous form of the verbs below.

- hope ■ talk ■ not sit ■ have ■ call ■ not listen
■ send ■ watch

- We a fantastic time at the party.
- Joe tried to tell her the truth, but Eva to him.
- Who you an email to?
- I to get a bike for my birthday, but I got a new football.
- Tim my name?
- The people at the concert down because there weren't any seats.
- The TV was on, but no one it.
- Sorry, you to me?

2 Complete the sentences. Use the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- You were shouting in your sleep. What (you / dream) about?
- Dan and Dave (not swim) in the sea. They were on the beach.
- When I woke up, I (lie) on the floor.
- We (get) ready for the party when you phoned.
- Why (Fred / run) to school? He wasn't late.
- I wasn't at home at ten o'clock. I (help) my uncle in his garden.
- What's the name of the girl you (talk) to last night?
- Kim and I (wait) for you in the park. Why didn't you come?

3 Write sentences without changing the word order. Use the past simple and past continuous in each sentence.

- Maya / walk / to school / when / she / meet / Lola
.....
- we / sit / by the pool / when / it start / to rain
.....
- when / the bus / come, / Joe / buy / a magazine
.....
- when / you / phone / me, / I / bake / a cake
.....
- Carla / not smile / when / I / look / at her
.....
- the children / not play / outside / when / the accident / happen
.....
- when / the police / stop / him, / he / drive / home
.....
- I / read / your email / when / they / arrive
.....

2.3 ■ while, as and when

- We use *while* and *as* with the past simple and past continuous to talk about actions that take place at the same time. Generally, *while* and *as* are used to introduce longer actions.

While you were having lunch, I was working hard in the garden.

They arrived as I was leaving.

- We use *when* to introduce a shorter action that interrupts a longer one.

He was walking home when he met an old friend.

- We also use *when* to talk about an event that is immediately followed by another event.

When it stopped snowing, we went outside.

- We can use *when*, *as* or *while* at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle. If it is used in the middle, there is no comma.

I was working hard in the garden while you were having lunch.

We went outside when it stopped snowing.

1 Choose the correct sentence ending.

- I was crossing the street
 - while I heard the shop window break.
 - when I heard the shop window break.
- While I was repairing my bike,
 - I cut my hand.
 - I was cutting my hand.
- The sea was coming in quickly as
 - we were walking along the beach.
 - we walked along the beach.
- When we stopped the car to look at the map,
 - while we were realizing we were lost.
 - we realized that we were lost.
- As Dave was putting up the tent,
 - when Mark made dinner.
 - Mark was making dinner.
- The ferry left
 - while the passengers were getting on.
 - when the passengers got on.
- I heard a strange noise
 - just as I was falling asleep.
 - when I fell asleep.

2 Complete the sentences with *while*, *as* or *when*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- No one was listening Sam was telling the joke.
- Everyone laughed Karen told the joke.
- we were planning our route, the wind blew the map away.
- we planned our route, we didn't have a very good map.
- Sue and Ian decided to get a sandwich they were waiting for you.
- Were you annoyed Ryan arrived late?

Grammar reference and practice 3

3.1 ■ Determiners

These determiners are used to talk about quantity: *some, any, a little, a few, much, many, a lot of*.

We use *some* and *any* before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns to mean 'a number of' or 'an amount of'.

- *Some* is used in affirmative sentences.
I've got **some** apples. There's **some** tea on the table.
- *Any* is used in negative sentences and in questions.
Did the supermarket have **any** chicken?
We haven't got **any** carrots.
Have you got **any** bananas?
There isn't **any** meat in the fridge.
- *Some* can also be used in questions, but only if they are offers or requests.
Would you like **some** cake?
Can I have **some** cake?

We use *a little* and *a few* to refer to small amounts.

- We use *a little* with uncountable nouns.
We **only need a little** milk for the cake.
- We use *a few* with plural countable nouns.
Meals are healthier if you add **a few** vegetables.

Much and *many* are used in negative sentences and questions to talk about larger quantities.

- We use *much* with uncountable nouns.
Have you got **much** rice?
There isn't **much** coffee.
- We use *many* with plural countable nouns.
Are there **many** glasses in the cupboard? ~ Yes, but there aren't **many** plates.

We generally use *a lot of* to talk about larger quantities in affirmative sentences, for both uncountable and plural countable nouns. It is also possible to use *a lot of* in negatives and in questions.

Ellie eats **a lot of** fruit and vegetables.
A **lot of** people like Italian food.

1 Choose the correct sentence in each pair.

- 1 a I've got a lot of milk.
b I've got much milk.
- 2 a There isn't many coffee left.
b There isn't much coffee left.
- 3 a I'm only buying a little grapes.
b I'm only buying a few grapes.
- 4 a We haven't got any ice cream, I'm afraid.
b We haven't got some ice cream, I'm afraid.
- 5 a Can I have any tea?
b Can I have some tea?
- 6 a Do you want much bottles of water?
b Do you want many bottles of water?
- 7 a People eat much junk food these days.
b People eat a lot of junk food these days.
- 8 a Are there any onions in the cupboard?
b Are there some onions in the cupboard?

2 Choose the correct countable or uncountable nouns to complete the sentences.

- 1 Are there any **additives** / **fat** in this snack bar?
- 2 There aren't many **cheese** / **mushrooms** on my pizza.
Can I have some more, please?
- 3 We have a little **burgers** / **meat** left in the freezer.
- 4 There was some **meals** / **food** at the party, so I'm not hungry now.
- 5 You can eat a few **chocolate** / **biscuits** every week, but not too many.
- 6 Is there much **apples** / **fruit** in this cake?

3 Complete the sentences with the words below. There is one word that you do not need.

- much ■ little ■ any ■ some ■ a lot of ■ many ■ few
- 1 The bus was late because there was traffic.
 - 2 Chloe doesn't take clothes on holiday.
 - 3 There are only a sandwiches here. We need more for the picnic.
 - 4 If you like sweet tea, you should only add a sugar, as it's bad for your teeth.
 - 5 Have you got information about places to visit around here?
 - 6 There isn't water left – only half a bottle.

3.2 ■ Indefinite pronouns and adverbs: *some-, any-, no-, every-*

We use indefinite pronouns that combine *some-, any-, no-* and *every-* with *-body, -one* or *-thing* to refer to people and things without saying exactly who or what they are.

The pronouns *somebody* and *someone* mean the same; so do *anybody* and *anyone*, *everybody* and *everyone*, etc. Note that the indefinite pronoun *no one* is two separate words.

Somebody is upstairs.

There isn't anything in the fridge.

I opened the door, but no one was there.

In English, a sentence can only contain one negative form, so an affirmative verb must be used with pronouns or adverbs formed with *no-*.

No one came to the party. I didn't see anyone.

NOT ~~No one didn't come. I didn't see no one.~~

We can use the same combination of *some-, any-, no-* and *every-* with *-where* to form the adverbs *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere* and *everywhere*. These words refer to places.

I looked everywhere but I couldn't find my shoes.

The station is somewhere near here.

This animal is found in Australia and nowhere else.

Note that after indefinite pronouns and adverbs we always use a singular verb.

Everyone knows about it.

NOT ~~Everyone know about it.~~

1 Complete the words with *some, any, no* or *every*.

- We invited a lot of people to the concert butbody came.
- My dog follows mewhere. He even follows me to school.
-one is talking upstairs. Who is it?
- I looked for a present for Mum, but I didn't buything in the end.
- Have you beenwhere today?
- A lot of children get bored in the summer. They say that there'sthing to do.
- 'Do you knowone who lives in London?' 'Yes, a few people.'
- This place is very popular.body likes it.

2 Complete the sentences with an indefinite pronoun or adverb.

- I didn't go this weekend. I stayed at home.
- In the past, you couldn't buy spices in many places, but now you can find them
- Teresa made a cake, but liked it. It wasn't sweet enough.
- What did I do with my MP3 player? I know I put it in this room.
- Here's the menu. Would you like to drink?
- lent me €5 recently, but I can't remember who it was.
- I've eaten at all today. That's why I'm so hungry!
- It's very dark here. I can't see

3.3 ■ Relative pronouns and adverbs: *who, whose, which, that, when, where*

Relative pronouns and adverbs link two ideas.

There is a vending machine. It sells frozen food.

There is a vending machine that sells frozen food.

NOT ~~There is a vending machine that it sells ...~~.

The relative pronoun *who* refers to a person, and *which* refers to a thing. The pronoun *that* can refer back to both people and things.

There is a vending machine which / that sells frozen food.

I know someone who / that lives near you.

We can leave out *who, which* or *that* if they are followed by another pronoun or a noun. We can't leave out *who, which* or *that* if they are followed by a verb.

An additive is a thing (which / that) we put in food.

BUT

An additive is a thing which / that is put into food.

We use the relative pronoun *whose* to refer back to a person who owns something.

There's my neighbour. We found his dog.

There's my neighbour whose dog we found.

The relative adverb *when* refers to a time at which something happened.

I was happy when I was a child.

Sunday is the only day when I can relax.

The relative adverb *where* refers to a place in which something happened.

I want to show you the house where I was born.

Britain is one of the few countries where people drive on the left.

1 Choose the correct words. In which sentence can the relative pronoun be left out?

- The place **where** / **that** we're spending our holidays is near the beach.
- Let's meet in the café **that** / **where** is in the square.
- Did you meet the boy **who** / **whose** parents are both chefs?
- Do you know the name of the new girl **who** / **which** sits next to Jack?
- We're looking forward to the day **when** / **which** we leave school.
- The shop **that** / **whose** we buy our school uniforms from is very expensive.
- Saturday is the only day **which** / **when** I don't have to do homework.
- A concert hall is a place **where** / **whose** you can listen to live music.
- My grandma remembers a time **that** / **when** these streets were all countryside.
- The area **where** / **which** we live is very quiet.

2 Rewrite the sentences that do not need a relative pronoun.

- The girl that lives next door to me is in my class.
.....
- Mrs Taylor isn't a person that I know very well.
.....
- The family whose cat destroyed our flowers are buying a dog.
.....
- The cinema which we go to every week is closing down.
.....
- Our teacher is a person who everyone respects.
.....
- Our teacher is a person who expects a lot of her students.
.....

Grammar reference and practice 4

4.1 ■ Comparative and superlative adjectives

Spelling rules

- For short adjectives, add *-er* to form the comparative and *the + -est* for the superlative.
small → *smaller* → *the smallest*
young → *younger* → *the youngest*
- For short adjectives ending in *-e*, add *-r* or *the + -st*.
large → *larger* → *the largest*
cute → *cuter* → *the cutest*
- For short adjectives ending in vowel + consonant (except *-w*), double the consonant and add *-er* or *the + -est*.
hot → *hotter* → *the hottest*
wet → *wetter* → *the wettest*
- For adjectives ending in consonant + *-y*, remove the *-y* and add *-ier* or *the + -iest*.
early → *earlier* → *the earliest*
busy → *busier* → *the busiest*
- For adjectives of two or more syllables (except adjectives ending in *-y*), add *more* or *the most* before the adjective.
modern → *more modern* → *the most modern*
delicious → *more delicious* → *the most delicious*
- Some adjectives are irregular, for example:
good → *better* → *the best*
bad → *worse* → *the worst*
far → *farther / further* → *the farthest / furthest*

Use

We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or things. Comparative adjectives are often followed by *than*.

In the past, houses were darker than they are now.

I think my sister is more intelligent than my brother.

We use superlative adjectives to compare a person or thing with the whole group. We do not use *than* after superlatives.

The bathroom is the smallest room in our house.

This old castle is the most popular tourist attraction in our town.

1 Write the comparative and superlative form of each adjective.

- 1 beautiful
- 2 funny
- 3 nice
- 4 far
- 5 dangerous
- 6 sad
- 7 interesting
- 8 bad
- 9 wide
- 10 clean
- 11 dirty
- 12 famous

2 Study the table and write comparative sentences. Use the adjectives in brackets.

	House A	House B
Location	city centre	countryside
Date of building	1965	1925
Height	20 metres	15 metres

- 1 House A is (noisy) House B.
- 2 House A is (modern) House B.
- 3 House A is (big) House B.
- 4 House B is (quiet) House A.
- 5 House B is (old) House A.
- 6 House B is (small) House A.

3 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives below.

- good ■ hot ■ tidy ■ lazy ■ expensive ■ large

- 1 We've got dog in the world. He just lies on the sofa all day.
- 2 room in our house is the living room, but my parents' bedroom is also quite big.
- 3 My computer is thing I own. It cost a lot of money.
- 4 Tom got exam result in the class. He was very happy about it.
- 5 Megan's bedroom is room in the house because she puts all her things away.
- 6 country in the world is Libya. Temperatures reach up to 57.8°C.

4.2 ■ (not) as ... as, too, enough

(not) as ... as

We can use *(not) as + adjective + as* to compare two people or things. The adjective doesn't change and it always comes between *as* and *as*.

- *as ... as* shows that two people or things are the same or equal
- *not as ... as* shows that two people or things are not the same or equal

Our dog is as old as yours. (The two dogs are the same age.)

Danny isn't as funny as Ben. (One of the two boys is funnier than the other.)

Is this necklace as expensive as that bracelet?

too + adjective

We use *too + adjective* to describe something that is more than is necessary, or is not acceptable.

They didn't buy the house because it was too expensive. (It cost more money than they wanted to pay.)

The adjective always comes after *too*.

The infinitive form of the verb can also follow *too + adjective*.

We were too tired to run.

(not +) adjective + enough

We use adjective + *enough* to describe something that is as good, big, fast, etc. as is necessary.

Is your room warm enough? (= Do you need more heating?)

The adjective always comes before *enough*.

NOT ~~enough warm~~

We can add *not* before adjective + *enough* to make a negative.

I can't get to sleep. I'm not tired enough.

The infinitive form of the verb can also follow adjective + *enough*.

Is he old enough to go to university?

1 Write sentences with *as ... as* and *not as ... as*.

- 1 a cottage / a mansion (not big)
.....
- 2 Buckingham Palace / the Tower of London (well-known)
.....
- 3 bicycles / sports cars (not expensive)
.....
- 4 musicians / actors (popular)
.....
- 5 a 10,000-metre / a 100-metre race (not fast)
.....
- 6 a lake / an ocean (not deep)
.....
- 7 the Sahara Desert in Africa / the Gobi in Asia (dry)
.....
- 8 Mount Fuji / Mount Everest (not high)
.....
- 9 skiing / skating (dangerous)
.....
- 10 the moon / the sun (not far from Earth)
.....

2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 At Christmas, the shops are **crowded enough** / **too crowded**.
- 2 My wardrobe isn't **big enough** / **too big** to put all my clothes in. I need a larger one!
- 3 These days, everything is **too** / **enough** expensive.
- 4 Is the meat ready? Is it **enough tender** / **tender enough**?
- 5 We never use those chairs because they are **not enough** / **too** uncomfortable to sit on.
- 6 Processed food has got a lot of sugar and salt in it. It isn't **too healthy** / **healthy enough**.
- 7 I'm very tired. The bus journey was **too long** / **not long enough**.
- 8 The book I need is on the top shelf. I'm **not tall enough** / **too tall** to reach it.
- 9 I can't hear you. Please turn down the music. It's **too** / **enough** loud.
- 10 What time is it? Six o'clock? It's **enough early** / **too early** to get up!

4.3 ■ Verb + infinitive or -ing form

When two verbs appear together in a sentence, the first one can be followed by the infinitive or the *-ing* form of the second.

When I'm older, I want to be a historian. (*want* + infinitive)

I enjoyed reading this book. (*enjoy* + *-ing* form)

It is important to remember the pattern for each verb.

Below are some of the most common.

Verb + infinitive	Verb + <i>-ing</i> form
agree	avoid
decide	can't stand
hope	don't mind
need	enjoy
promise	hate
pretend	like
try	look forward to
want	love
would like	

Note the difference between *like* and *would like*:

Do you like swimming? (= Do you enjoy it in general?)

Would you like to go swimming today? (= Do you want to do it now, or at a specific time?)

1 Match 1–8 to a–h to make sentences.

- 1 What do you like
 - 2 My grandad wanted
 - 3 I can't stand
 - 4 Diana tried to imagine
 - 5 Once I finish school, I hope to
 - 6 Karl says he doesn't mind
 - 7 What do you mean? We never agreed to
 - 8 I'm looking forward to
- a painting the fence. He finds it quite relaxing.
 - b being back home for the holidays.
 - c pay for everyone's food!
 - d to be an archaeologist when he was younger.
 - e work abroad as a journalist.
 - f ironing. It's such a boring job.
 - g doing in your spare time?
 - h sitting in her favourite armchair back at home.

2 Complete the sentences using the infinitive or -ing form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 You should avoid (go) anywhere too hot.
- 2 Leo is hoping (become) famous.
- 3 Lucy and Caroline enjoy (study) at the summer school.
- 4 Why do you want (be) a lawyer?
- 5 We are looking forward to (relax) on our holiday.
- 6 I really hate (get) mosquito bites.
- 7 I'd like (work) abroad next year.
- 8 Take your time. I don't mind (wait).

Grammar reference and practice 5

5.1 Present perfect

We form the present perfect with the auxiliary verb *have* and the past participle of the main verb.

Affirmative and negative			
I			seen this film.
We	have		
You	haven't (= have not)		
They			
He	has		
She	hasn't (= has not)		
It			
Questions and short answers			
Have	I we you they	seen this film?	Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
Has	he she it		Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.

Use

We use the present perfect:

- to talk about something that happened before now, at an indefinite time in the past.
I've met a lot of famous people in my life.
He's written six books.
They've travelled a lot in Africa and Asia.
- to talk about an action or event that started or happened in the past, but has got a connection with the present. The action or event might be finished or unfinished.
The rain has stopped. We can go out now.
I've made a cake. Would you like some?
She's lost her keys and can't open the door now.
He's lived in this town all his life. (He was born here and he still lives here now.)
- to talk about experiences, especially with *ever* and *never*.
- to talk about recent events.

been and gone

The verb *go* has two past participle forms: *been* and *gone*.

- We use *been* when we know that someone has returned from a journey.
Josh has been to India. (He is back now.)
- We use *gone* when the person has not returned.
Josh has gone to India. (He is still in India.)

ever and never

In present perfect questions, we often use *ever* (= at any time in the past).

Have you ever tried a risky sport?

To express a negative, we can use *never* (= at no time in the past) + affirmative verb.

I've never tried a risky sport.

1 Study the table and complete the sentences using the present perfect.

	take a lot of risks	travel to different countries	have a number of exciting experiences
Lydia	✓	✗	✓
Ryan	✗	✓	✓
Scott	✓	✗	✗

During the past year ...

- Lydia a lot of risks.
- Ryan a lot of risks.
- Lydia and Scott to different countries.
- Ryan to different countries.
- Lydia and Ryan a number of exciting experiences.
- Scott many exciting experiences.

Present perfect and past simple

Present perfect	Past simple
For experiences and actions that happened at an indefinite time in the past, often with <i>ever</i> and <i>never</i> . Have you ever been to Spain? <i>I've never been to Spain.</i> <i>Carrie has stayed at that hotel twice.</i>	For actions that happened at a specific point in the past, usually with time expressions such as <i>ago</i> , <i>yesterday</i> , <i>last week / year</i> , <i>in 2009</i> , etc. and in questions with <i>when</i> . When did Lee go to Spain? <i>Lee went to Spain last year.</i>
For finished or unfinished actions and situations that have a connection with the present. <i>I've lived in Germany all my life.</i>	For finished actions and situations that happened in a period of time that has ended. <i>I lived in Germany from 2002 to 2006.</i>

2 Write the correct past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- Mr Franks was well known in this town. He (play) football for the local team until 2012.
- My grandma (be) very happy when we visited her in her new home.
- We (meet) Tim and Helen in the park last week.
- I (not see) a film at the cinema for a few months.
- you ever (wear) fancy dress?
- He didn't pass the exam because he only (write) his name on the paper.
- We (have) a terrible day. I hope tomorrow will be better.
- Mum (not go) to the shops. She's still writing the shopping list.

5.2 ■ Present perfect with *already*, *just* and *yet*

We use *just* before the past participle in affirmative sentences and questions to talk about something that happened immediately before the moment of speaking.

I've just finished making the dinner.

We use *already* before the past participle in affirmative sentences and questions to talk about something that happened sooner than expected.

Mr Smith has already arrived. He's an hour early.

We use *yet* at the end of the sentence in negative sentences and questions to talk about something that was expected to happen, but which hasn't happened.

Robert hasn't called yet. We're still waiting.

Have you met Billy yet?

1 Write sentences with *just* and the present perfect.

- 1 He / arrive.
.....
- 2 She / see / her name on the list.
.....
- 3 Carol and Ted / get married.
.....
- 4 I / write / an email / to you.
.....
- 5 You / walk / past a very famous person.
.....
- 6 We / finish / our homework.
.....

2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 She's only been here two weeks and she's **yet** / **already** made lots of friends.
- 2 He said he'd contact you. Has he phoned you **yet** / **already**?
- 3 Have they **yet** / **already** decided who's in the team? That was quick!
- 4 I haven't seen that film **yet** / **already**. Is it good?
- 5 'Is John still in the queue for the rollercoaster?' 'No, he's **yet** / **already** been on it.'
- 6 'Could you tell Phil that his dinner is ready?' 'I **yet** / **already** have.'

5.3 ■ Present perfect with *for* and *since*

We use the present perfect + *for* or *since* to say how long a situation has existed.

■ We use *for* with a period of time: *for a few seconds, for a day, for two weeks, for several years.*

She's had this house for many years.

■ We use *since* with a specific time: *since ten o'clock, since Friday, since yesterday, since May, since 2007.*

She's had this house since 2011.

We can use the question *How long ... ?* with the present perfect to ask about the length of time that a present situation has existed.

How long has Jo lived here? (Jo still lives here.)

1 Rewrite the sentences using *for* or *since*. Today is Friday 19 June 2025. Marcia is twenty-five years old.

- 1 Marcia's been here since Monday.
Marcia's been here
- 2 Marcia's parents have lived in New York for two years.
Marcia's parents have lived in New York
- 3 Marcia has had a car since she was eighteen.
Marcia has had a car
- 4 Marcia's twin brothers have been teenagers for ten days.
Marcia's twin brothers have been teenagers
- 5 Marcia's worked at the post office since January.
Marcia's worked at the post office
- 6 Marcia's been engaged for two months.
Marcia's been engaged

2 Complete the questions. Then write true answers.

- 1 Where do you live? How long / you / live there?
.....
- 2 What's the weather like today? How long / it / be cold (sunny, raining, snowing, etc.)?
.....
- 3 What are you wearing? How long / you / have it?
.....
- 4 Who is your best friend? How long / you / know them?
.....
- 5 Do you study geography at school? How long / you / study it?
.....
- 6 What are your favourite animals? How long / you / be interested in them?
.....

3 Complete the sentences with the words below.

■ for ■ since ■ already ■ just ■ ever ■ never ■ yet

- 1 I've known my best friend a long time.
- 2 My sister has tried a risky sport.
- 3 Have you tried trampolining?
- 4 Mike's thirty-two now, and has had a fear of injections his childhood.
- 5 Have they published the exam results ?
- 6 The ground is wet because it has stopped raining.
- 7 It's only September, but they've bought some Christmas presents.

Grammar reference and practice 6

6.1 ■ will and going to

will

Affirmative and negative			
I You He / She / It We They	'll (= will) won't (= will not)		wait here.
Questions and short answers			
Will	I you he / she / it we they	be all right?	Yes, I will. No, I won't.

Use

We use *will* and *won't* (= will not) to express:

- predictions, or future facts that we are certain about, often after the verb *think*.
That plant won't survive for long without water.
I don't think they'll win the competition.
- decisions made at the moment of speaking, offers and promises.
It's very hot in this room. ~ I'll open the window.

going to

Affirmative and negative			
I	'm (= am) 'm not (= am not)		going to work tonight.
He She It	's (= is) isn't (= is not)		
We You They	're (= are) aren't (= are not)		
Questions and short answers			
Am	I		Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is	he she it	going to come?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
Are	we you they		Yes, we are. No, we aren't.

Use

We use *be + going to*:

- to describe an intention.
I'm going to start keeping a diary.
- to talk about a future plan.
We are both going to study in the USA next summer.
- to make a prediction about the future based on something we can see in the present.
Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

Compare:

going to: **They aren't going to stay in London very long.** (This is their plan or intention.)

will / won't: **They won't stay very long.** (I predict this.)

1 Choose the correct words.

- Dana **will / is going to** stay with her French penfriend this summer. She's really excited.
- We need some milk. **I'm going to / 'll** go out and buy some.
- Do you think that **we're going to / 'll** get there in time for the concert?
- Help that boy. **He's going to / will** fall off the wall.
- I can't come out tonight. **I'll / 'm going to** work on my school project.
- Mike thinks that his new school **is going to / will** have better facilities than his old one.
- I've decided that **I'll / 'm going to** live in Italy when I grow up.
- What a mess! **Will you / Are you going to** help me to tidy up?

2 Complete the sentences with *will* or the correct form of *be going to*.

- I don't think the students get lost.
- Sam and I are training really hard this week. We run in the 10-kilometre race on Saturday.
- There's a spelling mistake on our poster. I change it.
- Nobody wants to come to our concert. It be a disaster!
- During the summer, I work at the leisure centre to earn some money.
- Mr Kempton thinks the window cost about €200 to repair.
- I have a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
- It's Sarah's birthday next week. I think I buy her some flowers.

6.2 ■ First conditional

We use the first conditional to talk about a possible present or future action or situation, and its probable result.

If you study hard at school, you'll do well.

CONDITION RESULT
If + present simple, will + infinitive

If we put the result clause first, there is no comma.

You'll do well if you study hard at school.

RESULT CONDITION
will + infinitive if + present simple

In a condition clause, *if* is followed by the present simple, even though the verb refers to the future.

If we miss the train, we'll be late for school.

NOT ~~**If we'll miss the train ...**~~

It is possible to use a negative verb in either or both parts of a conditional sentence.

If he doesn't learn to read, he won't do very well.

1 Match 1–6 to a–f to make sentences.

- 1 If you break this law,
- 2 The children won't work well
- 3 You'll easily pass the exam if
- 4 If that man takes those things,
- 5 It will be easier for you to get up on time
- 6 If I don't go home soon,

- a you work hard and do your homework.
- b if you use an alarm clock.
- c you'll pay a fine.
- d I'll get into trouble with my parents.
- e if they're too tired to concentrate.
- f I'll call the police.

2 Write first conditional sentences. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 If I (have) enough money, I (buy) some new clothes.
- 2 If it (rain), they (not hold) the concert.
- 3 Meg (be) annoyed if we (be) late.
- 4 We (catch) the bus if we (not feel) like walking.
- 5 If they (not leave) now, they (miss) their train.
- 6 You (not get) a good job if you (not do) well in your exams.

6.3 ■ Zero conditional

We use the zero conditional to talk about a general fact that always or usually follows as a logical result of an action. The present simple is used in both parts of the sentence.

If you are tired, you make more mistakes.
CONDITION RESULT

If / When + present simple, present simple

When the result clause comes first, there is no comma.

You make more mistakes if you are tired.

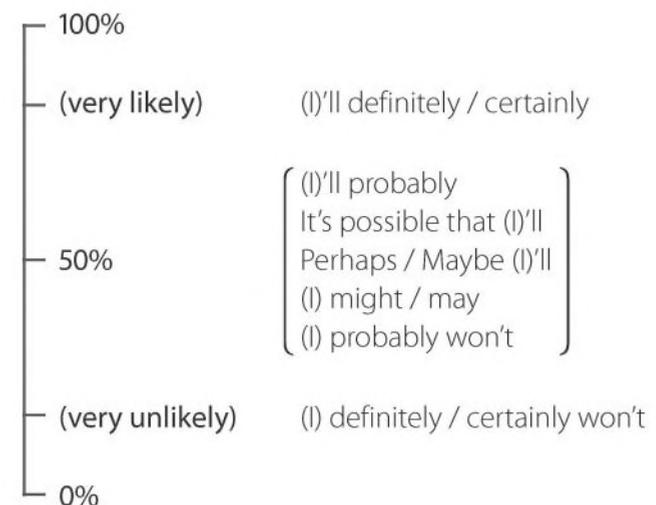
1 Complete the sentences with the correct zero conditional form of the verbs below.

■ learn ■ pay ■ not practise ■ put ■ seem ■ not do

- 1 If you a musical instrument, you don't improve.
- 2 When you a new language, it opens up a new world.
- 3 The world a nicer place when people are polite.
- 4 If a person commits a crime, they for it.
- 5 Children become lazy when they things for themselves.
- 6 When you police officers in schools, it creates a sense of fear.

6.4 ■ Expressing probability

We express levels of certainty about the future using the following expressions:



Compare:

There probably won't be food shortages in twenty years' time. (= It is likely that there won't be.)

People might / may work from home more in five years' time. (= It is likely that they will.)

More and more people will probably work from home in five years' time. (= It is likely that they will.)

1 Write sentences expressing probability. Use the key below.

XX = definitely won't

X = probably won't

X✓ = might / maybe / it's possible that

✓ = will probably

✓✓ = will definitely

1 Max / have a birthday party ✓

2 I / go to / football practice / this lunchtime X

3 this computer / work / with that cable XX

4 I / check my emails / later X✓

5 we / spend / Christmas / at home / this year ✓✓

6 it / rain / this afternoon X✓

7 people / write letters by hand / in twenty years' time X

8 I / visit / my friends / at my old school X✓

9 Ben and Amy / get married / this year ✓

10 my parents / travel to China / in July XX

Grammar reference and practice 7

7.1 ■ *must, mustn't, have to, don't have to*

must and mustn't

Must is used with an infinitive without *to*. The forms of *must* are the same for all persons, and there is no auxiliary *do* in questions or negatives.

Affirmative and negative			
I You He / She / It We They	must mustn't (= must not)		wait here.
Questions and short answers			
Must	I you he / she / it we they	wait here?	Yes, I must. No, I mustn't.

Note that the question form *Must I / you / we, etc. ... ?* is not very common. Use *Do I / you / we have to ... ?* instead.

We use *must* when the speaker feels that it is very important for someone to do something.

I must stop eating chocolate and biscuits.

We must hurry up.

The children must go to bed now.

You must be home before it gets dark.

We use *mustn't* when it is very important for someone not to do something.

I mustn't be late for the exam tomorrow.

You mustn't take any dictionaries into the exam.

1 Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

- You be prepared to work hard when you start a business.
- Drivers park their cars in front of this gate.
- People have a ticket or official document to enter the Olympic stadium.
- I go to the dentist tomorrow. My tooth really hurts.
- You bring a translation of your qualifications to the interview so we can check them.
- Students bring tablet computers into the exam. We will take away all electronic equipment.
- You touch any fruit or vegetables in the market. You will have to pay for them.
- You drive so fast. The speed limit is forty kilometres per hour!
- All passengers show their passports at the airport.
- You play loud music after ten o'clock in the evening.

have to and don't have to

Affirmative and negative			
I We You They	have to don't have to		study.
He She It	has to doesn't have to		
Questions and short answers			
Do	I we you they	have to study?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.
Does	he she it		Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

In affirmative sentences, *have to* is used in a similar way to *must*.

You have to be home before it gets dark.

We usually use *have to* rather than *must* when the situation (not the speaker) makes the action important.

I have to take two buses to school. (This is the journey to school.)

I have to wear a uniform. (This is in the school rules.)

People have to drive on the left in the UK. (That's the law.)

We use *don't have to* when it isn't necessary for someone to do something.

You don't have to bring any food. Lunch will be provided.

Note that while the meaning of *have to* and *must* is almost the same in the affirmative, the meaning of the negative forms is completely different. Compare:

You mustn't pay John – he hasn't done any work yet.

You don't have to pay John – I have already paid him.

We use the question form *Do I / you / we / they have to ... ?* or *Does he / she / it have to ... ?* to ask if it is necessary to do something.

Do we have to do all the work ourselves?

2 Write sentences with the correct form of *have to*.

- I / not / go to bed early / at the weekend.
.....
- An entrepreneur / have some money / to begin a business with.
.....
- You / use the correct currency / when you go to a foreign country.
.....
- University students / not / wear / a uniform.
.....
- Someone who drives / a car / not / travel / by bus.
.....
- You / not / do exams every day of your life.
.....
- My brother / get up / at four o'clock / to go to work.
.....

3 Complete the sentences. Use the words below.

- mustn't ■ don't have to ■ have to ■ must ■ has to
■ must ■ have to ■ have

- Do I do my homework now? I want to go out.
- Paul doesn't help in the garden. Why do I have to do it?
- You and Kim stay. You can go home whenever you want.
- People exercise more. We're all getting less healthy.
- Look after Ben. Remember – you go near the railway line.
- Visitors take their litter away with them.
- Karen lives near the school, so she doesn't to take the bus to get there.
- Jack go soon because he has a dental appointment.

7.2 ■ Second conditional

We use second conditional clauses to describe present and future situations that are imaginary or unreal. The past forms are used to show the situation is different from reality.

If I met an alien,	I'd scream and run away.
CONDITION	RESULT
If + past simple,	would ('d) + infinitive

As with first conditional sentences, the result can come first. In this structure, there is no comma.

I'd scream and run away	if I met an alien.
RESULT	CONDITION
would ('d) + infinitive	if + past simple

In the structure *if* clause + *be*, the form *were* can be used with *I*, *he*, *she* and *it*. We often use *If I were you ...* to give advice to someone. In spoken English, *was* is more frequent.

If I were you, I'd buy a new phone.

If Lily was / were good at languages, she'd learn Chinese.

We can use negatives in either or both parts of the sentence.

If I won a lot of money, I wouldn't waste it.

I wouldn't eat the food if I didn't like it.

In questions, we can start either with the condition or with the result.

What would you do if you were invisible?

If animals could talk, what would they say?

1 Choose the correct words.

- If I **am** / **were** eighteen, I'd learn to drive.
- What **would** / **will** you do if you didn't have to go to school?
- If Sheila **would have** / **had** a dog, she'd take it out for a walk every day.
- I wouldn't tell them about this if I **be** / **were** you.
- If it wasn't raining, I **won't** / **wouldn't** need an umbrella.
- If you **could** / **can** read people's thoughts, what would you do?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- You (can) become an entrepreneur if you borrowed €2,000.
- If we went by plane, we (get) there quicker.
- If the world's population (stay) the same, we'd still have energy problems.
- English (not be) so important if they didn't speak it in the USA.
- If you had satnav, you (not get) lost all the time.
- If we could go back in time, we (find) the world a very different place.

3 Match the imaginary situations to the imaginary outcomes. Then write conditional sentences. Begin with *If I ...*

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 have lots of money | a be an airline pilot |
| 2 can live anywhere | b buy a big football club |
| 3 make the law | c speak German fluently |
| 4 can have any skill | d choose Paris |
| 5 can have any job | e ban cars |
| 6 be from Germany | f want to make people laugh |

7.3 ■ I wish ...

We use *wish* + past simple when we want to say that we would like a present situation to be different.

I wish I lived in Paris. (I would like to live in Paris, but I don't.)

We can use *were* instead of *was* when the subject of *be* is *I*, *he*, *she* and *it*. We don't use *would*.

I wish Joe were here.

NOT ~~I wish Joe would be here.~~

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- I wish I (know) more English words.
- I wish we (not have) any homework tonight.
- I wish I (be) taller.
- I wish I (go) to a different school.
- I wish we (not live) in this boring place.
- I wish my mum (not be) so strict.

2 Rewrite the sentences saying how you would like the present situation to be different. Use *I wish ...*

- Life is so complicated.
- I don't enjoy sport.
- I can't cook.
- People drive everywhere.
- I'm not good at art.
- My camera doesn't work.
- I don't understand this exercise.
- Sarah is always late.

Grammar reference and practice 8

8.1 ■ Past perfect

Affirmative and negative			
I You He / She / It We They	had hadn't (= had not)	passed the test.	
Questions and short answers			
Had	I you he / she / it we they	passed the test?	Yes, I had. No, I hadn't.

We form the past perfect with *had / hadn't* + past participle. Remember that the past participle is often the same as the past simple form. However, many past participles have an irregular form.

Use

We use the past perfect to talk about something that happened before something else in the past.

Marie had left the office when I called her. (Marie left the office, and then I called her.)

We can also use the past perfect to explain a situation or give a reason.

I was nervous because I hadn't driven on the motorway before.

We can use the past perfect together with the past simple to describe two past actions, introduced by *when* or *after*. The verb in the past perfect always refers to the action that happened first.

They took away his medal after he had won it. (He won the medal, and then they took it away.)

When Colin arrived, everyone had gone home. (Everyone went home, and then Colin arrived.)

1 Write the second sentence of each pair. Use the past perfect form of the verb given.

- We arrived too late. The train / just / leave the station
.....
- It was a waste of money. Jo and Ann / buy / the same present for Ben
.....
- Sam was disappointed. He / not win / the competition
.....
- I had to accept the truth. The campaign / not be / successful
.....
- Chloe thanked me. I / congratulate / her on winning the race
.....
- Everyone was very relieved to arrive. The journey / take / a long time
.....

2 Complete the questions with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- The door was open. someone
..... (be) there before me?
- you
(read) the book before you saw the film?
- I saw you at about three o'clock.
the exam already (finish) by then?
- Why did Ben come back to the house?
he (forget) something?
- Joe and Chloe left the cinema early.
they (see) the film before?
- Why was everyone outside the restaurant?
..... it (close) early?
- Mary wasn't at home. Where she
..... (go)?

3 Choose the correct words.

- We **were / had been** there for ten minutes when the police arrived.
- The reason you nearly fainted was because you **didn't eat / hadn't eaten** anything.
- Where **did Ryan go / had Ryan gone** on holiday last summer?
- I didn't go to the theatre that evening because **I'd already seen / I already saw** the play.
- In 1950, there **were / had been** two ice rinks in this town.
- We **didn't have / hadn't had** much money when we were young, but we enjoyed ourselves.
- Tina **wasn't / hadn't been** very well last night.
- She joined the beginners' group even though she **had played / played** before.

4 Write one sentence that links the sentence pairs with *because*. Use the past perfect form once in each new sentence.

- We couldn't get in. Keira locked the door.
.....
- Everyone congratulated Mark. He did so well.
.....
- I thought Helen would win the prize. She wrote a brilliant essay.
.....
- Steve didn't have any money. He bought a new pair of running shoes.
.....
- The two athletes left the competition. They cheated.
.....
- I was very happy. I made some progress on my project.
.....
- The telephone wasn't working. You didn't pay the bill.
.....

8.2 ■ *used to*

Affirmative and negative			
I You He / She / It We They	used to didn't use to	swim every day.	
Questions and short answers			
Did	I you he / she / it we they	use to swim every day?	Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

Use

We use *used to* + infinitive to talk about:

■ past habits.

When I was young, I *used to* play football with my friends every afternoon.

We *used to* go sailing in summer, but now we prefer mountain biking.

What kind of books did you *use to* read as a child?

■ past states or situations.

Jen *used to* have very long hair, but she had it cut short last year.

We *used to* live in Chester, but we moved to Newcastle when I was twelve.

Anna *didn't use to* like tea, but now she drinks tea with milk all the time.

We don't use *used to* for single actions. Compare the following sentences:

We *used to* go to the theatre a lot when we lived in London.

NOT ~~We used to go to the theatre on my tenth birthday.~~

Richard *used to* be very handsome when he was young.

NOT ~~Richard used to be very handsome at the party last night.~~

We can often use the past simple instead of *used to*, but we prefer *used to* when we want to emphasize that the situation today is different.

When Tom was a teenager, he *listened to* rock music. (He may or may not listen to rock music now.)

When Tom was a teenager, he *used to* listen to rock music. (He doesn't listen to rock music any more.)

Note that *used to* doesn't have a present tense form. To talk about present habits and situations, we always use the present simple, NOT *use to*.

1 Write statements and questions with the correct form of *used to*.

1 we / win / every game of cricket ✗

.....

2 my grandparents / vote / in every local election ✓

.....

3 the stadium / have / two towers on the roof ?

.....

4 Dan / be / very confident about his sporting abilities ✗

.....

5 you / be / a very patient person ?

.....

6 Ian / spend / every evening at the gym ✓

.....

7 Laura's dad / be / a civil servant ?

.....

8 Lee / compete / against much bigger boys in races ✓

.....

9 how often / Stan and George / play basketball ?

.....

10 they / get up / early in the morning ✗

.....

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs below. Use *used to* if possible. If not, use the past simple form of the verb.

■ dream ■ buy ■ follow ■ be ■ want ■ build ■ own ■ win

1 My parents a shop. It was very successful.

2 James a medal. He was very proud of it.

3 They the new school very quickly.

4 I of this moment, and now it's finally arrived.

5 We the campaign from start to finish.

6 Sarah her cousin a beautiful present when she got married.

7 Back in the 1960s, a lot of students to change the world.

8 That's where the post office, over there on the corner.

Grammar reference and practice 9

9.1 ■ Reported speech

We use reported speech when we want to tell someone about something that another person said. Tenses and pronouns change in reported speech if the time and the speaker change.

The tense of the main verb changes in the following ways.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple She said, 'The facts are true.'	Past simple She said that the facts were true.
Present continuous 'I'm watching the news,' I said.	Past continuous I said that I was watching the news.
Present perfect 'I've seen the news,' he said.	Past perfect He said that he had seen the news.
Past simple 'I found my pen,' he said.	Past perfect He said that he had found his pen.
will You said, 'I will come.'	would You said that you would come.

Pronouns and possessive adjectives also change.

'I've seen the news,' he said. → He said that he had seen the news.

'My birthday was very memorable,' said Louise. → Louise said that her birthday had been very memorable.

'We will go to Paris in June,' my parents said. → My parents said that they would go to Paris in June.

We sometimes leave out *that* in reported speech.

'There is a letter for you,' she said. → She said (that) there was a letter for me.

say and tell

We can use *say* or *tell* to introduce reported speech.

■ say + (that)

Marisa said (that) she was worried.

She said (that) she had had a bad day.

We never use an object after *say*.

NOT ~~She said me that...~~

■ tell + person + (that)

Tell is always followed by a personal object.

Marisa told me (that) she was worried.

She told me (that) she had had a bad day.

NOT ~~Marisa told that she was worried.~~

There are many other reporting verbs. Some examples are: *announce*, *confirm*, *complain* and *explain*. These verbs are not followed by a personal object.

They announced (that) they were getting married.

NOT ~~They announced me that...~~

We confirmed (that) the details were true.

She complained (that) the radio didn't work.

He explained (that) it was broken.

1 Complete the reported speech sentences. Use the past simple, past continuous, past perfect or *would / wouldn't*.

- 'Pete doesn't spend more than an hour on his mobile every day,' said Lawrence.
Lawrence said that Pete more than an hour on his mobile every day.
- 'We're watching a chat show,' said Zak.
Zak said that they a chat show.
- 'The wildlife documentary didn't start until 10 p.m.,' said Marie.
Marie said that the wildlife documentary until 10 p.m.
- 'Rob has written a great script for the play,' said Paul.
Paul said that Rob a great script for the play.
- 'The newspaper will publish details of the event,' said the reporter.
The reporter said that the newspaper details of the event.
- 'Zoe isn't watching a sitcom,' said Lara.
Lara said that Zoe a sitcom.
- 'I won't finish the crossword,' said Dad.
Dad said that he the crossword.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns and possessive adjectives.

- 'I'm waiting for a package,' said Steve.
Steve said that was waiting for a package.
- 'We'll wait for you both outside,' said Karen and Jack.
Karen and Jack said that would wait for outside.
- 'You've passed your exam!' said my teacher.
My teacher said that had passed exam.
- 'Your sister doesn't look like you,' said Marta.
Marta said that sister didn't look like
- 'Everyone had a great time at your birthday party,' said Nick.
Nick told me that he had had a great time at birthday party.
- 'Jim didn't walk home with his usual friends,' said Karl.
Karl said that Jim hadn't walked home with usual friends.

3 Complete the sentences with *said* or *told*.

- Everyone that the special effects in the film were spectacular.
- Caroline that her mother spoke several languages.
- The head of the theatre company her that she would be a good actress.
- The man the newspaper's editor that he was going to complain about the article.
- We that we didn't want the story to appear in the middle of the paper.
- I my friends that I was going to be on a reality TV show.

9.2 ■ Question tags

A question tag is a short question that we sometimes add at the end of a statement.

- After an affirmative statement, the question tag is negative.

He's part of the film crew, isn't he?

- After a negative statement, the question tag is affirmative.

War films aren't very interesting, are they?

The verb used in the question tag depends on the verb that is used in the statement. If there is an auxiliary verb, we repeat the auxiliary verb and add a pronoun. The tense for the auxiliary verb matches the tense used in the statement.

The film set is very convincing, isn't it?

The actors weren't very good, were they?

Leah won't be late, will she?

You haven't seen Tom, have you?

If there is no auxiliary verb, we use the auxiliary verb *do / does* for a present simple verb, or *did* for a past simple verb.

Lauren likes costume dramas, doesn't she?

You finished the crossword, didn't you?

The intonation used in question tags affects the meaning.

- We use rising intonation when we aren't sure if what we are saying is true, and we want the other person to confirm it.

You don't like romantic comedies, do you?

- We use falling intonation when we are sure that what we are saying is true, and we want the other person to agree with us.

Sarah hasn't started taking acting lessons, has she?

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Ellen's finished all her exams, **isn't / doesn't / hasn't** she?
- 2 You won the art prize this year, **haven't / didn't / won** you?
- 3 Everyone enjoyed the film, **didn't / did / don't** they?
- 4 We won't make the same mistake next year, **will / do / make** we?
- 5 I'm not doing anything wrong, **do / don't / am I**?
- 6 Shaun loves science fiction, **does / doesn't / isn't** he?
- 7 It's a beautiful day today, **aren't / is / isn't** it?
- 8 You will come to the theatre with us tonight, **aren't / don't / won't** you?
- 9 The first broadcast by the BBC was in 1922, **didn't / wasn't / am** it?
- 10 The programme about the history of the BBC hasn't started yet, **has / does / is** it?
- 11 We haven't missed the train, **have / did / haven't** we?
- 12 You will call me, **will / won't / don't** you?

2 Complete the sentences with question tags. Use one of the verbs in A and one of the pronouns in B in each sentence.

A ■ have ■ can ■ isn't ■ doesn't ■ haven't ■ do ■ can't ■ is

B ■ you ■ you ■ they ■ it ■ I ■ we ■ she ■ he

- 1 They've chosen Antoinette to be in the school play,?
- 2 You and Tania can swim,?
- 3 Tom isn't writing the whole script,?
- 4 You haven't thought about this very much,?
- 5 We can't use that as a headline,?
- 6 The exam's going to be very hard,?
- 7 Sally likes costume dramas,?
- 8 I don't look very good in this,?

3 Write statements with question tags for these situations.

- 1 You want confirmation that the train leaves at six o'clock.
.....?
- 2 You want someone to confirm that you aren't far from the station.
.....?
- 3 You want someone to confirm that Paul will be at the party.
.....?
- 4 You want confirmation that Amanda has finished with the computer.
.....?
- 5 You want someone to agree that Mark is going to win the race.
.....?
- 6 You want confirmation that the film doesn't start until eight o'clock.
.....?
- 7 You want someone to agree that it's very hot in the room.
.....?
- 8 You want someone to confirm that George and Samantha aren't American.
.....?
- 9 You want someone to agree that Lionel Messi is the best football player.
.....?
- 10 You want confirmation that Andrea has a red car.
.....?
- 11 You want someone to confirm that the exam will start at one o'clock.
.....?
- 12 You want someone to agree that Isabel's hair looks very nice.
.....?

Grammar reference and practice 10

10.1 ■ The passive

The passive is formed with *be* + past participle of the main verb.

We use the passive:

- when we are more interested in the action than in the person or thing that performs the action.
English is spoken by over 1.8 billion people around the world.
America was discovered in 1492.
- when we don't know who performs the action, or when it is clear from the context who performs the action.
These cars are made in Japan.
My camera was stolen.

When we want to say who performs an action in a passive sentence, we use the preposition *by*.

active: *John Logie Baird invented the television.*

passive: *The television was invented by John Logie Baird.*

Passive verbs have the same tenses as active verbs, and the rules for tense usage are the same.

Present simple passive

present simple of *be* + past participle

Affirmative	
This bag is made of real leather.	
The children are paid very little.	
Negative	
The boy isn't paid a good wage.	
The clothes aren't sold directly to shops.	
Questions and short answers	
Is this bag made of leather?	Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
Are lemons grown in Greece?	Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

The present simple passive is often used to describe a general process.

The clothes are washed and ironed. Then they are hung up in the shop.

Past simple passive

past simple of *be* + past participle

Affirmative	
A lot of money was donated.	
The clothes were made in China.	
Negative	
The price wasn't reduced.	
We weren't given anything to eat.	
Questions and short answers	
Was all the money donated?	Yes, it was. No, it wasn't.
Were the clothes washed?	Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

We use the past simple passive to talk about specific actions.

On Thursday, the clothes were washed and ironed.

Note that some verbs in English, such as *give*, *send* and *tell*, can have two objects. Usually the first object is a person and the second is a thing.

John gave Mary some flowers.

They sent me a long letter.

Elsa told the children a story.

In the passive, we often make the person subject of the sentence, not the thing.

Mary was given some flowers.

I was sent a long letter.

The children were told a story.

1 Complete the sentences with the past participle form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 The price tags are (take) off straight away.
- 2 The banners were (carry) through the streets.
- 3 Fur is still (wear), although many people protest about it.
- 4 The clothes were (throw) away even though they were not damaged.
- 5 The boy was (wake) at 4 a.m. to begin work.
- 6 Cocoa trees are (grow) in countries like Brazil and Ghana.

2 Complete the sentences with *is*, *are*, *was* or *were*.

- 1 The clothes exported to other countries and they are then sold for a higher price.
- 2 The bridge built in only six months.
- 3 In this country, I think children given too much pocket money nowadays.
- 4 This T-shirt made of cotton.
- 5 The children told to work in the factory. They didn't have a choice.
- 6 During a demonstration, slogans often shouted.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the passive without *by*. Use the present or past simple passive.

- 1 Someone stole my mobile phone yesterday.
.....
- 2 Everyone finished lunch by 2 p.m.
.....
- 3 We freeze food products to conserve them.
.....
- 4 They publish daily newspapers every day.
.....
- 5 People met us at the station.
.....
- 6 The postman delivers the post before nine o'clock.
.....
- 7 My parents gave me an alarm clock for my birthday.
.....
- 8 Someone cleans the office every night.
.....

10.2 ■ Present perfect passive

present perfect of *be* + past participle

Affirmative	
A petition has been signed.	
Comments have been posted.	
Negative	
The mine hasn't been closed.	
The clothes haven't been worn.	
Questions and short answers	
Has the tag been removed?	Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
Have the coats been hung up?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

1 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- The pesticides (ban), but people still use them.
- The process (explain) to everyone, but not everyone understood.
- The streets (clean). There isn't any litter.
- The money (not find). The police are still looking for it.
- Our team (not award) a gold medal. We came second.
- a complaint (make) about the noise?

2 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect passive form of the verbs below.

■ hear ■ not close ■ not find ■ make ■ sell

- The car is British, but the engines in Germany for the last few years.
- Her school yet, but most of the students are already at different schools.
- you about Marie? She's going to be on TV!
- This Italian brand of trainers in the UK since the 1990s. It's popular with British students.
- The man went missing last night, and he still

10.3 ■ Future passive

will + *be* + past participle

Affirmative	
The clothes will be cleaned tomorrow.	
Negative	
The environment won't be protected.	
Questions and short answers	
Will the clothes be sold here?	Yes, they will. No, they won't.

1 Complete the sentences. Use the future passive form of the verbs below.

■ not know ■ use ■ track ■ not provide ■ not fix ■ exhibit

- For the next two months, the artist's work in the Branson Museum.
- In the future, global changes more closely.
- Pens in the exam, so remember to take your own.
- All the money that our company donated for the new campaign.
- My computer is broken, and unfortunately it before Monday.
- The results of the experiment for a few months.

2 Complete the second sentence so it has got a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the future passive.

- Someone will write the report.
The report
- Someone will bring the cake in at the end of the meal.
The cake in at the end of the meal.
- They'll cut down large parts of the rainforest to make roads.
Large parts of the rainforest to make roads.
- They won't publish the book until next year.
The book until next year.
- We'll hang coats next to the jackets and trousers.
The coats next to the jackets and trousers.
- They'll catch the thief soon.
The thief soon.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the future passive. Use *by* to say who will perform the action.

- Two of the managers will interview you.
.....
- A doctor will perform the operation on John's knee.
.....
- The construction company won't design the motorway.
.....
- Will the journalist email the article? (✓)
.....
- Jessica will send the foreign students an information pack.
.....
- Will the secretary book the train tickets? (✗)
.....

insight

A thought-provoking course that challenges students to reach their full potential.

Challenge • Develop • Inspire

Insight into the world: Topics that inspire students to think

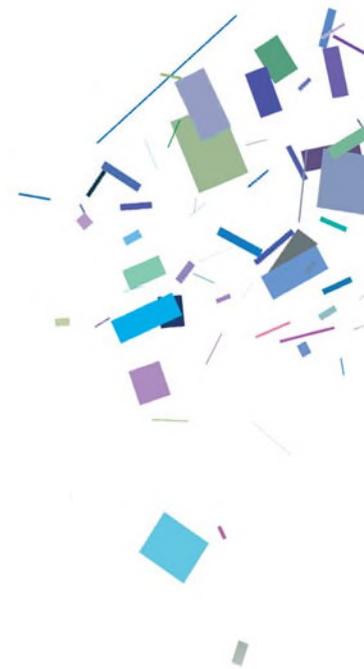
- Stimulating topics and information rich texts inspire discussion › page 120
- Culture texts in every unit and related DVD material › page 36
- *Literature insight* introduces students to classic English literature › [Workbook](#)

Insight into learning: Strategies that develop lifelong learning

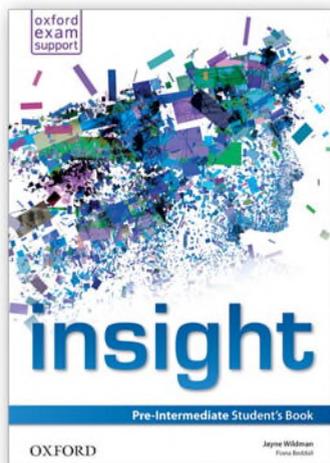
- *Strategy boxes* improve key skills › page 4
- *Writing guides* foster good writing habits › page 117
- *Progress checks* encourage students to reflect on their learning › [Workbook](#)

Insight into language: A syllabus that challenges students to go deeper

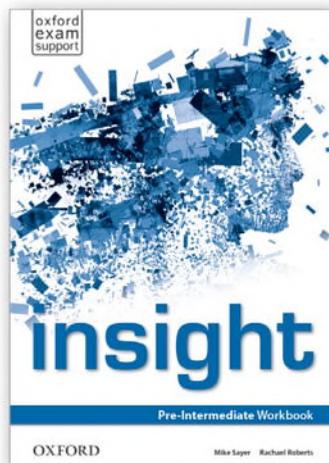
- *Vocabulary insight* sections give students a deeper understanding of language › page 56
- *Vocabulary insight* pages develop dictionary and thesaurus skills › page 52
- The dictionary-style wordlist gives more information about core vocabulary › [Workbook](#)



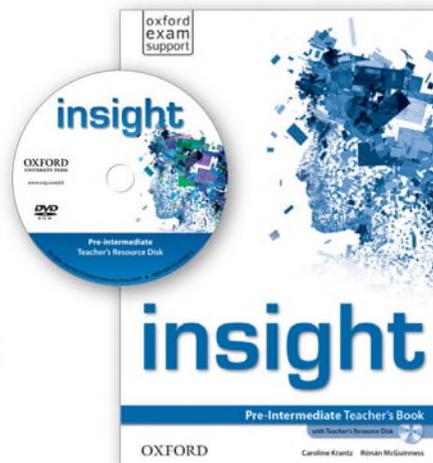
Student's Book



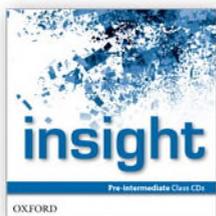
Workbook



Teacher's Book and Teacher's Resource Disk



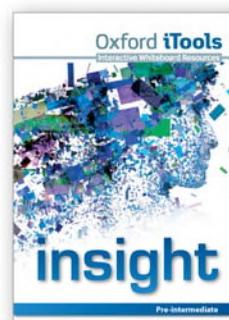
Class Audio CDs



Test Bank MultiROM



iTools interactive whiteboard resources



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

Oxford › making digital sense



ISBN 978-0-19-401107-5



9 780194 011075